OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 67

Joseph of Arimathea and Perceval

Robert de Boron

Li Romanz de l'Estoire dou Graal
Perceval

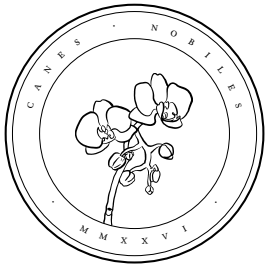
Joseph of Arimathea and Perceval

Robert de Boron's Grail Romance in Verse,
with the Prose Perceval

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order



CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 67 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Robert de Boron's Joseph
in Francisque Michel's edition, Le Roman du Saint-Graal (Bordeaux, 1841),
and the prose Perceval of the Modena manuscript in Jessie L. Weston,
The Legend of Sir Perceval, volume II (London, 1909)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

Each text keeps its editor's spelling and accents; in the verse,
a line's first letter follows the sentence, not the line. Michel
numbers the verses as he prints them, and a row of asterisks after verse
2752 marks the verses he finds lost. Neither editor's (sic) is printed,
nor are Weston's queries and notes on her readings, and a few of Michel's
printer's slips are corrected. Square brackets are the editors' supplements.

CONTENTS

ROBERT DE BORON · LI ROMANZ DE L'ESTOIRE DOU GRAAL

I · The Fall and the Virgin 9
II · Judas, the Vessel, and Joseph's Request 23
III · The Deposition and the Prison 43
IV · The Vessel Entrusted 64
V · The Pilgrim and the Emperor 81
VI · Pilate's Account and Verrine 98
VII · The Veronica and the Healing of Vespasian 118
VIII · Vengeance and the Finding of Joseph 136
IX · Vespasian Converted; Joseph's Company 157
X · The Grail Table 176
XI · Moses and Alain 200
XII · Alain Taught; Petrus Departs 222
XIII · The Rich Fisher 242

I · Merlin's Counsel 261
II · The Pentecost Feast 271
III · The Siege Perilous 280
IV · The Quest Begins 287
V · The Proud Knight of the Heath 297
VI · The Chessboard and the White Stag 304
VII · The Knight of the Tomb; Perceval's Sister 313
VIII · The Hermit Uncle 321
IX · The Fair Wicked and Rosette 332
X · The Perilous Ford 344
XI · The Fisher King's Castle 356
XII · The Unasked Question 364
XIII · Seven Years of Wandering 374
XIV · News of the White Castle 384
XV · The Tournament 394
XVI · Merlin the Mower; the Question Asked 403
XVII · Arthur Crosses to France 416
XVIII · Arthur King of France 426
XIX · The Roman Embassy 436
XX · The Armies Gather 448
XXI · The Battle with Rome; Gawain's Death 458
XXII · Arthur to Avalon; Merlin's Esplumoir 468

ROBERT DE BORON

Li Romanz de l'Estoire dou Graal

Joseph of Arimathea

Le Roman de l'Estoire dou Graal

I · THE FALL AND THE VIRGIN

Before Christ came, the prophets foretold him, yet every soul, good and wicked alike, went down to hell, where the Devil thought to keep them all. To redeem them God took flesh in the Virgin Mary, whom the poet praises as the rosebush that bore the rose, born to Joachim and Anne after an angel promised them a child. Adam and Eve's sin with the apple had given their line to the Devil. Christ, baptized by John, gave Holy Church baptism, and Peter gave its ministers confession for the sins men commit after it.

Savoir doivent tout pecheeur
Know must all sinners
et li petit et li meneur
and the small and the lesser
que devant ce que Jhesus-Criz
that before this that Jesus-Christ
venist en terre, par les diz
should-come on earth by the sayings
fist des prophetes anuncier
he-made of-the prophets announce
sa venue en terre, et huchier
his coming on earth and proclaim
que Diex son fil envoieroit
that God his son would-send
çà-jus aval, et soufferroit
here-below down and would-suffer
mout de tourmenz, mout de doleurs,
much of torments much of griefs
mout de froiz et mout de sueurs.
much of colds and much of sweats

A icel tens que je vous conte,
At that time that I to-you tell
et roi et prince et duc et conte,
both king and prince and duke and count
nostres premiers peres Adam,
our first father Adam
Eve no mere et Abraham,
Eve our mother and Abraham
Ysaac, Jacob, Yheremyes
Isaac Jacob Jeremiah
et li prophetes Ysayes,
and the prophet Isaiah
tout prophete, toute autre gent,
all prophets all other folk
boen et mauveis communément,
good and wicked alike
quant de cest siecle departoient,
when from this world they-departed
tout droit en enfer s'en aloient.
all straight into hell themselves-thence went
Quant li Deables, li Maufez,
When the Devil the Evil-One
les avoit en enfer boutez,
them had into hell thrust
gaaigniez avoir les quidoit
won to-have them he-thought
et en ce adès mout se fioit.
and in this always much himself trusted

Les boennes genz confort avoient
The good folk comfort had
ou Fil Dieu, que il attendoient.
in-the Son (of-)God whom they awaited
Lors si plut à Nostre-Seigneur
Then so pleased to Our-Lord
qu'il nous féist trestouz honneur
that-he us should-do all honor
et qu'il en terre descendist
and that-he to earth should-descend
et nostre humeinne char préist;
and our human flesh should-take
dedenz la Virge s'aümbra,
within the Virgin himself-he-shadowed
tele com la voust la fourma;
such as her wished her he-formed
simple, douce, mout bien aprise,
simple sweet very well taught
toute la fist à sa devise.
all her made at his wish
Pleinne fu de toutes bontez,
Full she-was of all goodnesses
en li assist toutes biautez:
in her he-set all beauties
ele est fleiranz comme esglentiers;
she is fragrant like eglantine
ele est ausi com li rosiers,
she is just like the rosebush

qu'ele porta la douce rose
for-she bore the sweet rose
qui fu dedenz sen ventre enclose.
which was within her womb enclosed
Ele fu Marie apelée,
She was Mary called
de touz biens est enluminée;
with all goods she-is illumined
Marie est dite, mer amere;
Mary she-is called sea bitter
fille Dieu est, si est sa mere;
daughter (of-)God she-is so is his mother
et Joachins si l'engenra,
and Joachim so her-begot
Anne sa mere la porta,
Anne her mother her bore
qui andui ancien estoient.
who both old were
Onques enfant éu n'avoient;
Ever child had not-they-had
meis mout en estoient irié.
but much thereby they-were grieved
Et Diex leur eut tost pourchacié
And God to-them had soon procured
par son angle, qu'il envoia
by his angel whom-he sent
a Joachym, quant il ala
to Joachim when he went
ou desert à ses pastouriaus;
into-the desert to his shepherds

et demoura aveques aus,
and he-stayed with them
pour ce que courouciez estoit
for this that angered he-was
de s'offrande que li avoit
at his-offering which from-him had
l'esvesque ou temple refusée,
the-bishop in-the temple refused
pour ce que n'avoit engenrée
for this that not-he-had begotten
nule portéure en sa fame,
any offspring in his wife
ki estoit de sa meison dame.
who was of his house lady
Ce dist l'angles à Joachyn:
This said the-angel to Joachim
«Va tost, si te mest au chemin,
Go swiftly so thyself put on-the road
que Diex le t'a par moi mandé;
for God it to-thee-has by me sent-word
et se m'a-il mout commandé
and so me-has-he much commanded
enseurquetout que je te die
above-all that I to-thee may-say
ta volentez iert acomplie,
thy will will-be fulfilled
car tu une pucele aurras,
for thou a maiden wilt-have
et Marie l'apeleras.
and Mary her-thou-wilt-call

D'Anne ta fame iert engenrée,
Of-Anne thy wife she-will-be begotten
en son ventre saintefiée,
in her womb sanctified
n'en sa vie ne pechera
nor-in her life not she-will-sin
tout son aage que vivra.
all her age that she-will-live
De ce ne soies esperduz;
Of this not be dismayed
et que j'en soie mieuz créuz,
and that I-thereby may-be better believed
par Jherusalem t'en iras
through Jerusalem thyself-thence thou-wilt-go
et à la porte enconterras
and at the gate thou-wilt-meet
ta fame, puis vous en irez
thy wife then you thence will-go
en vo meison et si serez
into your house and so you-will-be
ensemble comme boenne gent;
together as good folk
ainsi avendra vraiement.»
thus it-will-come-to-pass truly
Le pueple que il feit avoit
The people that he made had
d'Evein et d'Adam, couvenoit
of-Eve and of-Adam it-behooved
raieimbre et giter hors d'enfer,
to-redeem and to-cast out of-hell

que tenoit enclos Lucifer
which held enclosed Lucifer
pour le pechié d'Adam no pere,
for the sin of-Adam our father
que li fist feire Eve no mere
which him made do Eve our mother
par la pomme qu'ele menja
by the apple that-she ate
et qu'ele son mari donna.
and that-she to-her husband gave
Entendez en quantes mennieres
Hear in how-many manners
nous racheta Diex nostres peres:
us redeemed God our father
li Peres la raençon fist,
the Father the ransom made
par lui, par son fil Jhesu-Crist,
by himself by his son Jesus-Christ
par le Saint-Esprit tout ensemble.
by the Holy-Spirit all together
Bien os dire, si con moi semble,
Well I-dare say so as to-me seems
cil troi sunt une seule chose,
these three are one single thing
l'une persone en l'autre enclose.
the-one person in the-other enclosed
Diex voust que ses fiuz char préist
God wished that his son flesh should-take
de la Virge et que de li naschist,
of the Virgin and that from her he-should-be-born

et il si fist puis que lui plust;
and he so did since that to-him it-pleased
pour rien contredist ne l'éust.
for anything gainsaid not it-he-would-have
Cil Sires, qui humanité
This Lord who humanity
prist en la Virge, humilité
took in the Virgin humility
nous moustra grant quant il venir
to-us showed great when he to-come
daigna en terre pour morir,
deigned to earth for to-die
pour ce que il voloit sauver
for this that he wished to-save
l'uevre son pere et delivrer
the-work (of-)his father and to-deliver
de la puissance l'Ennemi,
from the power (of-)the-Enemy
qui nous eut par Eve trahi.
who us had by Eve betrayed
Quant ele vit qu'ele eut pechié,
When she saw that-she had sinned
si ha tant quis et pourchacié
so has so-much sought and contrived
que Adans ses mariz pecha;
that Adam her husband sinned

car une pomme li donna
for an apple to-him she-gave
que Diex leur avoit deveé
which God to-them had forbidden
et trestout l'autre abandonné;
and all the-other abandoned
meis il tantost la mist au dent
but he at-once it put to-the tooth
et en menja isnelement.
and of-it ate quickly
Et tantost comme en eut mengié,
And as-soon as of-it he-had eaten
pourpensa soi qu'il ot pechié;
he-bethought himself that-he had sinned
car il vit sa char toute nue,
for he saw his flesh all naked
dont il ha mout grant honte éue.
whereof he has very great shame had
Sa fame nue véue ha,
His wife naked seen he-has
a luxure s'abandonna.
to lust himself-he-abandoned
Après ce coteles se firent
After this tunics themselves they-made
de fueilles, qu'ensemble acousirent.
of leaves which-together they-sewed
Et quant Nostres-Sires ce vist,
And when Our-Lord this saw
Adan apele et si li dist:
Adam he-calls and so to-him said

«Adan, où ies-tu?» — «Je sui çà.»
Adam where art-thou I am here
Tantost de delist les gita,
At-once from delight them he-cast
si les mist en chetivoison
so them put into wretchedness
et en peinne pour tel reison.
and into pain for such reason
Eve eut conçut, si enfanta
Eve had conceived so brought-forth
a grant doleur ce que porta,
with great grief that which she-bore
et li et toute sa meisnie
and her and all her household
eut li Deables en baillie;
had the Devil in power
a la mort les vout touz avoir.
to the death them he-wished all to-have
En enfer les covint mennoir
In hell them it-behooved to-dwell
tant com Diex le vout, et ne plus,
so-long as God it wished and not more
qu'il envoia sen fil çà-jus
for-he sent his son here-below
pour saver l'uevre de son pere;
for to-save the-work of his father
si en soufri la mort amere.
so thereof he-suffered the death bitter

Pour ce besoing prist-il no vie
For this need took-he our life
ou ventre la virge Marie,
in-the womb (of-)the virgin Mary
et puis en Bethleem naschi
and then in Bethlehem was-born
de la Virge, si cum je di.
of the Virgin just as I say
Ceste chose seroit greveinne
This thing would-be grievous
a dire, car ceste fonteinne
to tell for this fountain
ne pourroit pas estre espuisie
not could at-all be exhausted
des biens qu'a la virge Marie.
of-the goods that-has the virgin Mary
Dès or meis me couvient guenchir
From now more me it-behooves to-turn
a ma matere revenir,
to my matter to-return
de ce que me rememberrai,
of this that me I-shall-remember
tant cum santé et povoir ei.
so-long as health and power I-have

Voirs est que Jhesus-Criz ala
True it-is that Jesus-Christ went
par terre; et si le baptisa
through earth and so him baptized
et ou flun Jourdein le lava
and in-the river Jordan him washed
sainz Jehans, qu'il li commanda
saint John for-he it-to-him commanded
et dist: «Cil qui en moi creirunt,
and said Those who in me will-believe
en eve se baptiserunt
in water themselves will-baptize
ou non dou Pere et dou Fil Crist
in-the name of-the Father and of-the Son Christ
et ensemble dou Saint-Esprist,
and together of-the Holy-Spirit
que par ice serunt sauvé,
that by this they-will-be saved
dou povoir l'Anemi gité,
from-the power (of-)the-Enemy cast
tant que il s'i remeterunt
until that they themselves-there will-put-again
par les pechiez que il ferunt.»
by the sins that they will-do
A sainte Eglise ha Diex donné
To holy Church has God given
tel vertu et tel poesté.
such virtue and such power

Saint Pierres son commandement
Saint Peter his command
redona tout comunalment
gave-again all in-common
as menistres de sainte Eglise,
to-the ministers of holy Church
seur eus en ha la cure mise:
over them thereof he-has the charge put
ainsi fu luxure lavée
thus was lust washed
d'omme, de femme, et espurée;
of-man of woman and purified
et li Deables sa vertu
and the Devil his virtue
perdi, que tant avoit éu.
lost that so-much he-had had
A bien peu .v. mil anz ou plus
With well little five thousand years or more
les eut-il en enfer là-jus;
them had-he in hell there-below
meis de tout son povoir issirent,
but from all his power they-went-out
dusqu'à tant que il s'i remirent;
until-at so-much that they themselves-there put-again

et Nostres-Sires, qui savoit
and Our-Lord who knew
que fragilitez d'omme estoit
that frailty of-man was
trop mauveise et trop perilleuse
too wicked and too perilous
et à pechié trop enclineuse
and to sin too inclined
(car il couvenroit qu'il pechast),
for it would-behoove that-he should-sin
vout que sainz Pierres commandast
wished that saint Peter should-command
de baptesme une autre menniere;
of baptism an other manner
que tantes foiz venist arrière
that so-many times he-should-come back
a confesse, quant pecheroit,
to confession when he-should-sin
li hons, quant se repentiroit
the man when himself he-should-repent
et vouroit son pechié guerpir
and would-wish his sin to-abandon
et les commandemenz tenir
and the commandments to-hold
de sainte Eglise: ainsi pourroit
of holy Church thus he-could
grace à Dieu querre, et il l'aroit.
grace from God seek and he it-would-have

II · JUDAS, THE VESSEL, AND JOSEPH'S REQUEST

Joseph of Arimathea, a soldier of Pilate's with five knights, loves Jesus but hides it for fear of the Jews. Judas, the disciples' steward, loses his tithe when Mary Magdalene anoints Jesus at Simon's house, so he sells him for thirty pence, to be known by a kiss. At the Supper Jesus washes the disciples' feet and explains the example to John. He is taken at Simon's house, where a Jew keeps the vessel of the sacrament; Pilate washes his hands of the death, and the Jew gives him the vessel. Joseph asks Pilate for the body as his wages and is granted it.

Au tens que Diex par terre ala
In-the time that God through earth went
et sa creance preescha,
and his faith preached
la terre de Judée estoit
the land of Judea was
souz Romme et à li respondoit,
under Rome and to it answered
non toute, meis une partie,
not all but a part
où Pilates avoit baillie.
where Pilate had authority
A lui servoit uns soudoiers
To him served a soldier
qui souz lui eut v chevaliers,
who under him had five knights

Jhesu-Crist vit et en sen cuer
Jesus-Christ he-saw and in his heart
l'aama mout; meis à nul fuer
him-loved much but at any price
n'en osast feire nul semblant
not-thereof he-would-dare make any show
pour les Juis qu'il doutoit tant,
for the Jews whom-he feared so-much
car tout estoient adversaire
for all were adversaries
a Jhesu la gent de pute eire.
to Jesus the folk of vile sort
Ainsi doutoit ses ennemis,
Thus he-feared his enemies
jà soit ce qu'à Dieu fust amis.
even be it that-to God he-were friend
Jhesus peu deciples avoit,
Jesus few disciples had
et de ceus l'uns mauveis estoit,
and of those the-one wicked was
pires plus que mestiers ne fust.
worse more than need — were
Ainsi le voust, ainsi li plust.
Thus it he-wished thus to-him it-pleased

Meintes foiz tinrent pallement
Many times held council
li Juif queu peinne ou tourment
the Jews what pain or torment
Nostre-Seigneur soufrir feroient
Our-Lord suffer they-would-make
et comment le tourmenteroient.
and how him they-would-torment
Et Judas, que Diex mout amoit,
And Judas whom God much loved
une rente eut c'on apeloit
a rent had that-one called
disme, et avec seneschauz fu
tithe and besides steward he-was
entre les deciples Jhesu;
among the disciples (of-)Jesus
et pour ce devint envieus
and for this he-became envious
qu'il n'estoit meis si gracieus
that-he not-was any-more so gracious
as deciples come il estoient
to-the disciples as they were
li uns vers l'autre et s'entr'amoient:
the one toward the-other and each-other-they-loved
se commença à estrangier
himself he-began to estrange
et treire à la foïe arrier;
and draw at the time back
plus crueus fu qu'il ne soloit,
more cruel he-was than-he — was-wont

si que chascuns le redoutoit.
so that each-one him feared
Nostres-Sires savoit tout bien,
Our-Lord knew all well
car on ne li puet embler rien.
for one not from-him can steal anything
A ce tens teu coustume avoient
At this time such custom had
li chambrelein que il prenoient
the chamberlains that they took
la disme de quanque on donnoit
the tithe of whatever one gave
a leur seigneurs, et leur estoit.
to their lords and to-them it-was
Or avint au jour de la Cene
Now it-happened on-the day of the Supper
que Marie la Madaleinne
that Mary the Magdalene
vint droit en la meison Symom;
came straight into the house (of-)Simon
a la table trouva Jhesum
at the table she-found Jesus
avec ses deciples seant,
with his disciples sitting
Judas devant Jhesu menjant.
Judas before Jesus eating
Dessouz la table se muça,
Under the table herself she-hid
as piez Jhesu s'agenouilla;
at-the feet (of-)Jesus herself-knelt

mout commença fort à plourer,
much she-began hard to weep
les piez Nostre-Seigneur laver
the feet (of-)Our-Lord wash
de ses larmes, et les torchoit
with her tears and them wiped
de ses chevous que biaus avoit.
with her hair that fair she-had
Après les oint d'un oignement
After them she-anoints with-an ointment
qu'aporta, precieus et gent,
that-she-brought precious and noble
et le chief Jhesu autresi;
and the head (of-)Jesus likewise
et la meison si raempli
and the house so filled
de la precieuse flereur,
with the precious fragrance
de l'oignement et de l'oudeur,
of the-ointment and of the-scent
que chaucuns d'eus se merveilla;
that each-one of-them himself marveled
meis Judas mout s'en courouça:
but Judas much himself-thereof angered
trois cenz deniers, ou plus, valoit;
three hundred pence or more it-was-worth
sa rente perdue en avoit:
his rent lost thereof he-had
c'est en disme trente deniers,
this-is in tithe thirty pence

c'en devoit estre ses louiers.
this-thereof was-to be his wages
Commença soi à pourpenser
He-began himself to ponder
comment les pourra recouvrer.
how them he-will-be-able recover
Li anemi Nostre-Seigneur,
The enemies (of-)Our-Lord
qui li quierent sa deshonneur,
who to-him seek his dishonor
furent tout ensemble assemblé
were all together assembled
en un hostel en la cité;
in a house in the city
li hostes eut non Chayphas.
the host had-as name Caiaphas
Ez-vous ilec venu Judas,
Behold-you there come Judas
qui evesques fu de leur loi,
who bishop was of their law
et preudons fu, si com je croi.
and worthy-man he-was so as I believe
Joseph i fu d'Arymathye,
Joseph there was of-Arimathea
n'est pas liez de la compeignie.
not-he-is at-all glad of the company
Et quant Judas ilec sentirent,
And when Judas there they-perceived
douterent le quant il le virent;
they-feared him when they him saw

si que tantost con le connurent,
so that as-soon as him they-knew
pour la doute de lui se turent.
for the fear of him themselves they-silenced
Il quidoient qu'il fust loiaus
They thought that-he were loyal
vers son seigneur, et il iert faus;
toward his lord and he was false
et quant Judas, qui de pute eire
and when Judas who of vile sort
estoit, les vit ainsi touz teire,
was them saw thus all silent
palla et demanda pour quoi
he-spoke and asked for what
estoient si mu et si quoi.
they-were so mute and so quiet
Il li demandent de Jhesu:
They him ask of Jesus
«Où est-il ore? Sez-le-tu?»
Where is-he now Know-it-thou
Et il leur dist où il estoit,
And he to-them told where he was
pour quoi là venir ne voloit:
for what there to-come not he-wished
«La loi enseigne.» Com l'oïrent,
The law he-teaches As it-they-heard
en leur cuers tout s'en esjoïrent.
in their hearts all themselves-thereof rejoiced

«Enseigne-nous comment l'aruns
Teach-us how him-we-shall-have
et comment nous le prenderons.»
and how we him shall-take
Judas leur dist: «Se vous volez,
Judas to-them said If you wish
je l'vous vendrei, si le prenez.»
I him-to-you shall-sell so him take
Cil dient: «Oïl, volentiers.»
Those say Yes gladly
— «Donnez-moi donc trente deniers.»
Give-me then thirty pence
L'uns en sa bourse pris les ha
The-one in his purse taken them has
et tantost Judas les donna:
and at-once to-Judas them gave
ainsi eut son restorement
thus he-had his restitution
de sa perte de l'oignement.
of his loss of the-ointment
Après li ont cil demandé
After him have those asked
comment il leur aura livré.
how he to-them will-have delivered
Judas leur mist le jour, pour voir,
Judas to-them set the day for true
comment il le pourrunt avoir
how they him will-be-able have
et en quel liu le trouverunt;
and in what place him they-will-find

il dist que mout bien s'armerunt
he said that very well themselves-they-will-arm
comme pour leur vies sauver,
as for their lives save
et si se doivent bien garder
and so themselves they-must well guard
de Jake penre tout ensemble,
from James take all together
car merveilles bien le resemble.
for wonders well him he-resembles
«De ce ne vous merveilliez mie,
Of this not yourselves marvel at-all
car andui sunt d'une lignie:
for both are of-one lineage
il sunt cousin germein andui.»
they are cousins german both
— «Comment connoistruns donc celui?»
How shall-we-know then that-one
— «Mout volentiers le vous direi:
Very gladly it to-you I-shall-tell
prenez celui que beiserei.»
take that-one whom I-shall-kiss
Ainsi acordent leur afeire.
Thus they-agree their affair
A trestoutes ces choses feire
At all these things do
estoit Joseph d'Arymathye,
was Joseph of-Arimathea
cui en poise mout et ennuie.
to-whom thereof it-grieves much and it-irks

Ainsi d'ilec se departirent;
Thus from-there themselves they-departed
dusqu'au juesdi attendirent;
until-the Thursday they-waited
et ce juedi chiés Simon
and this Thursday at-the-house-of Simon
estoit Jhesus, dans sa meison,
was Jesus in his house
où ses deciples enseignoit
where his disciples he-taught
les essemples et leur disoit:
the examples and to-them said
«Ne vous doi pas trestout retreire;
Not to-you I-must at-all everything relate
meis de ce ne me weil-je teire,
but of this not myself wish-I to-silence
que cius menjut o moi et boit
that that-one eats with me and drinks
qui mon cors à mort trahir doit.»
who my body to death betray must
Quant Jhesus ainsi pallé ha,
When Jesus thus spoken has
Judas errant li demanda:
Judas straightway him asked
«Pour moi le dites seulement?»
For me it say-you only
— «Judas, tu le diz ensement.»
Judas thou it sayest likewise

Autres choses leur vout moustrer
Other things to-them he-wished to-show
quant il daigna leur piez laver,
when he deigned their feet wash
d'une iaue à touz les piez lava,
with-a water to all the feet he-washed
et sainz Jehans li conseilla:
and saint John to-him whispered
«Privément, sire, une chose
Privately lord a thing
demanderoie; meis je n'ose.»
I-would-ask but I not-dare
Jhesus l'en ha congié donné,
Jesus him-thereof has leave given
et il ha tantost demandé:
and he has at-once asked
«Sire, à nous touz les piez lavas
Lord to us all the feet thou-washedst
d'une iaue: tu pour quoi feit l'as?»
with-one water thou for what done it-hast
Diex dist: «Volentiers le direi,
God said Gladly it I-shall-tell
cest essemple en Perrum penrei.
this example in Peter I-shall-take
Ausi comme l'iaue ordoia
Just as the-water grew-foul
des premiers piez c'on i lava,
from-the first feet that-one there washed
ne puet nus estre sanz pechié,
not can anyone be without sin

et tant serunt-il ordoié
and so-long shall-be-they fouled
com ès orz pechiez demourrunt;
as in-the foul sins they-shall-remain
meis les autres laver pourrunt;
but the others wash they-shall-be-able
car, s'il un peu ordoié sunt,
for if-they a little fouled are
jà pour ice n'ou leisserunt
ever for this not-it they-shall-leave
que il les ordoiez ne puissent
that they the fouled — may
laver, en quel liu que les truissent,
wash in what place that them they-may-find
ausi con d'orde iaue ei lavé
just as with-foul water I-have washed
l'autre ordure qu'ele ha trouvé;
the-other filth that-it has found
et semble que li darrien soient
and it-seems that the last may-be
ausi com li premier estoient.
just as the first were
Cest essemple à Pierre leirons,
This example to Peter we-shall-leave
et as menistres le donnons
and to-the ministers it we-give
de sainte Eglise voirement,
of holy Church truly

pour enseignier à l'autre gent
for to-teach to the-other folk
par leur pechiez ordoierunt
through their sins they-shall-be-fouled
et les pecheeurs laverunt
and the sinners they-shall-wash
qui à Dieu vouront obéir
who to God will-wish to-obey
et au Fil et au Saint-Espir,
and to-the Son and to-the Holy-Spirit
a sainte Eglise; si que rien
to holy Church so that anything
ne leur nuist, ainz leur eide bien,
not them harms rather them helps well
si c'um connoistre ne pouroit
so that-one know not could
le lavé s'on ne li disoit.
the washed if-one not him told
Ausi les pechiez ne set mie
Likewise the sins not one-knows at-all
de nului devant c'on li die,
of anyone before that-one to-him may-tell
n'il des menistres ne sarunt
nor-they of-the ministers not shall-know
devant ce que il les dirunt.»
before this that they them shall-tell
Ainsi saint Jehan enseigna
Thus saint John taught
Diex par ce que il li moustra.
God through this that he to-him showed

Diex fu en la meison Simon,
God was in the house (of-)Simon
et il et tuit si compeignon.
both he and all his companions
Judas eut les Juis mandez
Judas had the Jews summoned
et l'un après l'autre assemblez.
and the-one after the-other assembled
En la meison Symon entrerent.
Into the house (of-)Simon they-entered
Quant ce virent, si s'effreerent
When this they-saw so themselves-took-fright
li deciple Nostre-Seigneur,
the disciples (of-)Our-Lord
car il eurent mout grant peeur;
for they had very great fear
et quant la meison vit emplie
and when the house he-saw filled
Judas, si ne se tarja mie,
Judas so not himself delayed at-all
en la bouche Jhesu beisa
on the mouth (of-)Jesus he-kissed
et par le beisier l'enseigna.
and by the kiss him-pointed-out
Jhesu prennent de touz costez.
Jesus they-take from all sides
Judas crie: «Bien le tenez,
Judas cries Well him hold
car il est merveilles forz hom.»
for he is wonders strong man

Ainsi emmenerent Jhesum;
Thus they-led-away Jesus
partie font de leur voloir,
part they-do of their will
qu'il ont Jhesu en leur pooir.
for-they have Jesus in their power
Or sunt li deciple esgaré
Now are the disciples bewildered
et sunt de cuer mout adolé.
and are of heart very grieved
Leenz eut un veissel mout gent,
Within there-was a vessel very fair
où Criz feisoit son sacrement;
where Christ made his sacrament
uns Juis le veissel trouva
a Jew the vessel found
chiés Symon, se l'prist et garda,
at-the-house-of Simon so it-took and kept
car Jhesus fu d'ilec menez
for Jesus was from-there led
et devant Pilate livrez.
and before Pilate delivered
A Pilate Jhesu menerent,
To Pilate Jesus they-led
de quanqu'il peurent l'encouperent;
of whatever-they could him-they-accused
meis petit furent leur povoir,
but little were their power

qu'il ne peurent droiture avoir
for-they not could right have
ne droiture ne achoison
nor right nor occasion
par quoi fust en dampnation.
by which he-were in damnation
Ne il ne l'avoit deservi,
Nor he not it-had deserved
s'il s'en vousist partir ainsi;
if-he himself-thence would-wish to-depart thus
meis trop feule fu la joustice,
but too weak was the justice
dont mout de seigneur sunt en vice,
whereof many of lords are in vice
et force n'i voust mestre mie,
and force not-there he-wished to-put at-all
ainz voust soufrir leur enreidie.
rather he-wished to-suffer their obstinacy
Toutes voies Pilates dist:
All the-same Pilate said
«S'on ainsi cest prophete ocist
If-one thus this prophet kills
et me sires riens m'en demande,
and my lord anything me-thereof asks
je vueil savoir et se l'commande
I wish to-know and so it-I-command
as queus de vous touz m'en tenrei
to-the which of you all me-thereof I-shall-hold
et à cui ju en revenrei,
and to whom I thereof shall-return

qu'en lui ne voi cause de mort;
for-in him not I-see cause of death
ainz le volez ocirre à tort.»
rather him you-wish to-kill at wrong
A hautes vouiz tout s'escrierent
With high voices all themselves-cried-out
et riche et poure qui là ierent:
both rich and poor who there were
«Seur nous soit ses sans espanduz,
On us be his blood spilled
seur nos enfanz granz et menuz!»
on our children great and small
Lors le prennent et se l'ront mené
Then him they-take and so him-they-have led
devant Pilate et l'ont dampné.
before Pilate and him-they-have condemned
Pilates l'iaue demanda
Pilate the-water asked-for
et devant eus ses meins lava,
and before them his hands washed
et dist qu'ausi com nestoiées
and said that-just as cleaned
estoient ses meins et lavées,
were his hands and washed
qu'ausi quites et nez estoit
that-so quit and clean he-was
del juste c'on à tort jugoit.
of-the just-man whom-one at wrong judged

Li Juis le veissel tenoit
The Jew the vessel held
qu'en l'ostel Simon pris avoit,
that-in the-house (of-)Simon taken he-had
vint à Pilate et li donna;
came to Pilate and to-him gave
et Pilates en sauf mis l'a,
and Pilate in safe put it-has
dusqu'à tant que conté li fu
until-at so-much that told to-him it-was
qu'il avoient deffeit Jhesu.
that-they had undone Jesus
Et quant Joseph l'a oï dire,
And when Joseph it-has heard tell
pleins fu de mautalent et d'ire,
full he-was of ill-will and of-wrath
vint à Pilate isnelement
he-came to Pilate swiftly
et dist: «Servi t'ei longuement
and said Served thee-I-have long
et je et mi .v. chevalier,
both I and my five knights
ne n'ei éu point de louier,
nor not-I-have had whit of wages
ne jà n'en arei guerredon
nor ever not-thereof I-shall-have reward
fors tant que me donras un don
except so-much that me thou-wilt-give a gift
de ce que touz jours prommis m'as.
of this that all days promised me-hast

Donne-le-moi, povoir en has.»
Give-it-me power thereof thou-hast
Pilates dist: «Or demandez,
Pilate said Now ask
je vous donrei ce que vourez.
I to-you shall-give this that you-will-wish
Sanz la foiauté mon seigneur,
Without the fealty (of-)my lord
nus ne l'aroit à mon honneur.
anyone not it-would-have at my honor
Vous avez granz dons deserviz.»
You have great gifts deserved
— «Sire, dist Joseph, granz merciz!
Lord said Joseph great thanks
Je demant le cors de Jhesu,
I ask the body of Jesus
qu'il ont à tort en crouiz pendu.»
that-they have at wrong on cross hanged
Pilates mout se merveilla
Pilate much himself marveled
quant si petit don demanda,
when so small gift he-asked
et dist Pilates: «Je quidoie
and said Pilate I thought
et dedenz mon cuer le pensoie
and within my heart it thought
que greigneur chose vousissiez
that greater thing you-would-wish
et, certes, que vous l'éussiez.
and certainly that you it-should-have

Pour ce que son cors demandez,
For this that his body you-ask
pour vos soudées vous l'arez.»
for your pay you it-shall-have
— «Sire, granz merciz en aiez;
Lord great thanks thereof have
commandez qu'il me soit bailliez.»
command that-it to-me be delivered
Dist Pilates delivrement:
Said Pilate promptly
«Alez le penre isnelement.»
Go it take swiftly
— «Sire, unes granz genz et forz sunt,
Lord a great folk and strong they-are
bien sai penre n'ou me leirunt.»
well I-know take not-it me they-will-let
— «Si ferunt: alez vistement
So they-will-do go quickly
et le prenez hardiement.»
and it take boldly

The guards refuse Joseph the body, so Pilate sends Nicodemus with him and gives Joseph the vessel. They take Jesus down from the cross; washing the body, Joseph gathers the blood from the wounds in the vessel, then lays him in a stone tomb. Christ harrows hell and rises. The Jews, fearing they will be asked for him, plan to seize Joseph and Nicodemus; warned, Nicodemus flees, but they beat Joseph and lower him into a dark stone prison, sealed from above. There Christ comes to him in a great light, bringing the vessel, and begins to tell him how mankind, lost through woman, was recovered through woman.

D'ileques Joseph se tourna,
From-there Joseph himself turned
errant à la crouiz s'en ala,
straightway to the cross himself-thence went
Jhesu vit, si 'n ot pitié grant
Jesus he-saw so of-it he-had pity great
quant si vilment le vit pendant;
when so vilely him he-saw hanging
de pitié commence à plourer,
of pity he-begins to weep
dist as gueites qu'il vit ester:
he-said to-the watchmen whom-he saw stand
«Pilates m'a cest cors donné,
Pilate me-has this body given
et si m'a dist et commandé
and so me-has said and commanded
que je l'oste de cest despit.»
that I him-take-down from this contempt
Ensemble respondirent tuit:
Together answered all

«Ne l'osterez, car il dist ha
Not him-you-shall-take-down for he said has
qu'au tierz jour resuscitera;
that-on-the third day he-will-rise-again
jà tant ne sara susciter
ever so-much not he-will-know rise
que le feruns à mort livrer.»
that him we-shall-make to death deliver
Dist Joseph: «Leissiez le m'oster,
Said Joseph Let him me-take-down
car il le m'a feit delivrer.»
for he it to-me-has made deliver
Il respondent: «Ainz t'ocirruns,
They answer Rather thee-we-shall-kill
qu'avant trois jours gardé l'aruns.»
for-before three days guarded him-we-shall-have
A tant s'est Joseph departiz
At that himself-is Joseph departed
et à Pilate revertiz,
and to Pilate returned
et li conte comment avoient
and to-him tells how they-had
respondu ne ne li leissoient
answered nor not him they-let
oster Jhesu-Crist de la crouiz;
take-down Jesus-Christ from the cross
«Ainz crierent à une vouiz
Rather they-cried with one voice
que je mie ne l'osteroie.»
that I at-all not him-would-take-down

Pilates l'ot, n'en ha pas joie,
Pilate it-hears not-thereof has at-all joy
ainz se courouça durement;
rather himself he-angered harshly
ilec vist un homme en present,
there he-saw a man in presence
qui avoit non Nychodemus:
who had-as name Nicodemus
«Alez, dist-il, errant là-jus
Go said-he straightway down-there
avec Joseph d'Arymathye;
with Joseph of-Arimathea
ostez Jhesu de sa haschie
take-down Jesus from his torment
où li encrimé l'ont posé,
where the criminals him-have put
et l'eit Joseph tout delivré.»
and him-may-have Joseph all delivered
Lors prist Pilate le veissel;
Then took Pilate the vessel
quant l'en souvint, si l'en fu bel;
when him-thereof it-remembered so to-him-thereof it-was fair
Joseph apele, si li donne
Joseph he-calls so to-him gives
et dist: «Mout amiez cel homme.»
and said Much you-loved that man
Joseph respont: «Voir dit avez.»
Joseph answers True said you-have
Et d'ilec est tantost sevrez;
And from-there is at-once parted

a la crouiz errant s'en ala
to the cross straightway himself-thence went
o Nychodemus, qu'il mena.
with Nicodemus whom-he led
Pour ce Pilates li avoit
For this Pilate to-him had
donné, qu'il o soi ne vouloit
given for-he with himself not wished
riens retenir qui Jhesu fust,
anything to-retain that Jesus's were
dont acusez estre péust.
whereof accused be he-might
Ainsi com andui s'en aloient
Thus as both themselves-thence went
plus hisnelement qu'il povoient,
more swiftly than-they could
Nychodemus si s'en entra
Nicodemus so himself-thence entered
chiés un fevre que il trouva;
at-the-house-of a smith whom he found
tenailles prist et un martel
pincers he-took and a hammer
qu'ilec trouva, mout l'en fu bel
that-there he-found very to-him-thereof it-was fair
et vinrent à la crouiz errant.
and they-came to the cross straightway
Quant ce virent li chien puant,
When this saw the dogs stinking
si se sunt de cele part treit,
so themselves are to that side drawn

car de ce leur estoit mout leit.
for of this to-them it-was very ugly
Nychodemus dist: «Vous avez
Nicodemus said You have
feit de Jhesu quanque voulez,
done of Jesus whatever you-wish
tout ce que vous en demandastes;
all this that you thereof asked
et nos prouvoz sires Pilates
and our provost lord Pilate
si l'a à ceste homme donné,
so him-has to this man given
pour ce qu'il l'avoit demandé.
for this that-he him-had asked
Il est morz, que bien le veez;
He is dead for well it you-see
apenre soufrir li devez.
learn to-suffer it you-must
Il me dist que de ci l'ostasse
He me said that from here him-I-should-take-down
et que je à Joseph le donnasse.»
and that I to Joseph him should-give
Adonc commencent à crier
Then they-begin to cry
que il devoit resusciter,
that he was-to rise-again
et qu'il mie n'ou bailleroient
and that-they at-all not-him would-give
a Joseph n'à homme qu'il voient.
to Joseph nor-to man that-they see

Nychodemus se courouça,
Nicodemus himself angered
et dist jà pour eus n'ou leira
and said ever for them not-it he-will-leave
qu'il ne li baille meintenant
that-he not to-him give at-once
maugrez trestouz leur nés devant.
despite all their noses before
Adonc se prennent à lever,
Then themselves they-take to rise
a Pilate s'en vont clamer;
to Pilate themselves-thence they-go to-complain
et cil andui en haut munterent
and those two on high climbed
et Jhesu de la crouiz osterent.
and Jesus from the cross took-down
Joseph entre ses braz le prist,
Joseph between his arms him took
tout souef à terre le mist,
all gently to earth him put
le cors atourna belement
the body he-arrayed fairly
et le lava mout nestement.
and it washed very cleanly
Endrementier qu'il le lavoit,
While that-he it washed

vist le cler sanc qui decouroit
he-saw the bright blood that flowed-down
de ses plaies, qui li seinnoient
from his wounds which to-him bled
pour ce que lavées estoient:
for this that washed they-were
de la pierre adonc li membra
of the stone then to-him it-remembered
qui fendi quant li sans raia
which split when the blood streamed
de sen costé, où fu feruz.
from his side where he-was struck
Adonc est-il errant couruz
Then is-he straightway run
a son veissel et si l'a pris,
to his vessel and so it-has taken
et lau li sans couloit l'a mis,
and where-there the blood flowed it-has put
qu'avis li fu que mieuz seroient
for-opinion to-him it-was that better would-be
les goutes ki dedenz cherroient
the drops which within would-fall
qu'en liu où mestre les péust,
than-in place where put them he-could
jà tant pener ne s'en séust.
ever so-much toil not himself-thereof he-might-know

A son veissel ha bien torchies
With his vessel has well wiped
les plaies, et bien nestoïes
the wounds and well cleaned
celes des meins et dou costé,
those of-the hands and of-the side
des piez environ et et en lé.
of-the feet around and and in breadth
Or fu li sans touz recéuz
Now was the blood all received
et ou veissel touz requeilluz.
and in-the vessel all gathered
Joseph le cors envolepa
Joseph the body wrapped
en un sydoine qu'acheta,
in a shroud that-he-bought
et en une pierre le mist
and in a stone it put
qu'il à son wès avoit eslist,
which-he for his use had chosen
et d'une pierre le couvri
and with-a stone it covered
que nous apelons tumbe ci.
which we call tomb here
Li Juif si sunt retourné,
The Jews so are returned
si ont à Pilate pallé.
so have to Pilate spoken
Pylates commanda et dist,
Pilate commanded and said

en quel liu que on le méist,
in what place that one him might-put
par nuit et par jour le gueitassent,
by night and by day him they-should-watch
que si deciple ne l'emblassent;
that his disciples not him-should-steal
car Jhesus à eus dist avoit
for Jesus to them said had
qu'au tierz jour resusciteroit.
that-on-the third day he-would-rise-again
Cil ont leur gueites assemblées
Those have their watchmen assembled
tout entour le sepulchre, armées;
all around the sepulcher armed
et Joseph d'ilec se tourna
and Joseph from-there himself turned
et en sa meison s'en ala.
and into his house himself-thence went
Li vrais Diex, en ces entrefeites,
The true God in these meanwhiles
comme sires, comme prophetes,
as lord as prophet
en enfer est errant alez;
into hell is straightway gone
ses amis en ha hors gitez,
his friends thence has out cast
Eve et Adam, leur progenie,
Eve and Adam their progeny
qu'Ennemis eut en sa baillie,
which-the-Enemy had in his power

seinz, saintes, toute boenne gent
saints holy-women all good folk
(car des boens n'i leissa neent),
for of-the good not-there he-left anything
touz ceus qu'il avoit rachetez,
all those whom-he had redeemed
pour qui il fu à mort livrez.
for whom he was to death delivered
Quant Nostres-Sires ce feit eut
When Our-Lord this done had
quanqu'il li sist et il li pleut,
whatever-it him suited and it him pleased
resuscita, c'onques n'ou seurent
he-rose-again so-that-ever not-it knew
li Juif ne vooir n'ou peurent;
the Jews nor see not-it could
a Marie la Madaleinne
to Mary the Magdalene
s'apparust, c'est chose certainne,
himself-appeared this-is thing certain
a ses apostres, à sa gent,
to his apostles to his folk
qui le virent apertement.
who him saw openly
Quant eut ce fait, la renummée
When he-had this done the renown
ala par toute la contrée,
went through all the country

relevez est de mort à vie
risen is from death to life
Jhesus li fiuz sainte Marie.
Jesus the son (of-)holy Mary
Si deciple l'unt tout véu
His disciples him-have all seen
et l'unt très bien reconnéu;
and him-have very well recognized
et ont véu de leur amis
and have seen of their friends
qui furent trespassé jadis,
who were passed-away formerly
qui o Jhesu resusciterent
who with Jesus rose-again
et en la gloire Dieu alerent.
and into the glory (of-)God went
Les gardes en sunt decéu,
The guards thereof are deceived
qu'encor ne l'unt apercéu.
for-still not him-have perceived
Quant li Juif ice escouterent,
When the Jews this heard
en la synagogue assemblerent
in the synagogue they-assembled
et si tinrent leur parlement,
and so held their council
car leur chose va malement;
for their thing goes badly

et li un as autres disoient
and the ones to-the others said
que se c'est voirs que dire ooient
that if this-is true that say they-heard
et que il fust resuscitez,
and that he were risen
qu'encor aroient mal assez.
that-still they-would-have ill plenty
Et cil qui l'avoient gardé
And those who him-had guarded
disoient bien par verité
said well by truth
qu'il n'estoit pas lau on le mist.
that-he not-was at-all where-there one him put
Encor unt-il plus grant despist,
Still have-they more great contempt
car il l'unt par Joseph perdu:
for they him-have through Joseph lost
de ce sunt-il tout esperdu;
of this are-they all distraught
et se damages y ha nus,
and if harm there is any
ç'a-il feit et Nychodemus.
this-has-he done and Nicodemus
Adonques tost pourpensé ont
Then quickly considered they-have
qu'à leur meistres responderont,
what-to their masters they-will-answer
se il leur estoit demandez;
if he of-them were asked

et chaucuns s'i est acordez
and each-one himself-there is agreed
comment il en pourrunt respondre,
how they thereof will-be-able answer
quant on les en voura semundre.
when one them thereof will-wish to-summon
Nychodemus de crouiz l'osta
Nicodemus from cross him-took-down
et à Joseph le commanda,
and to Joseph him entrusted
si l'dient: «Nous le vous leissames,
so it-they-say We him to-you left
et puis errant nous en alames.»
and then straightway ourselves thence went
Li Juif pensent qu'il ferunt:
The Jews think what-they will-do
Joseph, Nychodemus penrunt
Joseph Nicodemus they-will-take
si coiement c'on n'ou sara,
so quietly that-one not-it will-know
et puis ceste chose cherra;
and then this thing will-fall
«Et s'il nous welent acuser,
And if-they us wish to-accuse
qu'il le nous vueillent demander,
that-they it of-us may-wish to-ask
tantost com les pourruns seisir,
as-soon as them we-shall-be-able seize
de mort les couvenra morir.
by death them it-will-behoove to-die

Chaucuns de nous respondera
Each-one of us will-answer
que on à Joseph le bailla.
that one to Joseph him gave
Se vous Joseph ci nous rendez,
If you Joseph here to-us render
par Joseph Jhesu raverez.»
through Joseph Jesus you-will-have-again
A ce conseil sunt acordé
To this counsel are agreed
tout li josne et tout li barbé.
all the young and all the bearded
Cist consauz est donnez par sens,
This counsel is given by sense
car boens et de grant pourpens.
for good and of great forethought
Nychodemus eut un ami
Nicodemus had a friend
a ce conseil, qui l'en garni;
at this council who him-thereof warned
manda-li que il s'en fuist,
sent-to-him that he himself-thence should-flee
ou il morroit, et il si fist.
or he would-die and he so did
Et li Juif s'en vunt là droit;
And the Jews themselves-thence go there straight
meis il jà fuiz s'en estoit.
but he already fled himself-thence was
Quant il voient que perdu l'unt,
When they see that lost him-they-have

en la meison Joseph s'en vunt,
into the house (of-)Joseph themselves-thence they-go
mout tristoié, mout irascu
very saddened very angered
de ce qu'il l'ont ainsi perdu.
of this that-they him-have thus lost
L'uis de l'ostel Joseph brisierent,
The-door of the-house (of-)Joseph they-broke
si le pristrent et emmenerent;
so him took and led-away
mais ainçois le firent vestir,
but first him they-made dress
car il estoit alez gesir.
for he was gone to-lie-down
Demandent li, quant l'ont tenu,
They-ask him when him-they-have held
que il avoit feit de Jhesu.
what he had done with Jesus
Joseph respont isnelement:
Joseph answers swiftly
«Quant je l'eu mis ou monument,
When I him-had put in-the tomb
a vos chevaliers le leissei
to your knights him I-left
et en ma meison m'en alei;
and into my house myself-thence I-went
ce sache Diex que puis n'ou vi,
this may-know God that since not-him I-saw
ne meis puis paller n'en oï.»
nor any-more since speak not-thereof I-heard

Cil li dient: «Tu l'as emblé.»
Those to-him say Thou it-hast stolen
— «Non ai, en moie verité.»
Not I-have in my truth
— «Il n'est pas là où mis l'avoies;
He not-is at-all there where put him-thou-hadst
enseigne-le-nous toutes voies.»
show-him-to-us all the-same
— «Je ne sai où est, s'il n'est là
I not know where he-is if-he not-is there
où je le mis quatre jours ha;
where I him put four days it-has
et, se lui pleist que pour lui muire,
and if him it-pleases that for him I-should-die
bien sai ce ne me puet rien nuire.»
well I-know this not me can anything harm
Chiés un riche homme l'ont mené,
At-the-house-of a rich man him-they-have led
forment l'unt batu et frapé.
greatly him-have beaten and struck
Leenz eut une tour roonde,
Within there-was a tower round
ki haute estoit et mout parfunde.
which high was and very deep
Lors le reprennent et rebatent,
Then him they-take-again and beat-again
et tout plat à terre l'abatent;
and all flat to earth him-they-throw-down
avalé l'ont en la prison,
lowered him-they-have into the prison

ou plus parfont de la meison,
in-the more deep of the house
qui estoit horrible et obscure,
which was horrible and dark
toute feite de pierre dure;
all made of stone hard
forment l'ont fermée et serrée,
greatly it-they-have closed and locked
et par dessus bien seelée.
and over above well sealed
Mout fu Pilates irascuz
Very was Pilate angered
quant set que Joseph fu perduz,
when he-knows that Joseph was lost
et en sen cuer mout l'en pesoit,
and in his heart much to-him-thereof it-grieved
que nul si boen ami n'avoit.
for any so good friend not-he-had
Au siecle fu bien adirez
To-the world he-was well lost
et vileinnement ostelez;
and villainously lodged
meis Diex n'ou mist pas en oubli,
but God not-him put at-all into forgetting
cui on trueve au besoing ami;
whom one finds at-the need friend
car ce que pour lui soufert ha,
for this that for him suffered he-has
mout très bien li guerredonna:
very very well to-him repaid

a lui dedenz la prison vint,
to him within the prison he-came
et son veissel porta, qu'il tint,
and his vessel brought which-he held
qui grant clarté seur lui gita,
which great brightness upon him cast
si que la chartre enlumina;
so that the dungeon lit-up
et quant Joseph la clarté vist,
and when Joseph the brightness saw
en son cuer mout s'en esjoïst.
in his heart much himself-thereof rejoiced
Diex son veissel li aportoit,
God his vessel to-him brought
où son sanc requeillu avoit.
where his blood gathered he-had
De la grace dou Seint-Esprist
Of the grace of-the Holy-Spirit
fu touz pleins, quant le veissel vist,
he-was all full when the vessel he-saw
et dist: «Sires Diex tou-puissanz,
and said Lord God all-mighty
dont vient ceste clartez si granz?
whence comes this brightness so great
Je croi si bien vous et vo non
I believe so well you and your name
qu'ele ne vient se de vous non.»
that-it not comes except from you not
— «Joseph, or ne t'esmaie mie:
Joseph now not thyself-dismay at-all

la vertu Dieu has en aïe;
the power (of-)God thou-hast in aid
saches qu'ele te sauvera
know that-it thee will-save
en Paradis, où te menra.»
in Paradise where thee it-will-lead
Joseph Jhesu-Crist demandoit
Joseph Jesus-Christ asked
qui il iert, qui si biaus estoit:
who he was who so fair was
«Je ne vous puis, sire, esgarder
I not you can lord look-upon
ne connoistre ne aviser.»
nor know nor make-out
— «Joseph, dist Diex, enten à moi,
Joseph said God attend to me
ce que je te direi si croi.
this that I to-thee shall-say so believe
Je sui li fiuz Dieu, qu'envoier
I am the son (of-)God whom-to-send
voust Diex en terre pour sauver
wished God on earth for to-save
les pecheours de dampnement
the sinners from damnation
et dou grant infernal tourment;
and from-the great infernal torment
je vins en terre mort soufrir
I came on earth death to-suffer
en la crouiz finer et morir,
on the cross to-end and to-die

pour l'uevre men pere sauver
for the-work (of-)my father save
qu'Adans avoit feite dampner
which-Adam had made be-damned
par la pomme que il menja,
through the apple that he ate
qu'Eve sa fame li donna
which-Eve his wife to-him gave
par le conseil de l'Ennemi,
through the counsel of the-Enemy
qu'ele plus tost que Dieu créi.
for-she more soon than God believed
Après ce, Diex de Paradis
After this God from Paradise
les gita et les fist chetis
them cast and them made wretched
pour le pechié que feit avoient
for the sin that done they-had
quant son commandement passoient.
when his commandment they-transgressed
Eve conçut, enfans porta;
Eve conceived children bore
et li et ce qu'ele enfanta
and her and this that-she bore
voust tout li Ennemis avoir
wished all the Enemy to-have
en son demeinne, en son pooir,
in his domain in his power

et les eut tant cum plust au Pere
and them had so-long as it-pleased to-the Father
que li Fiuz naschi de la mere.
that the Son was-born of the mother
Par fame estoit hons adirez,
Through woman was man lost
et par fame fu recouvrez;
and through woman was recovered
fame la mort nous pourchaça,
woman the death for-us procured
fame la vie nous restora;
woman the life for-us restored
par fame estions emprisonné,
through woman we-were imprisoned
par fame fumes recouvré.
through woman we-were recovered

Christ tells Joseph that he died to save his Father's work; Joseph, who loved him in secret, will have eternal life and keep the vessel, which he may entrust only to three persons, in the name of the Trinity. The sacrament will remember Joseph: the altar is the tomb, the corporal the shroud, the chalice the vessel, the paten the stone. Christ gives him the vessel and the secret words of the Grail, which the poet dares not tell, and leaves him in prison. Long after, a pilgrim who saw Christ's miracles comes to Rome, where the emperor's son lies shut with leprosy in a tower with only a hatch for his food.

«Joseph, or has oï comment
Joseph now thou-hast heard how
li Fiuz Diu tout certeinnement
the Son (of-)God all certainly
vint en terre; et si has oï
came on earth and so thou-hast heard
pour quoi de la Virge naschi,
for what of the Virgin he-was-born
pour ce qu'en la crouiz moréust
for this that-on the cross he-should-die
et li Peres s'uevre réust:
and the Father his-work should-have-again
pour ce sui en terre venu,
for this I-am on earth come
et li sans de mon cors issuz,
and the blood from my body issued
qui en issi par .v. foïes;
which thence issued by five times
assez i soufri de haschies.»
plenty there I-suffered of torments

— «Comment, sire! Joseph li dist;
How lord Joseph to-him said
estes-vous donc Jhesus qui prist
are-you then Jesus who took
char en la Virge precieuse,
flesh in the Virgin precious
ki fu Joseph fame et espeuse?
who was (of-)Joseph wife and spouse
Cil que Judas xxx deniers
He whom Judas thirty pence
vendi as Juis pautonniers,
sold to-the Jews scoundrels
et qu'il fusterent et batirent
and whom-they cudgeled and beat
et puis en la crouiz le pendirent?
and then on the cross him hanged
Que j'en la sepouture mis,
Whom I-in the sepulcher put
et de cui dirent li Juis
and of whom said the Jews
que j'avoie vo cors emblé
that I-had your body stolen
et dou sepuchre destourné?»
and from-the sepulcher removed
— «Je sui icil tout vraiement:
I am that-one all truly
croi-le, si auras sauvement;
believe-it so thou-shalt-have salvation
croi-le et si n'en doute mie:
believe-it and so not-thereof doubt at-all

si auras pardurable vie.»
so thou-shalt-have everlasting life

— «Sire, dist Joseph, je vous proi
Lord said Joseph I you pray

que vous aiez pitié de moi.
that you may-have pity on me

Pour vous sui-je cileques mis;
For you am-I here put

si serei tant con serei vis,
so I-shall-be so-long as I-shall-be alive

se vous de moi pitié n'avez
if you on me pity not-have

et de cest liu ne me gitez.
and from this place not me cast

Sire, touz jours vous ei amé;
Lord all days you I-have loved

meis n'en ei pas à vous pallé;
but not-thereof I-have at-all to you spoken

et pour ce dire ne l'osoie,
and for this to-say not it-I-dared

certeinnement, que je quidoie
certainly for I thought

que vous ne m'en créussiez mie,
that you not me-thereof would-believe at-all

pour ce que j'en la compeignie
for this that I-in the company

estoie à ceus qui vous haoient
was of those who you hated

et qui vostre mort pourpalloient.»
and who your death plotted

Lors dist Diex: «Avec mes amis
Then said God With my friends
et aveques mes ennemis
and with my enemies
estoie; meis quant avenue
I-was but when happened
est aucune descouvenue,
is some mishap
n'i ha mestier senefiance.
not-there is need signification
Or le vous leirei en soufrance.
Now it to-you I-shall-leave in abeyance
Tu estoies mes boens amis,
Thou wast my good friend
pouce estoies o le Juis,
therefore thou-wast with the Jews
et bien seu que mestier m'aroies
and well I-knew that need of-me-thou-wouldst-have
et au besoing que m'eideroies;
and at-the need that me-thou-wouldst-aid
car Diex mes peres t'eut donné
for God my father to-thee-had given
le povoir et la volenté
the power and the will
que péus Pilate servir,
that thou-couldst Pilate serve
qui si le voust remerir:
who so it wished to-reward

de ten service te paia
for thy service thee he-paid
en ce que men cors te donna.»
in this that my body to-thee he-gave
— «Hay, sire! ne dites mie
Ah lord not say at-all
que miens soiez n'en ma baillie.»
that mine you-be nor-in my keeping
— «Si sui, Joseph, je l'direi bien;
So I-am Joseph I it-shall-tell well
je sui as boens, li boen sunt mien.
I am of-the good the good are mine
Sez-tu que tu as deservi
Know-thou what thou hast deserved
en ce que je donnez te fui?
in this that I given to-thee was
La vie pardurable aras,
The life everlasting thou-shalt-have
quant de cest siecle partiras.
when from this world thou-shalt-depart
Nul de mes deciples o moi
Any of my disciples with me
n'ei amené, sez-tu pour quoi?
not-I-have brought knowest-thou for what
Car nus ne set la grant amour
For anyone not knows the great love
que j'ai à toi dès ice jour
that I-have to thee from this day
que tu jus de la crouiz m'ostas,
that thou down from the cross me-tookest

ne veinne gloire éu n'en has.
nor vain glory had not-thereof thou-hast
Nus ne connoit ten cuer loial,
Anyone not knows thy heart loyal
fors toi et Dieu l'esperital.
except thee and God the-spiritual
Tu m'as amé celéement,
Thou me-hast loved secretly
et je toi tout certainnement.
and I thee all certainly
Nostre amour en apert venra
Our love in open will-come
et chaucuns savoir la pourra;
and each-one know it will-be-able
meis ele sera mout nuisanz
but it will-be very harmful
as maveis Juis mescreanz.
to-the wicked Jews unbelieving
En ten povoir l'enseigne aras
In thy power the-token thou-shalt-have
de ma mort et la garderas,
of my death and it thou-shalt-keep
et cil l'averunt à garder
and those it-shall-have to keep
a cui tu la voudras donner.»
to whom thou it wilt-wish to-give

Nostres-Sires ha treit avant
Our-Lord has drawn forth
le veissel precieus et grant
the vessel precious and great
où li saintimes sans estoit
where the most-holy blood was
que Joseph requeillu avoit,
which Joseph gathered had
quant il jus de la crouiz l'osta
when he down from the cross him-took
et il ses plaies li lava;
and he his wounds for-him washed
et quant Joseph vist le veissel
and when Joseph saw the vessel
et le connut, mout l'en fu bel;
and it knew very to-him-thereof it-was fair
meis de ce mout se merveilloit
but at this much himself he-marveled
que nus ne seut où mis l'avoit,
that anyone not knew where put it-he-had
qu'en sa meison l'avoit repus,
for-in his house it-he-had hidden
c'onques ne l'avoit véu nus.
so-that-ever not it-had seen anyone
Et il tantost s'agenouilla,
And he at-once himself-knelt
Nostre-Seigneur en mercia:
Our-Lord thereof thanked

«Sire Diex, sui-je donques teus
Lord God am-I then such
que le veissel si precieus
that the vessel so precious
puisse ne ne doie garder
I-may nor not ought keep
où fis vostre saint sanc couler?»
where I-made your holy blood flow
Diex dist: «Tu le me garderas
God said Thou it for-me shalt-keep
et cius cui le comanderas.
and that-one to-whom it thou-shalt-entrust
«Joseph, bien ce saras garder,
Joseph well this thou-wilt-know keep
que tu ne le doiz commander
that thou not it must entrust
qu'à trois persones qui l'arunt.
except-to three persons who it-shall-have
Ou non dou Pere le penrunt
In-the name of-the Father it they-shall-take
et dou Fil et dou Saint-Esprist,
and of-the Son and of-the Holy-Spirit
et se doivent croire trestuit
and so must believe all
que ces trois persones sunt une
that these three persons are one
et persone entiere est chaucune.»
and person whole is each-one
Joseph, qui à genouz estoit,
Joseph who on knees was

prist le veissel que Diex tenoit.
took the vessel that God held
«Joseph, dist Diex, as pecheeurs
Joseph said God to-the sinners
est sauvemenz pour leur labeurs.
is salvation for their labors
Qui en moi vraiement croirunt,
Who in me truly will-believe
de leur maus repentance arunt.
of their ills repentance shall-have
Tu-méismes, pour tes soudées,
Thou-thyself for thy wages
has mout de joies conquestées;
hast very-many of joys won
saches que jameis sacremenz
know that ever-more sacrament
feiz n'iert, que ramembremenz
made not-shall-be that remembrance
de toi n'i soit. Tout ce verra
of thee not-there be All this will-see
qui bien garder y savera.»
who well keep there will-know
— «Par foi! dist Joseph, je n'ou sai;
By faith said Joseph I not-it know
dites-le-moi, si le sarai.»
tell-it-me so it I-shall-know
— «Joseph, bien sez que chiés Symon
Joseph well thou-knowest that at-the-house-of Simon
menjei et tout mi compeignon,
I-ate and all my companions

a la Cene, le juesdi;
at the Supper on-the Thursday
le pein, le vin y benéi,
the bread the wine there I-blessed
et leur dis que ma char menjoient
and to-them said that my flesh they-ate
ou pein, ou vin mon sanc buvoient:
in-the bread in-the wine my blood they-drank
ausi sera representée
so will-be represented
cele taule en meinte contrée.
that table in many-a country
Ce que tu de la crouiz m'ostas
This that thou from the cross me-tookest
et ou sepulchre me couchas,
and in-the sepulcher me laidest
c'est l'auteus seur quoi me metrunt
this-is the-altar upon which me shall-put
cil qui me sacrefierunt.
those who me shall-sacrifice
Li dras où fui envolepez,
The cloth where I-was wrapped
sera corporaus apelez.
will-be corporal called
Cist veissiaus où men sanc méis,
This vessel where my blood thou-didst-put
quant de men cors le requeillis,
when from my body it thou-gatheredst
calices apelez sera.
chalice called will-be

La platine ki sus girra
The paten which on-it will-lie
iert la pierre senefiée
will-be the stone signified
qui fu deseur moi seelée,
which was over me sealed
quant ou sepuchre m'éus mis.
when in-the sepulcher me-thou-hadst put
Ice doiz-tu savoir touz dis,
This must-thou know all days
ces choses sunt senefiance
these things are signification
qu'en fera de toi remembrance.
that-one will-make of thee remembrance
Tout cil qui ten veissel verrunt,
All those who thy vessel shall-see
en ma compeignie serunt;
in my company shall-be
de cuer arunt emplissement
of heart they-shall-have fulfillment
et joie pardurablement.
and joy everlastingly
Cil qui ces paroles pourrunt
Those who these words shall-be-able
apenre et qui les retenrunt,
learn and who them shall-retain
as genz serunt vertueus,
to-the folk shall-be virtuous
a Dieu assez plus gratieus;
to God quite more pleasing

ne pourrunt estre forjugié
not shall-be-able be wrongly-judged
en court, ne de leur droit trichié,
in court nor of their right cheated
n'en court de bataille venchu,
nor-in court of battle vanquished
se bien ont leur droit retenu.»
if well they-have their right retained
Ge n'ose conter ne retreire,
I not-dare tell nor relate
ne je ne le pourroie feire,
nor I not it could do
neis, se je feire le voloie,
not-even if I to-do it wished
se je le grant livre n'avoie
if I the great book not-had
où les estoires sunt escrites,
where the histories are written
par les granz clers feites et dites:
by the great clerks made and told
là sunt li grant secré escrit
there are the great secrets written
qu'en numine le Graal et dit.
which-one names the Grail and tells
Adonc le veissel li bailla,
Then the vessel to-him he-gave
et Joseph volentiers pris l'a.
and Joseph gladly taken it-has

Diex dist: «Joseph, quant vouras
God said Joseph when thou-wilt-wish
et tu mestier en averas,
and thou need thereof shalt-have
a ces trois vertuz garderas,
to these three powers thou-shalt-hold
q'une chose estre ainsi creiras;
that-one thing to-be thus thou-shalt-believe
et la dame boneeurée
and the lady blessed
qui est Mere Dieu apelée,
who is Mother (of-)God called
ki le benooit Fil Dieu porta,
who the blessed Son (of-)God bore
mout très bien te conseillera;
very very well thee will-counsel
et tu orras, ainsi le croi,
and thou shalt-hear so it I-believe
le Seint-Esprit paller à toi.
the Holy-Spirit speak to thee
«Ore, Joseph, je m'en irei.
Now Joseph I myself-thence shall-go
De ci mie ne t'emmenrei,
From here at-all not thee-I-shall-take-away
car ce ne seroit pas reison;
for this not would-be at-all reason
ainz demourras en la prison.
rather thou-shalt-remain in the prison
La chartre sanz clarté sera,
The dungeon without brightness will-be

si comme estoit quant je ving çà:
just as it-was when I came hither
garde que tu n'aies peeur,
take-care that thou not-may-have fear
ne au cuer friçon ne tristeur;
nor in-the heart shudder nor sadness
car ta delivrance tenrunt
for thy deliverance shall-hold
a merveille cil qui l'orrunt.
for marvel those who it-shall-hear
Li Seinz-Espriz o toi sera,
The Holy-Spirit with thee will-be
qui touz jours te conseillera.»
who all days thee will-counsel
Ainsis est Joseph demourez
Thus is Joseph remained
en la prison bien enchartrez;
in the prison well imprisoned
ne de lui meis plus pallerent,
nor of him any-more more they-spoke
meis trestout ester le leissierent.
but altogether stand him they-let
Et demoura mout longuement
And it-remained very long
que de lui ne fu pallement,
that of him not was speech
tant qu'il avint c'uns pelerins,
until that-it happened that-a pilgrim
qui fu assez jounes meschins,
who was quite young lad

en cele terre de Judée
in that land of Judea
fist là mout longue demourée
made there very long stay
au tens que Jhesus-Criz ala
at-the time that Jesus-Christ went
par terre et sen nou preescha,
through earth and his name preached
qui mout de miracles feisoit,
who many of miracles made
car il bien feire les povoit.
for he well make them could
Les avugles vi cler veanz
The blind I-saw clear seeing
et les contreiz touz droiz alanz,
and the crippled all straight walking
et autres miracles assez
and other miracles plenty
que n'aroie à lonc tens contez,
that not-I-would-have in long time told
car trois morz y resuscita.
for three dead there he-raised
Li pelerins tout ce vist là;
The pilgrim all this saw there
meis li Juif, qui grant envie
but the Jews who great envy
eurent seur lui par felonnie,
had upon him through wickedness

le firent-il en crouiz morir
him made-they on cross die
pour ce qu'il ne vout obéir
for this that-he not wished to-obey
de riens à leur commandemenz,
in anything to their commandments
car il souduisoient les genz.
for they deceived the folk
Au tens que je vous ei conté
At-the time that I to-you have told
que li pelerins eut esté
that the pilgrim had been
en Judée, si vint à Romme
in Judea so he-came to Rome
et hesberja chiés un preudomme.
and lodged at-the-house-of a worthy-man
Adonc li fiuz l'empereeur
Then the son (of-)the-emperor
estoit en si très grant doleur
was in so very great grief
qu'il avoit une maladie,
for-he had a sickness
car de lepre iert sa char pourrie;
for with leprosy was his flesh rotted
si vil estoit et si puanz
so vile he-was and so stinking
que nus o lui n'iert habitanz.
that anyone with him not-was dwelling
On l'avoit en une tour mis,
One him-had in a tower put

où n'avoit fenestre ne wis
where not-there-was window nor door
c'une petite fenestrele,
except-a little window
où on metoit une escuele
where one put a bowl
quant on li donnoit à mengier,
when one to-him gave to eat
adès quant en avoit mestier.
always when thereof be-had need

The pilgrim tells his host of the prophet Jesus, who healed every sickness and whom the Jews crucified in Judea under Pilate; had he lived, he would have cured Vespasian. Before the emperor he repeats it, stakes his head on it, and asks to be held in prison until it is proved. The court cannot believe Pilate allowed the death, but the emperor, with Vespasian pleading, sends his wisest man to Judea to learn the truth and bring back anything the prophet owned that might cure his son, threatening Pilate if the story is true. The messengers land, and one writes to Pilate, his friend, to meet them.

Li pelerins fu hostelez,
The pilgrim was lodged
bien aeisiez et bien soupez.
well eased and well supped
L'ostes au pelerin palloit
The-host to-the pilgrim spoke
que mout granz damages estoit
that very great harm it-was
dou fil à leur empereeur,
of-the son of their emperor
qui estoit à tel deshonneur;
who was in such dishonor
et li pelerins demanda
and the pilgrim asked
quel duel et quel deshonneur ha;
what grief and what dishonor he-has
et li hostes li ha conté
and the host to-him has told
de sa lepre la verité,
of his leprosy the truth

que cil Vaspasiens avoit
that that Vespasian had
et nus saner ne l'en povoit:
and anyone heal not him-thereof could
Fiuz estoit à l'empereeur,
Son he-was to the-emperor
tant en avoit-il duel greigneur.
so-much thereof had-he grief greater
Li hostes li ha demandé
The host him has asked
s'il avoit nule rien trouvé
if-he had any thing found
qui Vaspasien boenne fust
which to-Vespasian good were
n'à lui curer mestier éust.
nor-to him cure need should-have
Li pelerins li respondi:
The pilgrim to-him answered
«Jo ne sai pas chose ore ci;
I not know at-all thing now here
meis ce puis-je bien affermer
but this can-I well affirm
que là dont je vieng d'outremer
that there whence I come from-overseas
jadis un grant profete avoit
formerly a great prophet there-was
qui sanz doute preudons estoit,
who without doubt worthy-man was
et meintes foiz fist Diex pour lui.
and many-a time did God for him

Je vi malades qu'il gari
I saw sick-men whom-he healed
de mout diverses maladies
of very diverse sicknesses
qu'il avoient, viés et anties;
which-they had old and ancient
je vi contreiz qu'il redreça
I saw crippled whom-he straightened
et avugles qu'il raluma,
and blind whom-he relit
hommes qui tout pourri estoient,
men who all rotted were
qui de lui tout sein s'en aloient,
who from him all sound themselves-thence went
et autres miracles assez
and other miracles plenty
que n'aroie à lonc tens contez;
that not-I-would-have in long time told
meis il ne garissoit neent,
but he not healed anything
ne garessit entierement.
not he-should-heal entirely
Et li riche homme le haoient
And the rich men him hated
de Judée, qu'il ne povoient
of Judea for-they not could
saner ausi comme il povoit
heal so as he could
ne feire autel comme il feisoit.
nor do the-like as he did

Et li hostes si demanda
And the host so asked
au pelerin qu'il hesberja
of-the pilgrim whom-he lodged
qu'estoit devenuz cil preudon
what-was become that worthy-man
et coment il avoit à non.
and how he had as name
— «Je l'vous direi, que bien le sai;
I it-to-you shall-tell for well it I-know
meintes foiz nummer oï l'ai:
many-a time name heard it-I-have
Jhesus eut non li fiuz Marie,
Jesus had-as name the son (of-)Mary
de Nazareth lez Bethanie.
of Nazareth beside Bethany
La pute gent qui le haïrent
The vile folk who him hated
tant donnerent et tant prommirent
so-much gave and so-much promised
a ceus qui le povoir avoient
to those who the power had
et qui les joustices tenoient,
and who the justices held
tant le chacierent qu'il le prirent
so-much him they-hunted that-they him took
et vilainnement le leidirent
and villainously him insulted
et le despouillierent tout nu,
and him stripped all naked

tant qu'il l'eurent forment batu;
until that-they him-had greatly beaten
et quant pis ne li peurent feire
and when worse not to-him they-could do
li Juif, qui sunt de pute eire,
the Jews who are of vile sort
si le firent crucefier
so him they-made crucify
en la crouiz et martirier;
on the cross and martyr
et sanz doute, se il veschist,
and without doubt if he had-lived
Vaspasien, se il vousist,
Vespasian if he had-wished
garessist de sa maladie,
he-would-have-healed of his sickness
ne fust si granz ne si antie.»
not were-it so great nor so ancient
— «Or me dites, se vous savez,
Now me tell if you know
se vous dire le me volez,
if you tell it to-me wish
leur oïstes-vous unques dire
them heard-you ever say
pour quoi le mirent à martire?»
for what him they-put to martyrdom
— «Pour ce que il si le haoient
For this that they so him hated
qu'il oïr paller n'en povoient.»
that-they hear speak not-thereof could

— «Dites-moi en queu seignourie
Tell-me in what lordship
ce fu feit, n'en quele baillie.»
this was done nor-in what jurisdiction
— «Sire, ce fu feit en Judée,
Lord this was done in Judea
que Pilates ha gouvernée,
which Pilate has governed
ki est desouz l'empereeur
who is under the-emperor
de Romme et est de sa teneur.»
of Rome and is of his holding
— «Oseriez-vous dire et retraire
Would-you-dare say and relate
devant l'empereeur Cesaire
before the-emperor Caesar
ce que vous m'avez ci conté?»
this that you me-have here told
Cil dist: «Oïl, par verité.
That-one said Yes by truth
N'est hons devant cui ne l'déisse
Not-is man before whom not it-I-would-say
et que prouver ne le vousisse.»
and that prove not it I-would-wish
Quant hostes ce escouté eut,
When host this heard had
tout errant au plus tost qu'il peut
all straightway at-the most soon that-he could
est à l'empereeur alez,
is to the-emperor gone

si s'en est ou paleis entrez;
so himself-thence is into-the palace entered
l'empereeur apelé ha;
the-emperor called he-has
toute la chose li conta,
all the thing to-him told
ce qu'eut oï dou pelerin,
this that-he-had heard from-the pilgrim
de chief en chief dusqü'en la fin,
from head to head until-into the end
quant l'empereres l'eut oï,
when the-emperor it-had heard
si s'en merveilla mout ausi
so himself-thereof marveled much also
et dist: «Estre ce voir pourroit
and said Be this true could
qu[e] tu m'as conté orendroit?»
that thou me-hast told just-now
— «Si m'aiust Diex, sire, ne sai,
So me-may-help God lord not I-know
tout ainsi de lui oï l'ai.
all thus of him heard it-I-have
Querre l'irei, se vous volez;
Seek him-I-shall-go if you wish
tout ainsi conter li orrez.»
all thus tell him you-shall-hear
L'empereres ha respondu:
The-emperor has answered
«Va le querre; que targes-tu?»
Go him seek why delayest-thou

L'ostes en sa meison ala,
The-host into his house went
le pelerin arreisonna
the pilgrim addressed
et dist: «L'empereres vous mande
and said The-emperor you summons
par moi, et si le vous commande
through me and so it to-you commands
que vous vigniez à lui paller.»
that you come to him speak
Li pelerins, sanz demourer,
The pilgrim without delaying
ha dist: «Volentiers i irei,
has said Gladly there I-shall-go
quanqu'il demandera direi.»
whatever-he will-ask I-shall-tell
Li pelerins est là venuz,
The pilgrim is there come
qui ne fu fous ne esperduz;
who not was mad nor distraught
l'empereeur a salué,
the-emperor he-has greeted
et après li ha tout conté
and after to-him has all told
quanque son hoste conté ot
whatever his host told had
et la chose tout mot à mot.
and the thing all word for word
L'empereres respont errant:
The-emperor answers straightway

«Se c'est voirs que nous vas contant,
If this-is true that us thou-goest telling
tu seras mout très bien venuz,
thou shalt-be very very well come
de richesces combles et druz.»
with riches heaped and thick
L'empereres ha ce entendu,
The-emperor has this heard
ses hommes mande: il sunt venu;
his men he-summons they are come
et quant il furent assemblé,
and when they were assembled
si leur ha tout dist et conté
so to-them he-has all said and told
que li pelerins dist avoit,
what the pilgrim said had
et chaucuns s'en esmerveilloit.
and each-one himself-thereof marveled
Pilate à preudomme tenoient
Pilate for worthy-man held
tout cil qui là ensemble estoient,
all those who there together were
et disoit chaucuns en son dist
and said each-one in his saying
que Pilates pas ne soufrist;
that Pilate at-all not would-have-suffered-it

car ce fust trop grant desreison
for this would-be too great unreason
se il soufrist teu mesproison
if he had-suffered such misdeed
en liu où seignourie éust,
in place where lordship he-should-have
puis que deffendre le péust.
since that forbid it he-could
Là eut Pilates un ami,
There had Pilate a friend
qui dist qu'il n'estoit pas ainsi:
who said that-it not-was at-all so
«Pilates est mout vaillanz hons,
Pilate is very valiant man
plus que dire ne pourrions;
more than say — we-could
pour rien feire ne le leissast,
for anything do not it he-would-have-let
se il contredire l'osast.»
if he gainsay it-had-dared
Lors unt le preudomme apelé
Then they-have the worthy-man called
et l'oste qui l'eust hostelé:
and the-host who him-had lodged
«Pelerin frere, par amour,
Pilgrim brother by love
ce qu'avez à l'empereour
this that-you-have to the-emperor
conté, s'il vous pleist, nous contez:
told if-it to-you pleases to-us tell

les vertuz que véu avez,
the powers that seen you-have
les biaus miracles de Jhesu,
the fair miracles of Jesus
qui estoit de si grant vertu.»
who was of so great power
Touz les miracles leur conta,
All the miracles to-them he-told
si cum les vit quant il fu là;
so as them he-saw when he was there
et a dist que, quant il estoit
and has said that when he was
lau Pilates povoir avoit,
where-there Pilate power had
l'empereres force ne fist,
the-emperor force not did
meis que son fil li garissist;
except that his son for-him he-should-heal
et qui ce croire ne vouroit,
and who this to-believe not would-wish
que il sa teste i meteroit.
that he his head there would-put
«Jà Pilates n'ou celera,
Ever Pilate not-it will-conceal
quant on ce li demandera;
when one this of-him will-ask
et qui de lui pourroit trouver
and who of him could find
aucune chose et aporter,
any thing and bring

tost en pouroit estre sanez
soon thereby could be healed
Vaspasiens et respassez.»
Vespasian and recovered
Quant les genz ont ce dire oï,
When the folk have this say heard
si en furent mout esbahi;
so thereof were very astonished
ne seurent Pilate rescourre
not they-knew Pilate rescue
ne à ce valoir ne secourre,
nor in this avail nor succor
fors tant qu'il li unt demandé
except so-much that-they him have asked
que «se ce n'estoit verité,
that if this not-were truth
que vieus-tu c'on face de toi?»
what wishest-thou that-one should-do with thee
Il dist: «Mes despens donnez-moi
He said My expenses give-me
et si me metez en prison
and so me put in prison
en une soufisant meison,
in a sufficient house
et si feites là envoier,
and so make there send
enquerre bien et encerchier.
inquire well and search
Se ce n'est voirs que dist vous ei,
If this not-is true that said to-you I-have

je vueil et si l'otroierei
I wish and so it-I-shall-grant
que la teste me soit coupée
that the head to-me be cut-off
ou à coustel ou d'une espée.»
either with knife or with-a sword
Tout dient qu'il ha dist assez,
All say that-he has said enough
il l'otroient, et c'est ses grez.
they it-grant and this-is his will
Adonc l'unt de toutes parz pris
Then him-they-have from all parts taken
et en une chambre l'unt mis,
and into a chamber him-they-have put
si le firent là bien garder,
so him they-made there well guard
que il ne leur puist eschaper.
that he not from-them might escape
«Escoutez-moi tout, biau seigneur,
Hear-me all fair lords
ce leur ha dist l'empereeur.
this to-them has said the-emperor
Boen est que nous envoions là
Good it-is that we send there
aucun message, qui saura
some messenger who will-know
verité de ceste nouvele;
truth of this news
car mout seroit et boenne et bele,
for very it-would-be both good and fair

se cil miracle estoient voir;
if those miracles were true
et se nous poviammes avoir
and if we could have
aucune chose qui men fil
any thing which my son
curast et ostast dou peril,
might-cure and take from-the peril
avenu bien nous en seroit
happened well to-us thereof would-be
et no chose bien en iroit.»
and our thing well thereof would-go
Vaspasiens la chose oï,
Vespasian the thing heard
et touz li cuers l'en esjoï;
and all the heart to-him-thereof rejoiced
quant seut que li estranges hon
when he-knew that the strange man
estoit jà mis en la prison,
was already put in the prison
sa doleur li assouaga
his grief for-him eased
et ses maus touz li tresala.
and his ills all for-him passed-away
Adonc ha sen pere proié
Then he-has his father prayed
que il, pour la seue amistié,
that he for the his-own friendship

envoiast là en cele terre
should-send there into that land
et pour savoir et pour enquerre
both for to-know and for to-inquire
se il voloit sa garison
if he wished his cure
n'oster hors de si vil prison
nor-to-take out of so vile prison
com il estoit: trop estoit dure,
as he was too it-was harsh
trop tenebreuse, trop obscure.
too dark too obscure
L'empereres feit ses briés feire
The-emperor makes his letters make
(de ce ne me weil-je pas teire),
of this not myself wish-I at-all to-silence
qu'il mande à touz ceus de Judée,
that-he sends to all those of Judea
as plus pouissanz de la contrée,
to-the most powerful of the country
a Pilate especiaument,
to Pilate especially
qu'il envoie à eus de sa gent,
that-he sends to them of his folk

et commande que on les oie
and commands that one them hear
de tout quanqu'il dirunt et croie
of all whatever-they shall-say and believe
de la mort Jhesu, qu'il ocistrent
of the death (of-)Jesus whom-they killed
quant il en la crouiz le pendirent.
when they on the cross him hanged
L'empereres y envoia
The-emperor there sent
le plus sage homme qu'il trouva,
the most wise man whom-he found
qu'il voloit la chose savoir
for-he wished the thing to-know
et enquerre trestout le voir;
and to-inquire all the truth
et si leur mande à la parclose,
and so to-them he-sends at the end
se il est morz, qu'aucune chose
if he is dead that-any thing
ki au preudomme éust esté,
which to-the worthy-man should-have been
se il l'ont en leur poesté,
if they it-have in their power
que tantost la li envoiassent
that at-once it to-him they-should-send
et pour rien nule n'ou leissassent.
and for thing any not-it they-should-leave

La garison sen fil queroit
The cure (of-)his son he-sought
et Pilate mout menaçoit
and Pilate much threatened
que, se c'est voirs qu'oï dire ha,
that if this-is true that-heard say he-has
granz maus avenir l'en pourra.
great ills to-come to-him-thereof will-be-able
Ainsi departent li message,
Thus depart the messengers
et s'en vunt tout droit au rivage
and themselves-thence go all straight to-the shore
de la mer et ès nés entrerent.
of the sea and into-the ships entered
Boen vent eurent, la mer passerent;
Good wind they-had the sea they-crossed
et quant il furent arrivé,
and when they were arrived
s'a l'uns à Pilate mandé,
so-has the-one to Pilate sent
qui mout estoit ses boens amis.
who very was his good friend
En sa lestre fist sen devis
In his letter he-made his account
que de ce mout se merveilloit
that at this much himself he-marveled
qu'il un homme pendu avoit
that-he a man hanged had
et n'avoit pas esté jugiez:
and not-he-had at-all been judged

si en estoit mout courouciez.
so thereof he-was very angered
«Certes, ce fu grant mesprison;
Certainly this was great misdeed
grant desavenant li fist-on.
great wrong to-him did-one
Li messagier sont arrivé,
The messengers are arrived
que l'emperere ha envoié:
whom the-emperor has sent
encontre eus erramment venez,
toward them straightway come
car eschaper ne leur povez.»
for escape not from-them you-can

VI · PILATE'S ACCOUNT AND VERRINE

Pilate tells the messengers in private what the Jews did: they bought Jesus from Judas and, when he would not condemn him, took his blood upon themselves and their children, while he washed his hands; Joseph asked for the body and has vanished. The assembled Jews confirm it, say Jesus made himself king, and admit Pilate opposed the death. Asked for a relic, one names Verrine, who keeps a likeness of his face. Pilate receives her with honor; she denies having it, but the messengers promise her lifelong honor and offer to buy it to cure the emperor's son.

Pilates les nouveles oit
Pilate the news hears
que ses acointes li mandoit;
which his acquaintance to-him sent
ses genz commanda à munter,
his folk he-commanded to mount

car il voloit encontre aler
for he wished toward to-go
les messages l'empereeur
the messengers (of-)the-emperor
et recevoir à grant honneur.
and receive with great honor
Li messagier errant s'en vunt,
The messengers straightway themselves-thence go
car Pilate trouver vourrunt;
for Pilate to-find they-will-wish
Pilates ausi chevaucha
Pilate also rode
avec ceus qu'avec lui mena.
with those whom-with him he-led
L'une compaigne l'autre voit
The-one company the-other sees
ee Arimathye tout droit;
in Arimathea all straight
et quant il Pilate encontrerent,
and when they Pilate met
joie feire ne li oserent,
joy make not to-him they-dared
car certainnement ne savoient
for certainly not they-knew
se il à Romme l'emmenroient.
if they to Rome him-would-take
Li uns les lestres li bailla.
The one the letters to-him gave
Il ha lut ce que dedenz ha:
He has read this that within there-is

raconté li unt mot à mot
told to-him they-have word for word
ce que li pelerins dist ot.
this that the pilgrim said had
Quant eut ce Pylates escouté,
When had this Pilate heard
bien set que dient verité;
well he-knows that they-say truth
o les messagiers vint arriere
with the messengers he-came back
et leur ha feit mout bele chiere
and to-them has made very fair cheer
et dist: «Les lestres lutes ei,
and said The letters read I-have
bien reconnois ce qu'i trouvei.»
well I-acknowledge this that-there I-found
La chose tout ainsi ala,
The thing all thus went
et chaucuns d'eus se merveilla
and each-one of-them himself marveled
de ce que il reconnissoit
of this that he acknowledged
la chose ainsi comme ele aloit.
the thing thus as it went
A grant folie puet tourner,
To great folly it-can turn
se il ne s'en set descouper;
if he not himself-thereof knows clear
car il l'en couvenra morir:
for it him-thereof will-behoove to-die

or mete peine à lui chevir.
now let-him-put pain to himself manage
Les messagiers ha apelé,
The messengers he-has called
en une chambre sunt alé:
into a chamber they-are gone
la chose à conseil leur dira.
the thing in counsel to-them he-will-tell
Les wis de la chambre ferma
The doors of the chamber he-closed
et si les fist mout bien garder,
and so them he-made very well guard
que les genz n'i puissent entrer;
that the folk not-there might enter
mieuz vieut que par lui le séussent
better he-wishes that through him it they-should-know
que par autrui le connéussent.
than through another it they-should-learn
Les enfances de Jhesu-Crist
The childhood of Jesus-Christ
leur aconta toutes et dist
to-them he-told all and said
trestout ainsi comme il les seut
altogether thus as he them knew
et que d'atrui oï en eut;
and what from-another heard thereof he-had
comment li Juif le haoient,
how the Jews him hated
ribaut souduiant l'apeloient;
rogue deceiver him-they-called

tout ainsi comme il garissoit
all thus as he healed
les malades quant il vouloit;
the sick when he wished
con feitement il l'achaterent
how in-manner they him-bought
et paierent et delivrerent
and paid and delivered
de Judas, qui vendu l'avoit
from Judas who sold him-had
et qui ses deciples estoit;
and who his disciple was
trestout le leit que il li firent,
all the harm that they to-him did
et comment chiés Symon le prirent,
and how at-the-house-of Simon him they-took
comment devant lui l'amenerent
how before him him-they-brought
et comment il l'achoisonnerent.
and how they him-accused
«Requirent moi que leur jujasse
They-required of-me that for-them I-should-judge
et que je à la mort le dampnasse;
and that I to the death him should-condemn
je leur dis pas n'ou jugeroie,
I to-them said at-all not-him I-would-judge
car reison nule n'i veoie.
for reason any not-there I-saw
Quant virent que n'ou vous jugier,
When they-saw that not-him I-wished to-judge

si se prisent à couroucier,
so themselves they-took to anger
qu'il estoient genz mout puissant,
for-they were folk very powerful
de richesces comble et mennant;
with riches heaped and abounding
et il distrent qu'il l'ocirroient,
and they said that-they him-would-kill
que jà pour ce n'ou leisseroient. 1320
for ever for this not-it they-would-leave
Ce pesoit moi certeinnement;
This grieved me certainly
je dis à touz communément:
I said to all in-common
«Se mes sires riens demander
If my lord anything to-ask
«m'en vouloit ne achoisonner,
of-me-thereof wished nor to-accuse
«respondre de ce que pourroie? 1325
answer of this what could-I
«La chose pas ne celeroie;
The thing at-all not I-would-conceal
«que, se la vouloie celer,
for if it I-wished to-conceal
«par vous le pourroient prouver.
through you it they-could prove
«Seuraus fust et seur leur enfanz
Upon-them be and upon their children
«josnes et vieuz, petiz et granz, 1330
young and old small and great

«fust espanduz li sans Jhesu,
be spilled the blood (of-)Jesus
«et ce en responderas-tu.»
and this thereof shalt-answer-thou
Il le pristrent et l'emmenerent
They him took and him-led-away
et le batirent et fraperent,
and him beat and struck
et en l'estache fu loiez
and to the-post he-was bound
et en la crouiz crucefiez,
and on the cross crucified
et ce que vous avez oï
and this that you have heard
avant que vous venissiez ci.
before that you came here
Pour ce que je voil qu'il séussent
For this that I wished that-they should-know
et que il bien l'apercéussent
and that they well it-should-perceive
vraiement que plus m'en pesoit
truly that more me-thereof it-grieved
assez que bel ne m'en estoit,
much than fair — to-me-thereof it-was
et voloie estre nestoiez,
and I-wished to-be cleansed
car ce estoit trop granz pechiez,
for this was too great sin

devant eus yaue demandei
before them water I-asked
et erramment mes meins lavei,
and straightway my hands I-washed
et dis qu'ausi nez fussé-ju
and said that-so clean might-be-I
dou mal et de la mort Jhesu
of-the evil and of the death (of-)Jesus
comme mes meins nestes estoient
as my hands clean were
qu'il d'yaue lavées veoient.
which-they with-water washed saw
J'avoie o moi un soudoier,
I-had with me a soldier
preudomme et mout boen chevalier.
worthy-man and very good knight
Quant fu morz, se l'me demanda;
When he-was dead so him-me asked
donnei li pour ce qu'il l'ama.
I-gave to-him for this that-he him-loved
Li preudons Joseph non avoit,
The worthy-man Joseph name had
et sachiez que il me servoit
and know that he me served
tout adès à .v. chevaliers,
all always with five knights
a beles armes, à destriers.
with fair arms with chargers
Unques ne voust aveir dou mien,
Ever not he-wished to-have of-the mine

fors le cors dou profete rien.
except the body of-the prophet anything
Grant eschaance éust éue
Great inheritance he-should-have had
dou mien, se me fust eschéue.
of-the mine if to-me it-had fallen
Le prophete osta dou despist
The prophet he-took from-the contempt
et en une pierre le mist,
and in a stone him put
que il avoit feite taillier
which he had made cut
pour lui après sa mort couchier.
for himself after his death to-lay
Et quant Joseph l'eut leenz mis,
And when Joseph him-had within put
ne vi ne seu et si l'enquis;
not I-saw nor knew and so it-I-inquired
meis ne peu savoir qu'il devint,
but not I-could know what-he became
quel chemin ne quel voie tint.
what road nor what way he-held
Espoir qu'il le nous unt ocis
Perhaps that-they him to-us have killed
ou noié ou en chartre mis;
or drowned or in dungeon put
ne que je vers vous povoir ai
nor that I toward you power have
n'avoit-il vers eus, bien le sai.»
not-had-he toward them well it I-know

Quant li message unt ce escouté,
When the messengers have this heard
n'unt pas en Pilate trouvé
not-they-have at-all in Pilate found
si grant tort cum trouver quidoient:
so great wrong as to-find they-thought
«Nous ne savons, ce li disoient,
We not know this to-him they-said
s'il fu ainsi cum dist nous has;
if-it was thus as said to-us thou-hast
et, se tu vieus, bien te porras
and if thou wishest well thyself thou-wilt-be-able
devant no seigneur descouper,
before our lord clear
se c'est voirs que t'oons conter.»
if this-is true that thee-we-hear tell
Pilates lor ha respondu:
Pilate to-them has answered
«Tout ausi cum l'ei connéu,
All just as it-I-have acknowledged
devant vous le connoisterunt
before you it they-will-acknowledge
et tout ainsi le conterunt.»
and all thus it they-will-tell
— «Or les nous fei donques mander,
Now them for-us make then summon
et dedenz un mois assembler
and within a month assemble
trestouz ensemble en ceste vile;
all together in this town

gar qu'il n'i eit barat ne guille,
take-care that-it not-there may-be deceit nor guile
car nous assembler les feisuns
for we assemble them make
pour ce qu'à eus paller vouluns.»
for this that-to them to-speak we-wish
Pylates ses messages prist,
Pilate his messengers took
si leur ha commandé et dist
so to-them has commanded and said
que par toute Judée alassent
that through all Judea they-should-go
et à touz les Juis nunçassent
and to all the Jews should-announce
que sunt venu li messagier
that are come the messengers
l'empereeur dès avant-ier;
(of-)the-emperor since before-yesterday
volentiers à eus palleroient,
gladly to them they-would-speak
s'il ensemble avoir les povoient.
if-they together have them could
Il leissierent le mois passer,
They let the month pass
et Pilates ha feit garder
and Pilate has made watch
s'on pourroit riens avoir trouvé
if-one could anything have found
qui au prophete éust esté;
which to-the prophet should-have been

meis il ne peurent trouver rien
but they not could find anything
qui leur féist gramment de bien.
which them might-do greatly of good
Tout li Giue en Beremathye
All the Jews in Arimathea
s'assemblent à grant compeignie.
themselves-assemble in great company
Pylates ha dist as messages
Pilate has said to-the messengers
une chose de quoi fu sages:
a thing of which he-was wise
«Avant paller me leisserez
Before speak me you-will-let
as Juis, si que vous orrez
to-the Jews so that you shall-hear
ce que direi et il dirunt.»
this that I-shall-say and they shall-say
Li messagier einsi feit l'unt.
The messengers thus done it-have
Quant il furent tout assemblé,
When they were all assembled
Pylates ha premiers pallé:
Pilate has first spoken
«Vous veez ci, dist-il, seigneur,
You see here said-he lords
les messages l'empereeur;
the messengers (of-)the-emperor

savoir welent quès hons estoit
to-know they-wish what man was
cius qui on Jhesu apeloit,
that-one whom one Jesus called
qui de la loi se feisoit sires.
who of the law himself made lord
On leur ha dist qu'il estoit mires,
One to-them has said that-he was physician
c'on ne pourroit meilleur trouver;
that-one not could better find
l'empereres le feit mander,
the-emperor him makes summon
volentiers à lui palleroit.
gladly to him he-would-speak
Je leur ei dist que morz estoit,
I to-them have said that dead he-was
que vous deffeire le féistes
that you undo him made
pour ce que feire le vousistes:
for this that to-do it you-wished
dites se ce fu voirs ou non.»
say if this was true or not
— «Ce fu voirs, jà n'ou celeron,
This was true ever not-it we-shall-conceal
pour ce que il roi se feisoit
for this that he king himself made
et que nostres sires estoit.
and that our lord he-was

Tu fus si mauveis que jugier
Thou wast so wicked that to-judge
ne le voussis ne ce vengier;
not him thou-wishedst nor this to-avenge
n'en voussis penre vengement,
nor-thereof thou-wishedst to-take vengeance
ainz t'en pesoit par samblement;
rather to-thee-thereof it-grieved by seeming
et nous ne pourrions soufrir
and we not could suffer
que il ne autres seignourir
that he nor others lord-it
seur nous ne seur les noz péust,
over us nor over the ours might
fors que Cesar, tant puissanz fust,
except that Caesar so-much powerful he-were
ne le méissians à la mort,
not him we-should-put to the death
car il nous feroit trop grant tort.»
for he to-us would-do too great wrong
Lors dist Pilates as messages:
Then said Pilate to-the messengers
«Ne sui si pouissanz ne si sages
Not I-am so powerful nor so wise
que je eusse seur eus povoir,
that I should-have over them power
qu'il sunt trop riche et plein d'avoir.»
for-they are too rich and full of-wealth
Adonc ont dist li messagier:
Then have said the messengers

«Encor n'aviens oï touchier
Still not-we-had heard touch
a la force de la besoigne;
on the force of the matter
je weil c'om le voir m'en tesmoigne.
I wish that-one the truth to-me-thereof witness
«Seigneur, je vous weil demander
Lords I you wish to-ask
se Pilates vous voust veer
if Pilate to-you wished to-refuse
cel homme qui roi se feisoit;
that man who king himself made
dites-le-moi, comment qu'il soit.»
tell-it-me how that-it be
— «Par foi, sire! ainçois nous avint;
By faith lord rather to-us it-happened
et sachiez que il nous couvint
and know that it us behooved
que se en l'en demandoit rien,
that if one of-him-thereof asked anything
que nous l'en deliverriuns bien.
that we him-thereof would-deliver well
Se l'en voulez riens demander,
If of-him-thereof you-wish anything to-ask
nous suns tenu au delivrer;
we are bound to-the delivering
nous i summes engagié, voir,
we there are pledged truly
et après nous trestout nostre oir.
and after us all our heirs

Pilates autrement sa mort
Pilate otherwise his death
ne voust soufrir: dont il eut tort.»
not wished to-suffer whereof he had wrong
Li messagier unt entendu
The messengers have understood
que Pilates n'a pas éu
that Pilate not-has at-all had
si grant tort comme tuit quidoient
so great wrong as all thought
et cum les genz li tesmoignoient;
and as the folk to-him witnessed
il unt enquis et demandé
they have inquired and asked
qui estoit, de queu poesté,
who was of what power
cil prophetes dont on palloit.
that prophet of-whom one spoke
Il respondent que il feisoit
They answer that he made
les plus granz miracles dou munde,
the most great miracles of-the world
qui le penroit à la roonde;
who him would-take at the round-about
pour enchanteur le tenoient
for enchanter him they-held
cil et celes qui le veoient.
those-men and those-women who him saw
Adonc dient li messagier:
Then say the messengers

«Saveriez-vous enseignier
Would-you-know-how to-point-out
qui ha nule chose dou sien?
who has any thing of-the his
Qui en aroit aucune rien
Who thereof should-have any thing
que nous en péussians porter,
that we thence might carry
bien l'amerians à trouver.»
well it-we-would-love to find
L'uns d'eus une femme savoit
The-one of-them a woman knew
ki de lui un visage avoit,
who of him a face had
qu'ele chaucun jour aouroit;
which-she each day adored
meis sanz doute qu'il ne savoit
but without doubt that-he not knew
où pris l'eut ne se l'eut trouvé.
where taken it-she-had nor if it-she-had found
Adonc ont Pilate apelé,
Then they-have Pilate called
se li content que cil dist ha;
so to-him they-tell what that-one said has
et Pilates li demanda
and Pilate of-him asked
tantost comment avoit à non,
at-once how she-had as name
en queu rue estoit sa meison.
in what street was her house

«Verrine ha non, si n'est pas fole,
Verrine she-has-as name so not-she-is at-all mad
s'est en la rue de l'Escole.»
so-she-is in the street of the-School
Quant Pilates seut où mennoit
When Pilate knew where she-dwelt
et comment ele à non avoit,
and how she as name had
il ha tantost envoié là;
he has at-once sent there
par un message la manda.
by a messenger her summoned
Ele vint si tost com le sout;
She came as soon as it she-knew
et Pilates, si cum Diex vout,
and Pilate so as God wished
quant vist venir, se leva
when he-saw her-come himself rose
contre li; si s'en merveilla
toward her so herself-thereof marveled
la poure femme, quant le vist,
the poor woman when him she-saw
de la grant honneur qu'il li fist.
at the great honor that-he to-her did
Quant il si bienvignant l'eut feite,
When he so welcome her-had made

si l'a après d'une part treite
so her-has after to-a side drawn
et li dist: «Dame, une semblance
and to-her said Lady a likeness
avez d'omme en grant remembrance
you-have of-a-man in great remembrance
en meison, que vous aourez:
in house which you adore
je vous pri que la nous moustrez,
I you pray that it to-us you-show
se il vous pleist et vous voulez.
if it you pleases and you wish
Riens n'i perdrez, jà n'en doutez.»
Anything not-there you-shall-lose ever not-thereof doubt
La fame fu toute esbahie,
The woman was all astonished
quant ele ha la parole oïe;
when she has the word heard
forment s'escondist et dist bien
greatly herself-excused and said well
que de ce n'avoit-ele rien.
that of this not-had-she anything
A ces paroles sunt venu
At these words are come
li messagier et unt véu
the messengers and have seen
la fame, ki venue estoit,
the woman who come was
et Pylates à li palloit.
and Pilate to her spoke

Li messagier l'unt acolée
The messengers her-have embraced
et grant joie li unt menée,
and great joy to-her have made
et le besoing li unt conté
and the need to-her they-have told
pour quoi estoient assemblé;
for what they-were assembled
dient li, s'ele ha en meison
they-say to-her if-she has in house
chose de quoi puist garison
thing of which might cure
avoir li fiuz l'empereeur,
have the son (of-)the-emperor
ele en sera à grant honneur
she thereby will-be in great honor
touz les jours meis que vivera,
all the days any-more that she-shall-live
jameis honneur ne li faura.
ever-more honor not to-her will-fail
«On dist qu'ele ha une semblance
One says that-she has a likeness
de Jhesu, dont feit remembrance;
of Jesus whereof she-makes remembrance
et s'à vendre avoir la povons,
and if-to sell have it we-can
mout volentiers l'achaterons.»
very gladly it-we-shall-buy

Verrine will not sell the likeness but agrees to bring it to Rome. When she shows it, all rise before it: it is the cloth with which, at the Jews' asking, she wiped Jesus' face as he was led to his death. At Rome the emperor bows to it three times and sets it at Vespasian's window, and his flesh is healed at once. The pilgrim and Verrine are rewarded, and the cloth is kept at Rome as the Veronica. Vespasian vows to avenge the death, sails with Titus to Judea, and summons Pilate, who asks to be imprisoned and the Jews to be told it is because he would not condemn Jesus.

Verrine voit bien et perçoit
Verrine sees well and perceives
que descouvrir li couvendroit
that to-disclose to-her it-would-behoove
et que plus ne la puet celer,
and that more not it she-can conceal
si se commence à escuser
so herself she-begins to excuse
et dist: «Je ne la venderoie
and said I not it would-sell
pour riens qui soit, ne ne donroie
for anything that be nor not would-give
ce que vous ci me requerez;
this that you here of-me require
ainz couvient que tout me jurez,
rather it-behooves that all to-me you-swear
et vous et vostre compeignon,
both you and your companions
qu'à Romme, en vostre region,
that-to Rome into your region

que sanz riens tolir me menrez
that without anything taking me you-will-lead
et que vous riens ne me tourrez,
and that you anything not from-me will-take
et je avec vous m'en irei
and I with you myself-thence shall-go
et ma semblance porterei.»
and my likeness shall-carry
Quant li messagier ce oïrent,
When the messengers this heard
forment en leur cuers s'esjoïrent;
greatly in their hearts themselves-rejoiced
il dient: «Nous vous emmenruns
they say We you shall-lead-away
a grant joie et vous jureruns
with great joy and to-you shall-swear
trestout quanque vous devisez;
all whatever you set-out
meis, s'il vous pleist, se nous moustrez
but if-it you pleases so to-us show
la semblance que demandons,
the likeness that we-ask
car à voir la desirruns.»
for to see it we-desire
Tout li Juif qui là estoient,
All the Jews who there were
qui toutes ces paroles oient,
who all these words hear

dient qu'encor riche seroit
say that-still rich she-would-be
et assez grant honneur aroit.
and quite great honor would-have
Verrine as messagiers ha dist:
Verrine to-the messengers has said
«Attendez-moi un seul petit,
Wait-for-me a single little
querre cele semblance irei
seek that likeness I-shall-go
et ci la vous aporterei.»
and here it to-you shall-bring
Ele muet d'ilec de randon,
She moves from-there in haste
tantost s'en va en sa meison.
at-once herself-thence goes into her house
Quant fu en sa meison entrée,
When she-was into her house entered
si ha sa huche deffermée
so has her chest unlocked
et si ha prise la semblance;
and so has taken the likeness
et puis n'i ha feit arrestance,
and then not-there has made stop
dessouz sen mantel l'a boutée,
beneath her mantle it-has thrust
as messagiers est retournée.
to-the messengers she-is returned

Il se sunt contre li levé
They themselves are toward her risen
et grant honneur li unt porté.
and great honor to-her have borne
Ele leur dist: «Or vous seez,
She to-them said Now yourselves sit
et puis le suaire verrez
and then the shroud you-shall-see
où Diex essua sen visage,
where God wiped his face
cui li Juif firent outrage.»
to-whom the Jews did outrage
Il se vunt trestout rasooir;
They themselves go all to-sit-again
tantost cum la peurent vooir,
as-soon as it they-could see
il les couvint touz sus saillir,
it them behooved all up to-leap
car il ne s'em peurent tenir.
for they not themselves-from-it could hold
La boenne femme ha demandé
The good woman has asked
pour quoi il s'estoient levé.
for what they themselves-were risen
Chaucuns respont, ne s'en puet teire:
Each-one answers not himself-thereof can silence
«Par foi! il le nous couvint feire,
By faith it it to-us behooved to-do
quant nous la semblance véimes;
when we the likeness saw

feire l'estut, si le féimes.
do it-it-behooved so it we-did
Dame, font-il, pour Dieu nous dites
Lady say-they for God to-us tell
où vous cest suaire préistes.»
where you this shroud took
Ele respont: «Je vous direi,
She answers I to-you shall-tell
comment m'avint vous conterei.
how to-me-it-happened to-you I-shall-tell
Un sydoine feit feire avoie
A shroud made make I-had
et entre mes braz le portoie,
and between my arms it carried
et je le prophete encontrei
and I the prophet met
en ma voie par où ralei;
on my way by where I-went-back
les meins avoit derrier liées,
the hands he-had behind bound
a une couroie atachiées.
to a strap fastened
Pour le grant Dieu mout me prierent
For the great God much me prayed
li Juif, quant il m'encontrerent,
the Jews when they me-met
que men sydoine leur prestasse,
that my shroud to-them I-should-lend
au prophete son vis torchasse.
to-the prophet his face I-should-wipe

Erramment le sydoine pris
Straightway the shroud I-took
et li torchei mout bien sen vis,
and for-him wiped very well his face
car il si durement suoit
for he so hard sweated
que touz ses cors en degoutoit.
that all his body thereof dripped
Je m'en ving, et il l'emmenerent
I myself-thence came and they him-led-away
outre batant, mout le fraperent.
onward beating much him they-struck
Mout li feisoient vilenie;
Much to-him they-did villainy
nepourquant ne se pleignoit mie.
nevertheless not himself he-complained at-all
Et quant en ma meison entrei
And when into my house I-entered
et men sydoine regardei,
and my shroud looked-at
ceste semblance y hei trouvée
this likeness there I-have found
tout ainsi comme ele est fourmée.
all thus as it is formed

Se vous quidiez qu'ele eit mestier
If you think that-it may-have use
ne qu'ele puist assouagier
nor that-it may ease
le fil à nostre empereeur
the son of our emperor
ne lui feire bien ne honneur,
nor to-him do good nor honor
volentiers o vous m'en irei
gladly with you myself-thence I-shall-go
et avec moi la porterei.»
and with me it shall-carry
Li messagier mout l'en mercient,
The messengers much her-thereof thank
car bien afferment et bien dient
for well they-affirm and well say
car mestier avoir leur pourra
that use have to-them it-will-be-able
quant venu serunt par de là,
when come they-shall-be by of there
car il n'unt nule rien trouvée
for they not-have any thing found
qu'il aient si bien esprouvée
which-they may-have so well proved
comme ceste. Ainsi mer passerent
as this-one Thus sea they-crossed
et en leur terre s'en ralerent,
and into their land themselves-thence went-back
or sunt à Romme revenu.
now they-are to Rome come-back

L'empereres mout liez en fu;
The-emperor very glad thereof was
nouveles leur ha demandées
news of-them has asked
comment les choses sunt alées,
how the things are gone
se li pelerins voir disoit.
if the pilgrim truth said
Il dient de rien ne mentoit.
They say in anything not he-lied
«Assez y ha plus que ne dist
Much there is more than — he-said
et de la honte et dou despist
both of the shame and of-the contempt
que il au prophete feit unt,
that they to-the prophet done have
ne point de repentance n'unt.
nor whit of repentance not-they-have
Pylates si grant tort pas n'a
Pilate so great wrong at-all not-has
cum nous jugiuns par deçà.»
as we judged over here
L'empereres ha demandé:
The-emperor has asked
«Avez-me vous riens aporté
Have-me you anything brought
qui à ce seint prophete fust
which to this holy prophet were
ne qui men fil mestier éust?»
nor which my son use should-have

— «Oïl, sire, nous aportuns
Yes lord we bring
une chose que vous diruns.»
a thing which to-you we-shall-tell
A ces paroles li conterent
At these words to-him they-told
commen il la femme trouverent,
how they the woman found
qu'ele aveques li aportoit,
which-she with her brought
tout ainsi cum la chose aloit.
all thus as the thing went
Li empereres, ce sachiez,
The emperor this know
quant l'oï, si en fu mout liez;
when it-he-heard so thereof was very glad
il dist: «Bien avez esploitié
he said Well you-have done
et vos journées emploié;
and your days employed
vous aportez une merveille,
you bring a marvel
n'oï paller de sa pareille.»
not-I-heard speak of its equal
Li empereres s'en ala
The emperor himself-thence went
a la femme et la bienvigna;
to the woman and her welcomed
dist li bien fust-ele venue,
he-said to-her well might-she-be come

qu'il la feroit et pleinne et drue,
for-he her would-make both full and rich
pour ce qu'ele avoit aporté
for this that-she had brought
a son fil et joie et santé.
to his son both joy and health
Quant ele l'emperere oï,
When she the-emperor heard
en son cuer mout s'en esjoï
in her heart much herself-thereof rejoiced
et dist: «Sire, vostre pleisir
and said Lord your pleasure
sui toute preste d'acomplir.»
I-am all ready to-fulfill
La semblance li ha moustrée,
The likeness to-him she-has shown
qu'avec li avoit aportée.
which-with her she-had brought
Quant la vist, iij foiz l'enclina
When it he-saw three times it-he-bowed-to
et durement se merveilla,
and hard himself marveled
et à la preude femme dist
and to the worthy woman said
que meis teu semblance ne vist
that ever such likeness not he-saw
d'omme ne ki si bele fust;
of-man nor which so fair were
n'y avoit or, argent ne fust.
not-there was gold silver nor wood

Entre ses deus meins prise l'a
Between his two hands taken it-be-has
et en la chambre la porta
and into the chamber it carried
où ses fiuz estoit emmurez,
where his son was walled-up
pour sa maladie enfermez;
for his sickness shut-in
et à la fenestre la mist,
and at the window it put
si que Vaspasiens la vist;
so that Vespasian it saw
et sachiez quant il l'eut véue,
and know when he it-had seen
n'avoit unques la char éue
not-be-had ever the flesh had
si sainne cum adonques l'eut,
so sound as then it-be-had
car Nostre-Seigneur ainsi pleut.
for to-Our-Lord thus it-pleased
Lors ha dist: «Sires de pitié,
Then he-has said Lord of pity
qu'est-ce qui si m'a alegié
what-is-it that so me-has relieved
de toute ma grant maladie,
of all my great sickness
de mes doleurs? ne les sent mie.»
of my pains not them I-feel at-all

Vaspasiens s'est escriez:
Vespasian himself-is cried-out
«Errant ce mur me depeciez.»
Straightway this wall for-me break
Si firent-il hysnelement,
So did-they swiftly
c'onques n'i eu delaiement.
so-that-ever not-there was delay
Quant eurent le mur depecié,
When they-had the wall broken
trouverent le sain et hettié.
they-found him sound and hale
Ore unt bien la nouvele enquise
Now they-have well the news inquired
où fu tele semblance prise
where was such likeness taken
ki ainsi tost gari l'avoit,
which thus soon healed him-had
ce que nus feire ne povoit;
this that anyone do not could
et il li unt trestout conté
and they to-him have all told
comment les choses unt alé.
how the things have gone

Il unt le pelerin hors mis
They have the pilgrim out put
de la prison. Il ha enquis
of the prison He has inquired
se c'estoit voirs que dist avoit
if this-was true that said he-had
dou prophete et s'ainsi estoit
of-the prophet and if-thus it-was
qu'il aient si preudomme ocis;
that-they may-have so worthy-man killed
il respondent qu'il est ainsis.
they answer that-it is so
Au pelerin unt tant donné
To-the pilgrim they-have so-much given
que riches fu tout son aé;
that rich he-was all his life
et Verrine pas n'oublierent,
and Verrine at-all not-they-forgot
meis granz richesces li donnerent.
but great riches to-her gave
L'enfès eut la nouvele oïe:
The-youth had the news heard
sachiez que ce ne li plut mie,
know that this not him pleased at-all

ainz en fu iriez durement
rather thereof he-was angered harshly
et dist: «Trestout certainnement
and said All certainly
la mort Jhesu achaterunt
the death (of-)Jesus shall-pay-for
tout cil qui au feit esté unt.»
all those who at-the deed been have
Il ha dist à l'empereeur:
He has said to the-emperor
«Jameis n'arei bien ne honneur
Ever-more not-I-shall-have good nor honor
de si que l'arunt comparé,
from so that it-they-shall-have paid-for
se liu en ei et poesté.»
if place thereof I-have and power
Il ha dist après à son pere:
He has said after to his father
«N'estes pas rois ne emperere;
Not-you-are at-all king nor emperor
meis cil le doit estre pour voir
but that-one it must be for true
qui seur nous touz ha tel povoir,
who over us all has such power

qui de là où est ha donné
who from there where he-is has given
teu vertu et teu poesté
such power and such might
a la semblance que voi ci
to the likeness that I-see here
que m'a si bien et tost gari:
which me-has so well and soon healed
ce que hons feire ne péust,
this that man do not could
vous ne autres, tant hauz hons fust;
you nor others so-much high man he-were
meis cist ha seur touz le povoir,
but this-one has over all the power
et, certes, bien le doit avoir.
and certainly well it he-must have
«Biaus peres, jointes meins vous pri,
Fair father joined hands you I-pray
cum mon seigneur, cum mon ami,
as my lord as my friend
que me leissiez aler vengier
that me you-let go avenge
la mort mon seigneur droiturier,
the death (of-)my lord rightful
que cil larrun puant Juis
whom those thieves stinking Jews
unt si vileinnement ocis.»
have so villainously killed
L'empereres li respondi:
The-emperor to-him answered

«Biaus fiuz, jou vueil, si vous en pri;
Fair son I wish so you thereof pray
feites vo volenté entiere,
do your will entire
n'i espargniez ne fil ne pere.»
not-there spare neither son nor father
Quant Vaspasiens l'entendi,
When Vespasian it-heard
en son cuer mout s'en esjoï.
in his heart much himself-thereof rejoiced
Ainsi firent, ainsi alerent,
Thus they-did thus they-went
ainsi la semblance aporterent;
thus the likeness they-brought
on l'apele la Veronique,
one it-calls the Veronica
c'on tient à Romme à grant relique.
which-one holds at Rome for great relic
Vaspasyanus et Tytus
Vespasian and Titus
ilec ne sejournerent plus;
there not sojourned more
ainz unt tout leur oirre atournée,
rather they-have all their journey arranged
qu'il vuelent aler en Judée.
for-they wish to-go into Judea
En mer entrent, la mer passerent,
Into sea they-enter the sea they-crossed
plus tost qu'il peurent arriverent;
more soon than-they could they-arrived

Pylate funt errant mander,
Pilate they-make straightway summon
qu'il viegne tost à eus paller.
that-he come soon to them speak
Pylates oit le mandement
Pilate hears the summons
et set qu'il ameinnent grant gent:
and knows that-they bring great folk
péur eut; nepourquant palla,
fear he-had nevertheless he-spoke
Vaspasyen arreisonna:
Vespasian he-addressed
«Sire, vous m'avez ci mandé:
Lord you me-have here summoned
vez-moi ici tout apresté
see-me here all ready
de feire tout vostre pleisir,
to do all your pleasure
quanque j'en pourrei acomplir.»
whatever I-thereof shall-be-able fulfill
Vaspasyens dist sanz targier:
Vespasian said without delaying
«Je sui ci venuz pour vengier
I am here come for to-avenge
la mort Jhesu, qui m'a gari.»
the death (of-)Jesus who me-has healed
Quant Pylates ce entendi,
When Pilate this heard
si ha éu mout grant peeur,
so has had very great fear

qu'il quida qu'à grant deshonneur
for-he thought that-in great dishonor
son cors et sen avoir perdist
his body and his wealth he-would-lose
et c'on à la mort le mesist:
and that-one to the death him would-put
pour ce estoit si espoventez
for this he-was so terrified
qu'il quida que fust encusez.
for-he thought that he-were accused
Lors ha dist à Vaspasyen:
Then he-has said to Vespasian
«S'oïr voulez, je direi bien
If-to-hear you-wish I shall-tell well
qui ha éu ou droit ou tort
who has had either right or wrong
dou prophete ne de sa mort.»
of-the prophet nor of his death
— «Oïl, dist-il, bien le voudroie,
Yes said-he well it I-would-wish
car plus aeisé en seroie.»
for more eased thereby I-would-be
— «En vo prison me meterez,
In your prison me you-shall-put
et à touz les Juis direz
and to all the Jews you-shall-say
que c'est pour ce que n'ou voloie
that it-is for this that not-him I-wished
jugier, ainçois le deffendoie.»
to-judge rather him I-defended

Vespasian jails Pilate, as Pilate asked, and assembles the Jews, who, thinking it will ruin Pilate, boast of how they bought Jesus and had him condemned. He has thirty of them dragged by horses and orders the rest to give Jesus back alive or die; they answer that they gave the body to Joseph, and he burns many more. To save his life, one man shows him the tower where Joseph was walled up. Vespasian is let down on a rope and finds Joseph alive in a brightness, who greets him by name. Joseph offers to name the one who healed him if Vespasian will believe in him and keep his commandments, and Vespasian promises to believe.

Vaspasyens einsi le fist
Vespasian thus it did
cum Pylates li avoit dist.
as Pilate to-him had said
Mandé sunt par toute la terre,
Summoned they-are through all the land
ne les tiegne buie ne serre.
not them may-hold shackle nor lock
Quant il furent tout assemblé,
When they were all assembled
Vaspasyens ha demandé
Vespasian has asked
que il unt dou prophete feit:
what they have with-the prophet done
savoir le vieut tout entreseit;
to-know it he-wishes all straightway
plus estoit sires que ses peres
more he-was lord than his father
ne rois ne dus ne empereres.
nor king nor duke nor emperor

«Avez-vous feit que traïteur,
Have-you done as traitors
qui féistes tel deshonneur.»
who did such dishonor
Il distrent, li puant renoi,
They said the stinking renegades
que Pylates le soustenoit
that Pilate him upheld
et se tenoit par devers li:
and himself held by toward him
«Nous ne voliuns pas ainsi,
We not wished at-all thus
car trestout cil qui se funt roi
for all those who themselves make king
dient contre ten pere et toi;
speak against thy father and thee
et Pylates adés disoit
and Pilate always said
pour ce mort pas ne deservoit.
for this death at-all not he-deserved
Nous ne voulsimes pas soufrir:
We not wished at-all to-suffer
qui roi se feit il doit morir.
who king himself makes he must die
Encor disoit plus grant boufois,
Still he-said more great boast
qu'il se clamoit le Roi des rois.»
that-he himself called the King of kings
Vaspasyens à ce respont:
Vespasian to this answers

«Pour ce l'ei feit mestre ou parfont
For this him-I-have made put in-the deep
de ma chartre, qu'oï avoie,
of my dungeon for-heard I-had
enseurquetout bien le savoie,
above-all well it I-knew
qu'il avoit malement ouvré;
that-he had badly wrought
car plus que moi l'avoit amé.
for more than me him-he-had loved
Or vueil-je de par vous savoir,
Now wish-I from by you to-know
et si me dites tout le voir,
and so to-me tell all the truth
as qués de vous touz plus pesoit
to-the which of you all more it-grieved
de ce que seigneur se feisoit
of this that lord himself he-made
et roi et meistre des Juis
and king and master of-the Jews
et li qués l'en fist pour ce pis,
and the which to-him-thereof did for this worse
comment vers lui vous contenistes
how toward him you behaved
le premier jour que le véistes,
the first day that him you-saw
et pour quoi en si grant haïne
and for what in so great hatred
le queillites n'en teu cuerine,
him you-took nor-in such rancor

li quel dou grant conseil estoient
the which of-the great council were
et li quel mieuz vous conseilloient,
and the which best you counseled
toute l'uevre enterinement
all the-work entirely
et trestout le commencement.»
and all the beginning
Quant li Juif ce entendirent,
When the Jews this heard
en leur cuers mout s'en esjoïrent;
in their hearts much themselves-thereof rejoiced
que ce fust pour leur preuz quidoient:
for this were for their profit they-thought
pour ce plus s'en esjoïssoient
for this more themselves-thereof they-rejoiced
que ce fust pour leur avantage
for this were for their advantage
Pylates y éust damage.
Pilate there should-have harm
Il dient au commencement
They tell at-the beginning
trestoute la chose, comment
all the thing how
cil Jhesus-Criz roi se feisoit
that Jesus-Christ king himself made
seur eus touz, se leur en pesoit:
over them all so to-them thereof it-grieved
pour ceste chose le haoient,
for this thing him they-hated

si que vooir ne le povoient;
so that see not him they-could
et comment Judas le trahi
and how Judas him betrayed
et trente deniers le vendi:
and for-thirty pence him sold
Judas ses deciples estoit,
Judas his disciple was
mauveis en ce qu'il le vendoit;
wicked in this that-he him sold
celui qui les deniers paia
that-one who the pence paid
li moustrerent, qu'il estoit là;
to-him they-showed for-he was there
ceus qui le pristrent li moustrerent,
those who him took to-him they-showed
et devant lui mout se vanterent
and before him much themselves boasted
dou despit, de la vilenie
of-the contempt of the villainy
qu'il li firent (Diex les maudie!);
which-they to-him did God them curse
comment devant Pylate vintrent:
how before Pilate they-came
a lui se plaintrent et li distrent
to him themselves they-complained and to-him said
que il Jhesu à mort jujast
that he Jesus to death should-judge
et comme mauveis le dampnast.
and as wicked him should-condemn

«Certes, sire, il n'ou voust jugier
Certainly lord he not-him wished to-judge
n'il ne le nous vouloit baillier,
nor-he not him to-us wished to-deliver
s'on respondant ne li bailloit,
if-one surety not to-him gave
a cui il penre s'en pourroit,
to whom he take himself-thereof could
s'on riens l'en vouloit demander;
if-one anything of-him-thereof wished to-ask
bien s'en vouloit asséurer.
well himself-thereof he-wished to-assure
Sanz doute seur nos le préimes
Without doubt upon us it we-took
et nos enfanz y aqueillimes.
and our children there we-took-in
Tout ainsi nous fu-il renduz
All thus to-us was-he rendered
et li sans de lui espanduz,
and the blood of him spilled
que nous en fumes engagié
that we thereof were pledged
et nostre enfant nous unt plegié:
and our children us have pledged
se nous en clamons tout à toi
so ourselves thereof we-appeal all to thee
de ce que nous fist tel desroi,
of this that to-us he-did such outrage

et vouluns que tu nous en quites
and we-wish that thou us thereof acquit
des couvenances devant dites.»
of-the covenants before said
Vaspasyens ha ce oï:
Vespasian has this heard
leur desloiauté entendi,
their disloyalty he-understood
leur malice dont plein estoient,
their malice of-which full they-were
si cum par eus bien le moustroient;
so as by themselves well it they-showed
touz ensemble penre les fist,
all together take them he-made
en une grant meison les mist,
in a great house them put
si ha feit Pylate mander
so has made Pilate summon
et hors de la prison giter.
and out of the prison cast
Pylates est venuz devant,
Pilate is come before
a son seigneur va enquerant
of his lord he-goes inquiring
se il avoit éu grant tort
if he had had great wrong
ou prophete ne en sa mort.
in-the prophet nor in his death

«Nennil, si grant cum je quidoie
Not-at-all so great as I thought
et cum dedenz men cuer jujoie.»
and as within my heart I-judged
Pylate ester devant lui vist,
Pilate stand before him he-saw
commanda li et si li dist:
he-commanded him and so to-him said
«Je vueil touz ces Juis destruire,
I wish all these Jews to-destroy
n'en i aura nul qui ne muire;
not-thereof there will-be any who not may-die
bien s'unt séu tout descouvrir
well they-themselves-have known-how all to-disclose
pour quoi il doivent tout morir.»
for what they must all die
Devant lui les ha apelez,
Before him them he-has called
trente en ha d'une part sevrez;
thirty thereof he-has to-a side parted
assez feit chevaus amener
plenty he-makes horses bring
et as queues les feit nouer,
and to-the tails them makes tie
que touz trahiner les fera,
for all drag them he-will-make
jà un seul n'en echapera.
ever a single-one not-thereof will-escape
Ainsi fist le treitre destruire.
Thus he-made the traitors destroy

Li autre n'unt talent de rire;
The others not-have desire to laugh
meis mout durement s'esmaierent.
but very hard themselves-dismayed
Pour quoi ce feisoit demanderent;
For what this he-did they-asked
il dist: «Pour la mort de Jhesu,
he said For the death of Jesus
qui si vilment demenez fu.
who so vilely handled was
Ou tout vif le me renderez,
Either all alive him to-me you-shall-render
ou tuit vileinnement morrez.»
or all villainously you-shall-die
— «Par foi! à Joseph le rendimes,
By faith to Joseph him we-rendered
ne unques puis ne le véimes.
nor ever since not him we-saw
Joseph de la crouiz jus le mist,
Joseph from the cross down him put
et nous ne savuns qu'il en fist;
and we not know what-he with-him did
et se tu Joseph nous rendoies,
and if thou Joseph to-us renderedst
le cors Jhesu par lui rauroies.»
the body (of-)Jesus through him thou-wouldst-have-again
Et Pylates leur respondi:
And Pilate to-them answered
«Ne vous tenistes pas à lui,
Not yourselves you-held at-all to him

ainçois le féistes garder;
rather him you-made guard
trois jours féistes demourer
three days you-made remain
vos gardes là où il le mist,
your guards there where he him put
et déistes qu'il avoit dist
and you-said that-he had said
qu'au terz jour resusciteroit:
that-on-the third day he-would-rise-again
a ses deciples dist l'avoit.
to his disciples said it-he-had
Vous doutiez qu'il ne l'emblassent
You feared that-they — him-should-steal
par nuit et qu'il ne l'emportassent,
by night and that-they — him-should-carry-off
et il féissent entendant
and they should-make understanding
que véu l'éussent vivant,
that seen him-they-should-have living
et féissent les genz errer
and should-make the folk err
en la creance et desvoier;
in the belief and go-astray
car, se il fust resurrexiz,
for if he were resurrected
granz periuz fust et granz ennuiz.»
great peril it-were and great trouble

Vaspasiens dist que morir
Vespasian said that to-die
les couvient touz et si fenir.
them it-behooves all and so to-end
Il respondent à une vouiz
They answer with one voice
que tout ce ne vaut une nouiz;
that all this not is-worth a nut
car Jhesu rendre ne pourroient,
for Jesus render not they-could
se Joseph ainçois ne ravoient.
if Joseph first not they-had-again
Tant en ra feit morir à honte
So-many thereof he-again-has made die in shame
que je n'en sai dire le conte,
that I not-thereof know tell the count
ardoir en fist une partie:
burn thereof he-made a part
ainsi leur vieut tolir la vie.
thus to-them he-wishes to-take-away the life
Quant il virent qu'ainsi morir
When they saw that-thus to-die
les couvendroit et departir,
them it-would-behoove and to-depart
s'en y eut un qui s'escria
so-thereof there was one who himself-cried-out
a haute vouiz et demanda:
with high voice and asked
«Et se je Joseph enseignoie,
And if I Joseph pointed-out

ma vie sauve averoie
my life safe would-I-have
et ma fame et tout mi enfant?»
and my wife and all my children
Vaspasiens respont erant:
Vespasian answers straightway
«Oïl, et si n'en doute mie,
Yes and so not-thereof doubt at-all
n'i perderas membre ne vie.»
not-there thou-shalt-lose limb nor life
Tantost l'a à la tour mené
At-once him-he-has to the tower led
où Joseph eurent enfermé,
where Joseph they-had shut-in
et dist: «Ci enz mestre le vi,
and said Here within put him I-saw
et bien sai que puis n'en issi.
and well I-know that since not-thence he-issued
Pilates par tout le feisoit
Pilate through all him made
querre; meis trouver n'ou povoit.»
seek but find not-him he-could
Lo[r]s demanda Vaspasyens
Then asked Vespasian
combien povoit avoir de tens.
how-much there-could have of time
«Dites pour quoi ci le méistes
Say for what here him you-put
et pour quoi ceenz l'enclossistes,
and for what herein him-you-enclosed

et que vous avoit-il meffeit?»
and what to-you had-he misdone
Il li conterent tout le feit,
They to-him told all the deed
comment il le cors leur toli
how he the body from-them took
dou prophete, quant il transi,
of-the prophet when he passed-away
et en tel liu repus l'avoit
and in such place hidden it-had
où nus trouver ne le pourroit
where anyone find not it could
«Et que ravoir n'ou pourriuns.
And that have-again not-it we-could
Emblez nous fu, bien le savuns,
Stolen from-us it-was well it we-know
et qu'il nous seroit demandez,
and that-it of-us would-be asked
ne ne pourroit estre trouvez.
nor not could be found
Tout ensemble nous conseillammes
All together we took-counsel
que Joseph tout vif penriammes
that Joseph all alive we-would-take
et que li touriammes la vie,
and that from-him we-would-take the life
si ne nous encuseroit mie;
so not us he-would-accuse at-all
et qui Jhesu demanderoit,
and who Jesus would-ask

par Joseph Jhesu raveroit,
through Joseph Jesus would-have-again
car Joseph l'averoit éu:
for Joseph it-would-have had
ainsi arians peis de Jhesu,
thus we-would-have peace of Jesus
que Joseph n'averoit-on mie,
for Joseph not-would-have-one at-all
qu'il averoit perdu la vie.
for-he would-have lost the life
Nous oins dire et tesmoignier
We heard say and witness
a ses deciples avant-ier
by his disciples before-yesterday
que au tie[r]z jour resurrexi
that on-the third day he-rose-again
et dou sepulchre hors oissi:
and from-the sepulcher out came
c'est ce pour quoi il fu ocis
this-is this for which he was killed
et dedenz ceste chartre mis.»
and within this dungeon put
Vaspasyens leur demanda:
Vespasian of-them asked
«Fu-il morz ainçois qu'il fust là,
Was-he dead before that-he were there
et se vous avant l'océistes
and if you before him-killed
et puis en la tour le méistes?»
and then in the tower him put

— «Nennil; meis forment le batimes
Not-at-all but greatly him we-beat
et puis là-dessouz le méismes
and then there-beneath him we-put
pour les folies qu'il disoit
for the follies that-he said
et que à nous touz respondoit.
and that to us all he-answered
Nous li demandiuns Jhesu,
We of-him asked Jesus
qu'emblé nous avoit et tolu.»
whom-stolen from-us he-had and taken
— «Or me dites se vous creez
Now to-me say if you believe
que il soit morz ne trespassez.»
that he be dead nor passed-away
Il respondent trestout ensemble:
They answer all together
«Nous ne savuns; meis il nous semble
We not know but it to-us seems
qu'il ne pourroit pas estre vis:
that-he not could at-all be alive
trop ha lonc tens qu'il fu ci mis.»
too-much it-has long time that-he was here put

Vaspasyens leur ha moustré:
Vespasian to-them has shown
«Bien le pourroit avoir gardé
Well him could have guarded
cil méismes qui m'a gari
that-one himself who me-has healed
et m'a donné que je sui ci;
and to-me-has given that I am here
car je sai bien qu'il n'est nus hon
for I know well that-there not-is any man
qui le péust feire s'il non,
who it could do except-him not
et bien voi que c'est veritez
and well I-see that it-is truth
que pour lui fu-il emmurez,
that for him was-he walled-up
et voirs est que donnez li fu,
and true it-is that given to-him it-was
et pour lui l'avez-vous batu.
and for him him-have-you beaten
Je ne quit mie ne ne sent
I not think at-all nor not feel
que Jhesus si vileinnement
that Jesus so villainously
l'éust cilec leissié morir;
him-should-have here let die
je weil garder tout à loisir.»
I wish to-look all at leisure
Lors li unt le bouch'uel osté,
Then from-it they-have the stopper removed

et il ha dedenz regardé,
and he has within looked
huche le; meis pas ne respont.
he-calls him but at-all not he-answers
Li Juif dient que ce sunt
The Jews say that these are
merveilles s'il ha tant duré,
marvels if-he has so-long lasted
qu'il y ha longuement esté,
for-he there has long been
c'onques n'i bust ne n'i menja
so-that-ever not-there he-drank nor not-there he-ate
ne confort nul éu n'i ha.
nor comfort any had not-there he-has
Li rois dist pas ne quideroit
The king said at-all not he-would-think
qu'il fust morz, s'il ne le veoit;
that-he were dead if-he not it saw
une grant corde ha demandée,
a great rope he-has asked
et on li ha tost aportée.
and one to-him has soon brought
Pluseurs fois le ra apelé,
Several times him again-he-has called
et il ne li ha mot sonné.
and he not to-him has word sounded
Quant vist qu'il ne responderoit,
When he-saw that-he not would-answer
s'est avalez là-jus tout droit;
himself-is lowered there-down all straight

et quant il avalez fu là,
and when he lowered was there
de çà et de là regarda.
from here and from there he-looked
En un clotest esgarde et voit
In a recess he-looks and sees
une clarté qui là estoit:
a brightness which there was
la corde treire commanda
the rope draw he-commanded
amont et ou clotest ala.
up and in-the recess he-went
Quant Joseph Vaspasyens vist,
When Joseph Vespasian saw
contre lui se lieve et li dist:
toward him himself rises and to-him said
«Vaspasyen, bien viegnes-tu!
Vespasian well mayest-come-thou
Que viens-tu querre, que vieus-tu?»
What comest-thou seek what wishest-thou
Quant Vaspasyent s'oït nummer,
When Vespasian himself-heard name
commença soi à merveillier
he-began himself to marvel
et dist: «Qui t'a mon non apris?
and said Who thee-has my name taught
Unc respondre ne me voussis
Ever to-answer not me thou-wishedst
oreinz quant de là t'apelei,
just-now when from there thee-I-called

et pour ce çà-jus avalei.
and for this here-down I-lowered-myself
Di-me qui tu ies, par ta vie!»
Tell-me who thou art by thy life
— «Joseph sui, diz d'Arymathye.»
Joseph I-am called of-Arimathea
Et quant Vaspasyens l'entent,
And when Vespasian it-hears
si s'en est esjoïz forment
so himself-thereof is rejoiced greatly
et dist: «Cil Diex benooiz soit
and said That God blessed be
qui t'a sauvé ici endroit!
who thee-has saved here right
Car nus ne puet ce sauvement
For anyone not can this salvation
sanz lui feire, n'en dout neent.»
without him do not-thereof I-doubt anything
Adonc andui s'entr'acolerent,
Then both each-other-embraced
par grant amour s'entre-beisierent.
through great love each-other-kissed
Lors ha demandé et enquis:
Then he-has asked and inquired
«Joseph, qui t'a men nun apris?»
Joseph who thee-has my name taught
Et Joseph tantost li respont:
And Joseph at-once to-him answers
«Cil qui ha apris tout le munt.»
He who has taught all the world

Vaspasyens à Joseph dist
Vespasian to Joseph said
par amours qu'il li apréist
by love that-he him should-teach
qui fu cil qui gari l'avoit
who was that-one who healed him-had
dou mal qui si vileins estoit.
of-the ill which so vile was
Joseph dist: «De queu maladie?»
Joseph said Of what sickness
Cil respont: «De meselerie.
That-one answers Of leprosy
Si vileinne iert et si puant
So vile it-was and so stinking
car nus ne séist autretant
that anyone not would-have-sat so-much
ne fust lez moi qu'ei ci esté,
nor were beside me that-I-have here been
pour tout l'avoir d'une cité.»
for all the-wealth of-a city
Quant Joseph l'a bien entendu,
When Joseph it-has well heard
si s'en rist et dist: «N'ou sez-tu
so himself-thereof laughs and said Not-it knowest-thou
qui t'a gari? Je te dirai,
who thee-has healed I to-thee shall-tell
car tout certeinnement le sai.
for all certainly it I-know
Se voloies savoir son non,
If thou-wouldst to-know his name

par foi! bien le te diroit-on.
by faith well it to-thee would-tell-one
Il couvendroit qu'en lui créisses
It would-behoove that-in him thou-shouldst-believe
et ses commandemenz féisses,
and his commandments shouldst-do
et je mout bien les te diroie
and I very well them to-thee would-tell
et la creance t'apenroie
and the belief to-thee-would-teach
et tout quanqu'il m'a commandé,
and all whatever-he me-has commanded
par lui-méismes enhorté.»
by him-himself exhorted
Vaspasyens dist: «Jou creirei
Vespasian said I shall-believe
et mout volentiers l'aourrei.»
and very gladly him-shall-adore

Joseph teaches Vespasian the fall of the angels, the creation of man to fill their seats, the fall of Adam and Eve, the Incarnation and Passion, and the Trinity. Vespasian believes and frees Joseph; he sets the Jew who showed him the tower adrift at sea with his kin and sells the Jews thirty for a penny. Joseph's sister Enygeus and her husband Bron come to him, and many others vow to believe in Christ and follow Joseph into exile. At Joseph's prayer, Vespasian pardons them.

— «Vaspasyen, enten mes diz.
Vespasian hear my words
Je croi que c'est li Sainz-Espriz
I believe that it-is the Holy-Spirit
qui trestoutes choses fourma,
who all things formed
et ciel et terre et mer feit ha;
and heaven and earth and sea made has
les nuiz, les jours, les elemenz
the nights the days the elements
fist-il et touz les quatre venz;
made-he and all the four winds
il fist et cria les archangles
he made and created the archangels
et tout ensemble fist les angles.
and all together made the angels
De mauveis en y eut partie,
Of wicked thereof there was part

plains d'orgueil et de felonnie
full of-pride and of wickedness
et d'envie et de couvoitise
and of-envy and of covetousness
et de haïne et de faintise,
and of hatred and of deceit
de luxure et d'autres pechiez;
of lust and of-other sins
se les eut Diex tost trebuchiez
so them had God soon cast-down
çà-aval, que pas ne li plurent.
here-below for at-all not him they-pleased
Trois jours et iij. nuiz adès plurent,
Three days and three nights always they-rained
qu'ainz plus espessement ne plut
for-ever more thickly not rained
pluie qui si grevanz nous fust.
rain which so grievous to-us were
Trois generacions chéi
Three generations fell
en Enfer et en terre ausi.
into Hell and onto earth also
Cil qui chéirent en Enfer
Those who fell into Hell
(leur meistres en est Lucifer)
their master thereof is Lucifer
tourmentent en Enfer les ames;
torment in Hell the souls

li autre tourmentent les femmes
the others torment the women
et les hommes qui sus la terre
and the men who upon the earth
chéirent et mestent en guerre
fell and put into war
trop grant envers leur createur.
too great toward their creator
Honte li funt et deshonneur
Shame to-him they-do and dishonor
en ce qu'il pechent trop griément
in this that-they sin too grievously
contre lui et vileinnement;
against him and villainously
et li angle leur unt moustré,
and the angels to-them have shown
qui sunt en terre demouré,
who are on earth remained
et si les mestent en escrist:
and so them put in writing
ne vuelent pas c'on les oblist.
not they-wish at-all that-one them forget
Les autres trois si demourerent
The other three so remained
en l'eir et ilec s'arresterent;
in the-air and there themselves-stopped
d'engignier unt autre menniere,
of-beguiling they-have other manner
qui n'est pas à penre legiere,
which not-is at-all to take lightly

qu'il prennent diverses semblances.
for-they take diverse likenesses
Leur darz, leur javeloz, leur lances,
Their darts their javelins their lances
pour decevoir, as genz envoient,
for to-deceive to-the folk they-send
et de bien feire les desvoient.
and from good doing them turn-aside
Ainsi sunt leur genelogyes
Thus are their genealogies
et sunt par trois foiz trois foïes.
and are by three times three times
Le mal et l'enging aporterent
The evil and the-guile they-brought
en terre et trestout l'i leissierent,
onto earth and all it-there left
le barat et la tricherie,
the fraud and the trickery
ire, luxure et gloutenie.
wrath lust and gluttony
Li autre qui sunt demouré
The others who are remained
ou ciel, si furent confermé,
in-the heaven so were confirmed
qu'il ne pourrunt jameis pechier;
that-they not shall-be-able ever-more sin

garderunt soi de l'encombrier
they-shall-guard themselves from the-trouble
que li autre se pourchacierent
that the others for-themselves procured
quant ou ciel méisme pechierent,
when in-the heaven itself they-sinned
et de la honte et dou despist
and from the shame and from-the contempt
que Diex pour leur orgueil leur fist.
that God for their pride to-them did
«Ainsi furent bien confondu
Thus were well confounded
li angle que Diex eut perdu,
the angels whom God had lost
et couvint qu'il homme fourmast
and it-behooved that-he man should-form
et pour ce despist le criast;
and for this contempt him should-create
ausi bel le fist comme lui:
as fair him he-made as himself
ainsi li plut et abeli.
thus to-him it-pleased and gratified
Puissance d'aler, de venir,
Power of-going of coming
de paller, vooir et d'oïr,
of speaking seeing and of-hearing
sens et memoire li donna,
sense and memory to-him he-gave

et dist que de lui remplira
and said that with him he-will-fill
touz les sieges de Paradis,
all the seats of Paradise
où li angle estoient jadis.
where the angels were formerly
Ainsi fu hons feiz et fourmez
Thus was man made and formed
et en Paradis hostelez,
and in Paradise lodged
car Diex méismes l'i mena
for God himself him-there led
et qu'il feroit li enseigna.
and what-he should-do him taught
Pour reposer là se coucha,
For to-rest there himself he-lay-down
et Diex de sa coste fourma
and God from his rib formed
sa fame, qu'il li ha donnée;
his wife whom-he to-him has given
Adans l'a Evein apelée.
Adam her-has Eve called
De ces deus suns-nous tout venu,
From these two are-we all come
meis par ce fumes confundu;
but by this we-were confounded
car quant li Ennemis ce vist,
for when the Enemy this saw

si en eut mout très grant despist
so thereof had very very great spite
que li hons, qui de boue estoit,
that the man who of mud was
les sieges dou ciel rempliroit.
the seats of-the heaven would-fill
A Eve vint, si l'engingna
To Eve he-came so her-beguiled
par la pomme qu'ele menja.
through the apple which-she ate
Par l'enhortement l'Ennemi
Through the-exhortation (of-)the-Enemy
s'en fist Adam mengier ausi;
so-thereof made Adam eat also
et quant il en eurent mengié,
and when they thereof had eaten
de Paradis furent chacié,
from Paradise they-were chased
car li lius pechié ne consent
for the place sin not consents
n'à nul mal feire ne s'estent;
nor-to any evil doing not itself-extends
et si les couvint labourer
and so them it-behooved to-labor
et leur cors en sueurs tenner.
and their bodies in sweats toil
De ces deus fu li monz criez.
From these two was the world created

Et Deables fu si irez
And the-Devil was so angered
que il touz avoir les vouloit,
that he all to-have them wished
pour ce que hons consentu avoit
for this that man consented had
a acomplir sa volenté;
to fulfill his will
meis li vrais Diex, par sa bonté,
but the true God through his goodness
pour s'uevre qu'avoit feit sauver
for his-work which-he-had made to-save
(ainsi le vout-il ordener),
thus it wished-he to-ordain
en terre sen fil envoia,
onto earth his son sent
qui aveques nous conversa.
who with us dwelt
Nez fu de la virge Marie
Born he-was of the virgin Mary
sanz pechié et sanz vilenie,
without sin and without villainy
sanz semence d'omme engenrez,
without seed of-man begotten
sanz pechié concéuz et nez:
without sin conceived and born

ce fu cil-méismes Jhesus
this was that-one-himself Jesus
qui o nous conversa çà-jus
who with us dwelt here-below
et qui les miracles feisoit;
and who the miracles made
touz jours à bien feire entendoit,
all days to good doing he-attended
unques n'ouvra mauveissement,
ever not-he-wrought wickedly
ainz feisoit bien et sagement;
rather did well and wisely
ce fu cil qui par les Juis
this was he who by the Jews
fu en la crouiz penduz et mis
was on the cross hanged and put
ou fust de quoi Eve menja
on-the wood from which Eve ate
la pomme, et Adans li eida.
the apple and Adam her aided
Ainsi voust Diex li Fiuz venir
Thus wished God the Son to-come
pour sen pere en terre morir;
for his father on earth to-die
cil qui de la Virge fu nez,
he who of the Virgin was born
par les Juis morz et dampnez,
by the Jews killed and condemned

ainsi nous voust touz racheter
thus us wished all to-redeem
par son sanc des travauz d'Enfer.
by his blood from-the toils of-Hell
Diex li Peres, Jhesus li Fiz,
God the Father Jesus the Son
et méismes li Sainz-Espriz,
and likewise the Holy-Spirit
tu doiz croire, n'en doute mie,
thou must believe not-thereof doubt at-all
que cil troi funt une partie.
that these three make one part
Voo[i]r le puez qu'il t'a gari;
See it thou-canst that-he thee-has healed
et se t'a amené ici
and so thee-has brought here
pour vooir se il m'a sauvé,
for to-see if he me-has saved
nus fors lui n'i ha poesté;
anyone except him not-there has power
et tu le commandement croi
and thou the commandment believe
de ses deciples et de moi,
of his disciples and of me
a cui Diex le voust enseignier
to whom God it wished to-teach
pou[r] son non croistre et essaucier.»
for his name to-increase and exalt

Vaspasyens ha respondu:
Vespasian has answered
«Je t'ei mout très bien entendu
I thee-have very very well understood
de Dieu le Pere, Dieu le Fil,
of God the Father God the Son
dou Saint-Esprist que Diex est-il;
of-the Holy-Spirit that God is-he
une seule persone sunt
a single person are
cil troi et tout un povoir unt.
these three and all one power have
Tout ainsi le croi et crerei,
All thus it I-believe and shall-believe
n'autrement croire n'ou vourrei.»
nor-otherwise to-believe not-it I-shall-wish
Joseph dist: «Si tost cumme istras
Joseph said As soon as thou-shalt-go-out
de ci et de moi partiras,
from here and from me shalt-part
quier les deciples Jhesu-Crist
seek the disciples (of-)Jesus-Christ
qui tiennent ce que il leur dist;
who hold this that he to-them said
car il sevent ce qu'il donna
for they know this that-he gave
et quanque à feire commanda.
and whatever to do he-commanded
Il est de mort resuscitez,
He is from death risen

a son pere s'en est alez,
to his father himself-thence is gone
o soi ha nostre char portée
with himself has our flesh carried
en Paradis gloirefiée.»
into Paradise glorified
Joseph tout ainsi convertist
Joseph all thus converted
Vaspasyen et entroduist,
Vespasian and instructed
si que il croit bien fermement
so that he believes very firmly
Jhesu le roi omnipotent.
Jesus the king omnipotent
Vaspasyens ha apelé
Vespasian has called
ceus qui l'avoient avalé,
those who him-had lowered
si que il bien entendu l'unt,
so that they well heard him-have
encor fust-il bien en parfunt.
yet were-he well in deep
De ce se sunt mout merveillié;
At this themselves are much marveled
li Juif n'en serunt pas lié.
the Jews not-thereof shall-be at-all glad
Vaspasyens prent à huchier
Vespasian takes to call
qu'il voisent la tour depecier,
that-they go the tower break

qu'il ha Joseph leenz trouvé
for-he has Joseph within found
tout sein de cors et tout heitié.
all sound of body and all hale
Quident que ce estre ne peust,
They-think that this be not could
c'onques n'i menja c'on séust.
so-that-ever not-there he-ate that-one knew
Li serjant queurent, quant l'oïrent,
The sergeants run when it-they-heard
et errant depecier la firent.
and straightway break it they-made
Li rois de la prison oissi,
The king from the prison came-out
Joseph amena avec lui.
Joseph he-led with him
Dient li viel et li enfant
Say the old and the children
que la vertu de Dieu est grant.
that the power of God is great
Or fu Joseph touz delivrez,
Now was Joseph all delivered
devant les Juis amenez.
before the Jews brought
Quant le virent et le connurent,
When him they-saw and him knew
li Juif esbaubi en furent;
the Jews dumbfounded thereof were
comment soi à merveillier,
they-begin themselves to marvel

quant le voient sein et entier.
when him they-see sound and whole
Lors leur ha Vaspasyens dist:
Then to-them has Vespasian said
«Rendez-moi tantost Jhesu-Crist,
Render-me at-once Jesus-Christ
que vez ci Joseph en present.»
for see here Joseph in presence
Il respondent communément:
They answer in-common
«Certes, sire, nous li baillames
Certainly lord we to-him gave
et bien set que nous li leissames:
and well he-knows that we to-him left
die-nous qu'il est devenuz,
let-him-tell-us what-he is become
qu'il en fist, bien en iert créuz.»
what-he with-him did well thereof he-will-be believed
Joseph respondi as Juis:
Joseph answered to-the Jews
«Bien séustes où je le mis;
Well you-knew where I him put
car vous le féistes garder,
for you him made guard
que il ne péust eschaper.
that he not could escape
Vo chevalier trois jours i furent,
Your knights three days there were
par jour et par nuit ne s'en murent.
by day and by night not themselves-thence moved

Sachiez qu'il est resuscitez
Know that-he is risen
de mort à vie, or m'en crez.
from death to life now me-thereof believe
Tantost en Enfer s'en ala
At-once into Hell himself-thence went
et touz ses amis en gita,
and all his friends thence cast
en Paradis les ha menez,
into Paradise them has led
comme Diex est lassus muntez.»
as God is up-there ascended
Li Juif furent esbahi,
The Jews were astonished
c'onques meis ne le furent si.
so-that-ever any-more not it were so
Vaspasyens à un seul mot
Vespasian with a single word
fist des Juis ce que lui plot.
did with-the Jews this that him pleased
Celui qui avoit enseignié
That-one who had pointed-out
lau Joseph avoient mucié,
where-there Joseph they-had hidden
fist mestre en mer à grant navie,
he-made put on sea in great ship
avec lui toute sa lignie;
with him all his lineage
en veissiaus les empeint en mer:
in vessels them he-pushes onto sea

or peurent par l'iaue vaguer.
now they-could on the-water drift
Li rois à Joseph demanda
The king of Joseph asked
comment ce Juis sauvera.
how these Jews he-will-save
A ce Joseph ne se tust mie:
To this Joseph not himself silenced at-all
«S'il vuelent croire ou Fil Marie,
If-they wish to-believe in-the Son (of-)Mary
qui sires est de charité:
who lord is of charity
c'est en la sainte Trinité,
this-is in the holy Trinity
ou Pere, ou Fil, ou Seint-Esprist,
in-the Father in-the Son in-the Holy-Spirit
si con no loi l'enseigne et dist.»
so as our law it-teaches and says
Vaspasyens a feit savoir
Vespasian has made know
a ceus de sen païs, pour voir,
to those of his country for true
se Juis vuelent acheter,
if Jews they-wish to-buy
xxx en donra pour un denier;
thirty thereof he-will-give for one penny
si grant marchié leur en fera,
so great bargain to-them thereof he-will-make
tant cumme à vendre en y ara.
so-much as to sell thereof there will-be

Joseph une sereur avoit,
Joseph a sister had
Enygeus par non l'apeloit;
Enygeus by name her-he-called
et sen serourge par droit non,
and his brother-in-law by right name
quant vouloit, apeloit Hebron.
when he-wished he-called Hebron
Hebrons forment Joseph amoit,
Hebron greatly Joseph loved
pour ce que mout preudons estoit.
for this that very worthy-man he-was
Quant Brons et sa femme perçurent
When Bron and his wife perceived
que Joseph vivoit, lié en furent
that Joseph lived glad thereof they-were
et l'alerent errant vooir,
and him-went straightway to-see
quant seurent où estoit, pour voir;
when they-knew where he-was for true
et li unt dist: «Joseph, de fi,
and to-him have said Joseph of faith
sire, nous te crions merci.»
lord we to-thee cry mercy
Quant Joseph ha ce entendu,
When Joseph has this heard
mout liez et mout joianz en fu
very glad and very joyful thereof he-was
et dist que «ce n'est pas à moi,
and said that this not-is at-all to me

meis au Seigneur en cui je croi,
but to-the Lord in whom I believe
le fil la seintisme pucele
the son (of-)the most-holy maiden
Marie, qui fu Dieu ancele.
Mary who was (of-)God handmaid
Celui servuns, celui amons
Him we-serve him we-love
qui m'a sauvé, celui creons,
who me-has saved him we-believe
et dès ore meis en avant
and from now any-more in forward
devons tout estre en lui creant.»
we-must all be in him believing
Lors fist Joseph par tout crier
Then made Joseph through all cry
se nul en y ha qui sauver
if any thereof there is who to-save
se vueille et croire en Jhesu-Crist,
himself may-wish and to-believe in Jesus-Christ
il les hostera dou despist
he them will-take from-the contempt
Nostre-Seigneur et de tourment,
(of-)Our-Lord and from torment
ce leur fera-il soutément;
this to-them will-do-he quietly
et cil à leur amis pallerent,
and those to their friends spoke

qui le greent et otroierent
who it agree and granted
qu'il creroie[n]t tout entreseit
that-they would-believe all entirely
et quanqu'il vouroit seroit feit.
and whatever-he would-wish would-be done
Et Joseph leur ha dist à tant:
And Joseph to-them has said at that
«Ne me feites pas entendant
Not to-me make at-all understanding
mençonge, pour péur de mort:
lie for fear of death
vous l'achateriez trop fort.»
you it-would-pay-for too dearly
Il li dient: «Fei ten pleisir;
They to-him say Do thy pleasure
nous ne t'oserians mentir.»
we not to-thee-would-dare lie
Joseph dist: «Se vous me voulez
Joseph said If you me wish
croire, pas ci ne demourrez;
to-believe at-all here not you-shall-remain
ainçois leirez vos heritages,
rather you-shall-leave your heritages
vos terres et vos hesbergages,
your lands and your dwellings
et en eissil nous en iruns:
and into exile ourselves thence we-shall-go
tout ce pour amour Dieu feruns.»
all this for love (of-)God we-shall-do

Il dient ce ferunt-il bien.
They say this will-do-they well
Joseph va à Vaspasyen,
Joseph goes to Vespasian
si li pria qu'à cele gent
so him prayed that-to that folk
pardonnast tout sen mautalent,
he-should-pardon all his ill-will
2355 pour amour de lui le féist;
for love of him it he-should-do
Vaspasyens ainsi le fist.
Vespasian thus it did

X · THE GRAIL TABLE

Joseph leads his people into distant lands, where for a time all goes well; then, through the sin of lust among them, their labor fails. At their plea Joseph prays before the vessel, and the Holy Spirit bids him make a table in memory of the Supper, set the vessel on it with a fish that Bron catches, seat Bron at his right, and leave an empty place for Judas's seat. Those without sin feel the vessel's grace and sweetness; the sinners feel nothing and depart. Petrus tells them the vessel is called the Grail, and its service is held at terce.

Vaspasyens ainsi venja
Vespasian thus avenged
la mort Jhesu, qu'il mout ama.
the death (of-)Jesus whom-he much loved
Quant Joseph eut si esploitié,
When Joseph had so done

a Vaspasyen prist congié
of Vespasian he-took leave
et d'ileques se departi;
and from-there himself departed
ses genz mena aveques li,
his folk he-led with him
en lointeinnes terres alerent
into distant lands they-went
et là longuement demourerent.
and there long remained
A ce qu'il demourerent là,
In this that-they remained there
boens enseignemenz leur moustra
good teachings to-them showed
Joseph et bien les enseignoit,
Joseph and well them taught
car il feire bien le savoit;
for he do well it knew
commanda-leur à labourer,
he-commanded-them to labor
et ce firent sanz rebouler:
and this they-did without balking
si ala leur afeires bien
so went their affairs well
grant tens, et ne leur falli rien;
great time and not to-them failed anything
meis après ala malement,
but after it-went badly
et si vous conterei comment:
and so to-you I-shall-tell how

quar tout ce quanques il feisoient,
for all this whatever they did
par jour et par nuit labouroient,
by day and by night they-labored
aloit à mal. A ce soufrir
went to ill At this suffering
ne se vourrent plus aboennir.
not themselves they-wished more to-content
Et cil maus qui leur avenoit,
And that ill which to-them came
pour un tout seul pechié estoit,
for a all single sin was
qu'avoient entr'eus commencié;
which-they-had among-them begun
mout en estoient entechié:
much thereby they-were stained
c'iert pour le pechié de luxure,
this-was for the sin of lust
pour teu vilté, pour tele ordure.
for such vileness for such filth
Quant virent qu'il ce endurer
When they-saw that-they this endure
ne peurent ne ce mal tenser,
not could nor this ill ward-off
a Hebron sunt venu tout droit,
to Hebron they-are come all straight
qui mout bien de Joseph estoit;
who very well with Joseph was
si li dient tout bien les fuient,
so to-him they-say all goods them flee

toutes meseises les poursuient,
all hardships them pursue
«N'unques si granz genz cum nous suns
Not-ever so great folk as we are
tant n'eurent mal cum nous avuns;
so-much not-had ill as we have
nous soufruns meseise trop grant,
we suffer hardship too great
unques genz n'en soufrirent tant:
ever folk not-thereof suffered so-much
si te vouluns pour Dieu prier
so thee we-wish for God to-pray
que le voises Joseph nuncier
that it thou-go to-Joseph announce
car nous tout si de fein moruns,
for we all so of hunger die
par un petit que n'enragons.
by a little that we-go-mad
Nous avons defaute trop grant,
We have want too great
et nos femmes et nostre enfant.»
both our wives and our children
Et quant Hebruns ha ce entendu,
And when Hebron has this heard
mout grant pitié en ha éu
very great pity thereof he-has had
et si leur ha bien demandé
and so of-them has well asked
s'il unt longuement enduré.
if-they have long endured

«Oïl, certes, il ha lonc tens;
Yes certainly it is long time
tant cum péumes l'endurens.
so-much as we-could it-we-endure
Pour Dieu si te voluns prier,
For God so thee we-wish to-pray
va-t'en à Joseph conseillier
go-thyself-thence to Joseph to-take-counsel
pour quoi ce nous est avenu
for what this to-us is happened
que nous avons trestout perdu,
that we have all lost
par nos pechiez ou par les siens
through our sins or through the his
qu'einsi avons perduz nos biens.»
that-thus we-have lost our goods
Hebrons respont qu'il i ira,
Hebron answers that-he there will-go
volentiers li demandera.
gladly of-him will-ask
Lors vient à Joseph, si li conte
Then he-comes to Joseph so to-him tells
la grant meseise et la grant honte
the great hardship and the great shame
que ses genz entour lui soufroient
that his folk around him suffered
et le meschief que il avoient;
and the mischance that they had

si prient c'um leur leit savoir
so they-pray that-one them let know
de ceste chose tout le voir.
of this thing all the truth
Lors ha pris Joseph à prier
Then has taken Joseph to pray
de cuer loial, fin et entier,
with heart loyal pure and whole
le Fil Dieu que savoir li face
the Son (of-)God that know him he-may-make
de tout cest afeire la trace.
of all this affair the trace
Lors s'est Joseph à douter pris
Then himself-is Joseph to fear taken
que il n'éust vers Dieu mespris
that he should-have toward God misdone
et feit chose dont courouciez
and done thing whereof angered
fust Diex vers lui, n'en est pas liez.
were God toward him not-thereof he-is at-all glad
Puis dist: «Hebron, je le sarei;
Then he-said Hebron I it shall-know
et se le sai, j'ou vous direi.»
and if it I-know I-it to-you shall-tell

Joseph à sen veissel s'en va
Joseph to his vessel himself-thence goes
et tout plourant s'agenouilla
and all weeping himself-knelt
et dist: «Sire, qui char presis
and said Lord who flesh tookest
en la Virge et de li nasquis,
in the Virgin and of her wast-born
par ta pitié, par ta douçour,
through thy pity through thy sweetness
i venis, et pour nostre amour
there thou-camest and for our love
entre nous vousis converser
among us thou-didst-wish to-dwell
pour ta creature sauver
for thy creature to-save
qui à toi vourroit obéir,
which to thee would-wish to-obey
ta volenté feire et suir.
thy will to-do and to-follow
Sire, tout ausi vraiement
Lord all so truly
com vif, vous vi mort ensement
as alive you I-saw dead likewise
si cumme après la mort te vi
so as after the death thee I-saw
vivant à moi paller ausi
living to me speak also
en la tour où fui emmurez,
in the tower where I-was walled-up

où me féistes granz bontez;
where to-me you-did great kindnesses
et là, sire, me commandastes,
and there lord me you-commanded
quant vous ce veissel m'aportastes,
when you this vessel to-me-brought
toutes les foiz que je vourroie
all the times that I would-wish
secrez de vous, que je venroie
secrets of you that I should-come
devant ce veissel precieus
before this vessel precious
où est vostres sans glorieus.
where is your blood glorious
Ainsi vous pri-je et requier
Thus you pray-I and require
que vous me vouilliez co[n]seillier
that you me may-wish to-counsel
de ce que cele gent demande
of this that that folk asks
(faute unt de pein et de viande),
want they-have of bread and of food
que puisse ouvrer à vo pleisir
that I-may work to your pleasure
et vo volenté acomplir.»
and your will fulfill
Lors ha à Joseph la vouiz dist,
Then has to Joseph the voice said
ki venue est dou Saint-Esprist:
which come is from-the Holy-Spirit

«Joseph, or ne t'esmaie mie:
Joseph now not thyself-dismay at-all
n'as coupes en ceste folie.»
not-thou-hast blame in this folly
— «Sire, dunques par ta pitié
Lord then through thy pity
suefre touz ceus qui unt pechié
suffer all those who have sinned
que les ost de ma compeignie.»
that them I-may-remove from my company
— «Joseph, ce ne feras-tu mie;
Joseph this not shalt-do-thou at-all
meis une chose te commant,
but one thing thee I-command
c'iert en senefiance grant:
it-shall-be in signification great
ten veissel o mon sanc penras;
thy vessel with my blood thou-shalt-take
en espreuve le meteras
to proof it thou-shalt-put
vers les pecheeurs en apert,
toward the sinners in open
le veissel tout à descouvert.
the vessel all at uncovered
Sonvigne-toi que fui venduz,
Remember-thou that I-was sold
trahiz et foulez et batuz.
betrayed and trampled and beaten
Et tout adès bien le savoie;
And all always well it I-knew

meis unques paller n'en vouloie
but ever to-speak not-thereof I-wished
devant que je fui chiés Symon,
before that I was at-the-house-of Simon
où estoient mi compeignon;
where were my companions
et dis qu'aveques moi menjoit
and said that-with me ate
qui le mien cors trahir devoit. 2480
who the my body betray was-to
Cil qui seut qu'il aveit ce feit
He who knew that-he had this done
honte eut, arriers de moi se treit;
shame had back from me himself drew
ainz puis mes deciples ne fu;
rather since my disciple not he-was
meis un autre en y eut en liu.
but an other thereof there was in place
En sen liu ne sera nus mis 2485
In his place not will-be anyone put
devant que i soies assis.
before that there thou-be seated
Tu sez bien que chiés Symon fui
Thou knowest well that at-the-house-of Simon I-was
a la taule, où menjei et bui:
at the table where I-ate and drank
ileques vi-je men tourment,
there saw-I my torment
qui me venoit apertement. 2490
which to-me came openly

Ou non de cele table quier
In-the name of that table seek
une autre et fei appareillier,
an other and make prepare
et appar[i]llie l'aras.
and prepared it-thou-shalt-have
Bron te serourge apeleras.
Bron thy brother-in-law thou-shalt-call
Bros tes serourges est boens hon,
Bron thy brother-in-law is good man
de lui ne venra se bien non.
from him not will-come except good not
Si le fei en cele iaue aler,
So him make into that water go
un poisson querre et peeschier;
a fish seek and fish
et le premier que il penra,
and the first that he shall-take
tout droit à toi l'aportera.
all straight to thee it-shall-bring
Et sez-tu que tu en feras?
And knowest-thou what thou with-it shalt-do
Seur cele table le metras.
Upon that table it thou-shalt-put
Puis pren ten veissel et le mest
Then take thy vessel and it put
sus la table, lau mieuz te pleist;
on the table where-there best thee pleases
meis qu'il soit tout droit emmi liu;
but that-it be all straight in-the-middle place

et là endroit te serras-tu
and there right thyself shalt-sit-thou
et le cuevre d'une touaille.
and it cover with-a cloth
Quant auras ce feit sanz faille,
When thou-shalt-have this done without fail
adonc repenras le poisson
then thou-shalt-take-again the fish
que t'avera peschié Hebron.
which for-thee-will-have fished Hebron
D'autre part le mest bien et bel
On-other side it put well and fair
tout droit encontre ten veissel;
all straight opposite thy vessel
et quant tu tout ce feit aras,
and when thou all this done shalt-have
tout ten pueple apeler feras
all thy people call thou-shalt-make
et leur di que bien tost verrunt
and to-them say that very soon they-shall-see
ce de quoi dementé se sunt,
this of which lamented themselves they-are
qui par pechié ha deservi
who through sin has deserved
pour quoi leur est meschéu si.
for what to-them is befallen so

Adonc quant tu seras assis
Then when thou shalt-be seated
en cel endroit là où je sis
in that place there where I sat
a la Cene, quant je i mengei
at the Supper when I there ate
o mes deciples qu'i menei,
with my disciples whom-there I-led
Bron assié à ta destre mein:
Bron seat at thy right hand
lors si verras trestout de plein
then so thou-shalt-see all at full
que Brons arriere se treira
that Bron back himself will-draw
tant comme uns hons de liu tenra.
so-much as a man of place will-hold
Icil lius wiz si senefie
That place empty so signifies
le liu Judas, qui par folie
the place (of-)Judas who through folly
de nostre compeignie eissi
from our company went-out
quant s'aperçut qu'il m'eut trahi.
when himself-perceived that-he me-had betrayed
Cil lius estre empliz ne pourra
That place be filled not will-be-able
devant qu'Enygeus avera
before that-Enygeus shall-have
un enfant de Bron sen mari,
a child of Bron her husband

que tu et ta suer amez si;
whom thou and thy sister love so
et quant li enfès sera nez, 2535
and when the child shall-be born
là sera ses lius assenez.
there will-be his place assigned
Quant tout ce feit ainsi aras,
When all this done thus thou-shalt-have
ten pueple à toi apeleras;
thy people to thee thou-shalt-call
et leur di, se il bien creu unt
and to-them say if they well believed have
Dieu le pere de tout le munt 2540
God the father of all the world
et le Fil et le Seint-Esprist,
and the Son and the Holy-Spirit
si cum apris l'avoit et dist
so as taught it-he-had and said
(c'est la benoite Trinité,
this-is the blessed Trinity
ki est en la sainte unité),
which is in the holy unity
et de touz les commandemenz 2545
and of all the commandments
et touz les boens enseignemenz
and all the good teachings
que je enseignié leur avoie,
that I taught them had
quant à eus touz par toi palloie,
when to them all through thee I-spoke

des trois vertuz ki une funt;
of-the three powers which one make
se trestout ce bien gardé unt
if all this well kept they-have
que il n'en unt trespassé rien,
that they not-thereof have transgressed anything
viegnent sooir, tu le vieus bien,
let-them-come sit thou it wishest well
a la grace Nostre-Seigneur,
at the grace (of-)Our-Lord
qui as suens feit bien et honneur.»
who to-the his-own does good and honor
Joseph fist le commandement
Joseph did the commandment
Nostre-Seigneur tout pleinnement,
(of-)Our-Lord all fully
et tout ausi les apela
and all so them called
cum Diex endoctriné li ha.
as God instructed him has
Dou pueple assist une partie,
Of-the people sat a part
li autre ne s'assistrent mie.
the others not themselves-sat at-all
La taule toute pleinne estoit,
The table all full was

fors le liu qui pleins ne pooit
except the place which full not could
estre; et cil qui au mengier
be and those who at-the eating
sistrent, si eurent sanz targier
sat so had without delay
la douceur, l'acomplissement
the sweetness the-fulfillment
de leur cuers tout-entierement;
of their hearts all-entirely
et cil qui la grace sentirent,
and those who the grace felt
assez errant en oubli mirent
quite straightway into forgetting put
les autres qui point n'en avoient.
the others who whit not-thereof had
L'uns de ceus qui se seoient,
The-one of those who themselves sat
qui Petrus apelez estoit,
who Petrus called was
regarde delez lui et voit,
looks beside him and sees
ceus qui estoient en estant
those who were in standing
va mout très humlement priant:
he-goes very very humbly praying
«Par amours, or me dites voir,
By love now to-me tell true

povez-vous sentir ne savoir
can-you feel nor know
riens de ce bien que nous sentuns?»
anything of this good that we feel
Cil respondent: «Riens n'en avuns.»
Those answer Anything not-thereof we-have
Adonques leur ha dist Petrus:
Then to-them has said Petrus
«De ce ne doit douter hons nus
Of this not must doubt man any
que vous ne soiez entechié
that you — be stained
de ce vil dolereus pechié
with this vile grievous sin
dont Joseph enquerre féistes
whereof Joseph inquire you-made
et pour quoi la grace perdistes.»
and for which the grace you-lost
Adonc pour la honte qu'il unt,
Then for the shame that-they have
de la meison issu s'en sunt.
from the house issued themselves-thence they-are
Un en y eut qui mout ploura
One thereof there was who much wept
et mout leide chiere feit ha,
and very ugly face made has
quant li services fu finez,
when the service was ended
si s'est chaucuns d'ilec levez.
so himself-is each-one from-there risen

Entre les autres sunt alez;
Among the others they-are gone
meis Joseph leur ha commandé
but Joseph to-them has commanded
que il revignent chaucun jour
that they come-again each day
a cele grace sanz demour.
to that grace without delay
Ainsi ha Joseph percéu
Thus has Joseph perceived
les pecheeurs et connéu:
the sinners and recognized
ce fu par le demoustrement
this was through the showing
de Dieu le roi omnipotent.
of God the king omnipotent
Par ce fu li veissiaus amez
Through this was the vessel loved
et premierement esprouvez.
and first proved
Ainsi eurent la grace là,
Thus they-had the grace there
ki mout longuement leur dura.
which very long to-them lasted
Li autre ki dehors estoient,
The others who outside were
a ceus dedenz mout enqueroient:
of those within much inquired
«Que vous semble de cele grace?
What to-you seems of that grace

Que sentez-vous qu'ele vous face?
What feel-you that-it to-you does
Et qui vous ha ce don donné,
And who to-you has this gift given
ne qui vous ha en ce enfourmé?»
nor who you has in this instructed
Cil respondent: «Cuers ne pourroit,
Those answer Heart not could
a pourpenser ne soufiroit
to ponder not would-suffice
le grant delit que nous avuns
the great delight that we have
ne la grant joie en quoi nous suns,
nor the great joy in which we are
qu'il nous y couvient demourer
for-it us there behooves to-remain
dusqu'au matin et sejourner.
until-the morning and sojourn
Don puet si grant grace venir,
Whence can so great grace come
ki ainsi feit tout raemplir
which thus makes all fill
le cuer de l'omme et de la femme
the heart of the-man and of the woman
et de bien refeit toute l'ame?»
and with good restores all the-soul
Lors leur ha Joseph respondu:
Then to-them has Joseph answered
«Ce vient dou benooit Jhesu,
This comes from-the blessed Jesus

qui Joseph sauva en prison,
who Joseph saved in prison
où il estoit mis sanz reison.»
where he was put without reason
— «Cil veissiaus qu'avuns or véu,
That vessel which-we-have now seen
unques meis moustrez ne nous fu;
ever any-more shown not to-us was
que ce puet estre ne savuns, 2625
what this can be not we-know
tant soutillier nous y puissuns.»
so-much subtly-think we there may
Cil dient: «Par ce veissel-ci
Those say Through this vessel-here
summes-nous de vous departi,
are-we from you parted
car il n'a à nul pecheour
for it not-has with any sinner
ne compaignie ne amour.» 2630
nor company nor love
— «Vous le povez mout bien vooir.
You it can very well see
Meis or me dites tout le voir,
But now to-me tell all the truth
quel talent ne queu volenté
what desire nor what will
vous éutes ne quel pensé
you had nor what thought
quant on vous dist: «Venez sooir.» 2635
when one to-you said Come sit

Et si repovez bien savoir
And so again-you-can well know
li queus feisoit ce grant pechié,
the which did this great sin
pour qu'ietes de grace chacié.»
for which-you-are from grace chased
Cil dient: «Nous nous en iruns
Those say We ourselves thence shall-go
comme chetif et vous leiruns;
as wretched and you shall-leave
meis, s'il vous pleist, nous aprenez
but if-it you pleases us teach
(bien savuns que vous le savez)
well we-know that you it know
que diruns quant on nous dira
what we-shall-say when one to-us will-say
pour quoi vous avuns leissié çà.»
for what you we-have left here
— «Or escoutez que respondrez
Now hear what you-shall-answer
quant de ce oposé serez,
when about this questioned you-shall-be
et si respondrez verité:
and so you-shall-answer truth
qu'à la grace suns demouré
that-at the grace we-are remained
de Dieu no pere Jhesu-Crist
of God our father Jesus-Christ
et ensemble dou Saint-Esprist,
and together of-the Holy-Spirit

tout confermé en la creance
all confirmed in the belief
Joseph et en sa pourveance.»
(of-)Joseph and in his providence
— «Et queu sera la renummée
And what will-be the renown
do veissel qui tant vous agrée?
of-the vessel which so-much to-you is-pleasing
Dites-nous, comment l'apele-on
Tell-us how it-calls-one
quant on le numme par son non?»
when one it names by its name
Petrus respont: «N'ou quier celer,
Petrus answers Not-it I-seek to-conceal
qui à droit le vourra nummer,
who at right it will-wish to-name
par droit Graal l'apelera;
by right Grail it-will-call
car nus le Graal ne verra,
for anyone the Grail not will-see
ce croi-je, qu'il ne li agrée:
this believe-I that-it not him is-pleasing
a touz ceus pleist de la contrée,
to all those it-pleases of the country
a touz agrée et abelist;
to all it-is-pleasing and gratifies

en li vooir hunt cil delist
in it seeing have those delight
qui avec lui pueent durer
who with it can last
et de sa compeignie user,
and of its company enjoy
autant unt d'eise cum poisson
as-much they-have of-ease as fish
quant en sa mein le tient uns hon
when in his hand it holds a man
et de sa mein puet eschaper
and from his hand can escape
et en grant iaue aler noer.»
and into great water go swim
Quant cil l'oient, se l'greent bien;
When those it-hear so it-they-agree well
autre non ne greent-il rien
other name not agree-they anything
fors tant que Gaal eit à non:
except so-much that Grail it-may-have as name
par droit agreer s'i doit-on.
by right agree himself-thereto must-one
Tout ainsi cil qui s'en alerent
All thus those who themselves-thence went
et cil ausi qui demourerent
and those also who remained
le veissel unt Graal nummé
the vessel have Grail named
pour la reison que j'ei conté.
for the reason that I-have told

Li pueples qui là demoura,
The people who there remained
a l'eure de tierce assena
at the-hour of terce appointed
car quant à ce Graal iroient
for when to this Grail they-should-go
sen service l'apeleroient;
their service it-they-would-call
et, pour ce que la chose est voire,
and for this that the thing is true
l'apelon dou Graal l'Estoire,
it-we-call of-the Grail the-History
et le non dou Graal ara
and the name of-the Grail it-shall-have
dès puis le tens de là en çà.
from since the time from there to here

One of the sinners, Moses, stays behind feigning piety and begs, through the company, a place at the grace; Joseph answers that the grace is not his to give. After a gap in the text, Joseph prays to know what has become of Moses. The voice tells him that the empty seat will be filled only by the third man of his line, Bron's son's son, and that Moses, who stayed only to shame the company, has sunk into the abyss. Bron and Enygeus have twelve sons; eleven marry, and Joseph takes the twelfth, Alain, who will take no wife.

Ces fauses genz qui s'en alerent
These false folk who themselves-thence went
un de leur compeignons leissierent,
one of their companions left
qui Moyses à non avoit
who Moses as name had
et au pueple sage sembloit,
and to-the people wise seemed
en lui gueitier bien engigneus
in himself watching well cunning
et en paroles artilleus;
and in words artful
bien commençoit et bien finoit,
well he-began and well ended
en sa conscience feisoit
in his conscience he-made
et semblant que il sages fust
and show that he wise were
et que le cuer piteus éust.
and that the heart pitiful he-had

Dist ne se movra entreseit
He-said not himself will-move certainly
d'avec ces genz que Diex si peit
from-with these folk whom God so feeds
de la grace dou Seint-Esprist.
with the grace of-the Holy-Spirit
Lors ploura et mout grant duel fist
Then he-wept and very great grief made
et triste chiere et trop piteuse,
and sad face and too pitiful
par semblance trop merveilleuse;
by seeming too marvelous
et s'aucuns delez lui passoit,
and if-anyone beside him passed
de la grace mout li prioit
for the grace much him he-prayed
que pour lui devant Joseph fust,
that for him before Joseph he-should-be
que il de lui merci éust.
that he on him mercy should-have
Ce prioit menu et souvent,
This he-prayed often and frequently
ce sembloit, de cuer simplement:
this it-seemed from heart simply
«Pour Dieu! priez Joseph que j'aie
For God pray Joseph that-I may-have
de la grace ki nous apaie.»
of the grace which us satisfies
Par meintes foiz proia ainsint,
By many-a time he-prayed thus

tant qu'à une journée avint
until that-on a day it-happened
qu'il estoient tout assemblé;
that-they were all assembled
de Moyses leur prist pité,
on Moses to-them took pity
et dirent qu'il en palleroient
and said that-they thereof would-speak
a Joseph et l'en prieroient.
to Joseph and him-thereof would-pray
Quant tout ensemble Joseph virent,
When all together Joseph they-saw
trestout devant ses piez chéirent,
all before his feet they-fell
et li prie chaucuns et breit
and him prays each-one and cries
qu'il de Moyset pitié eit;
that-he on Moses pity may-have
et Joseph mout se merveilla
and Joseph much himself marveled
de ce que chascuns le pria,
at this that each-one him prayed
et leur ha dist: «Vous, que voulez?
and to-them has said You what wish-you
Dites-moi de quoi vous priez.»
Tell-me of what you pray
Il respondent hisnelement:
They answer swiftly

«Li plus granz feis de nostre gent
The most great part of our folk
s'en sunt alé et departi;
themselves-thence are gone and departed
un seul en ha demouré ci,
a single-one thereof has remained here
qui pleure mout très tenrement
who weeps very very tenderly
et crie et feit grant marrement,
and cries and makes great sorrow
et dist que il ne s'en ira
and says that he not himself-thence will-go
de ci tant comm'il vivera.
from here so-long as-he shall-live
Il nous prie que te prions,
He us prays that thee we-should-pray
de la grace que nous avuns
of the grace that we have
icilec en ta compeignie
here in thy company
a grant joie et à seignourie,
with great joy and with lordship
qu'avec nous en soit parçonniers;
that-with us thereof he-be sharer
car nous le vouluns volentiers.»
for we it wish gladly
Joseph respont sanz reculer:
Joseph answers without drawing-back
«Ele n'est pas moie à donner,
It not-is at-all mine to give

car nostres sire Diex la donne
for our lord God it gives
là où il vieut à tel persone.
there where he wishes to such person
Cil cui il la donne, pour voir,
Those to-whom he it gives for true
sunt tel qu'il la doivent avoir;
are such that-they it must have
et cil, espoir, n'est pas iteus
and that-one perhaps not-is at-all such
comme il se feit, bien le set Dieus.
as he himself makes well it knows God
Ce devuns savoir, non quidier,
This we-must know not think
que il ne nous puet engignier.
that he not us can beguile
S'il n'est boens, si s'engignera
If-he not-is good so himself-he-will-beguile
et tout premiers le comparra.»
and all first it will-pay-for
— «Sire, nous avuns grant fiance,
Lord we have great trust
et se pert bien à sa semblance.»
and itself appears well in his seeming

* * *

(lacuna)

«Vous voussistes au darriens
You wished at-the last
soufrir les tourmenz terriens,
to-suffer the torments earthly

et voussistes la mort soufrir
and wished the death to-suffer
et pour nous en terre morir.
and for us on earth to-die
Si vraiement com me sauvastes
So truly as me you-saved
en la prison et m'en gitastes,
in the prison and me-thence cast
où Vaspasyens me trouva
where Vespasian me found
quant il en la chartre avala,
when he into the dungeon lowered-himself
et en la prison me déistes,
and in the prison to-me you-said
quant vous ce veissel me rendistes,
when you this vessel to-me gave
qu'adès quant je vous requerroie,
that-always when I you should-require
quant de riens encombrez seroie,
when by anything encumbered I-should-be
sanz targier venriez à moi;
without delaying you-would-come to me
si voirement com en vous croi,
so truly as in you I-believe
moustrez-moi que est devenuz
show-me what is become
Moyses ne s'il est perduz,
Moses nor if-he is lost

que le sache certeinnement
that it I-may-know certainly
et dire le puisse à ma gent,
and tell it may to my folk
que tu par ta grant courtoisie
which thou through thy great courtesy
m'as ci donné en compeignie.»
me-hast here given in company
La vouiz à Josep[h] s'apparu
The voice to Joseph itself-appeared
et se li ha ce respondu:
and so to-him has this answered
«Joseph, or est à ta venue
Joseph now is at thy coming
la senefiance avenue
the signification come
que te dis quant fundas
which to-thee I-said when thou-foundedst
la table, qu'en liu de Judas
the table that-in place of Judas
seroit cil lius en remembrance,
would-be this place in remembrance
que il perdi par signorance
which he lost through his-ignorance
quant je dis qu'il me trahiroit
when I said that-he me would-betray
et cil lius rempliz ne seroit
and this place filled not would-be
devant le jour dou Jugement,
before the day of-the Judgment

qu'encor attendent toute gent,
which-still await all folk
et tu-méismes l'empliroies
and thou-thyself it-wouldst-fill
adonc quant tu raporteroies
then when thou wouldst-bring-back
la souvenance de ta mort;
the remembrance of thy death
meis le te di pour ton confort,
but it to-thee I-say for thy comfort
que cist lius empliz ne sera
that this place filled not will-be
devant que li tierz hons venra
before that the third man shall-come
qui descendra de ten lignage
who will-descend from thy lineage
et istera de ten parage,
and will-issue from thy kindred
et Hebruns le doit engenrer
and Hebron him must beget
et Enygeus ta suer porter;
and Enygeus thy sister bear
et cil qui de sen fil istra,
and he who from his son shall-issue
cest liu méismes emplira.
this place itself shall-fill
De Moyses, qui est perduz,
Of Moses who is lost
demandes qu'il est devenuz:
thou-askest what-he is become

or escoute, et jou te direi;
now listen and I to-thee shall-tell
car bien dire le te sarei.
for well tell it to-thee I-shall-know
«Quant si compeignun s'en alerent
When his companions themselves-thence went
et ci avec vous le leissierent,
and here with you him left
ce que il touz seus demoura
this that he all alone remained
qu'o les autres ne s'en ala,
that-with the others not himself-thence he-went
ce fist-il pour toi engignier;
this did-he for thee to-beguile
or en ha reçut sen louier.
now thereof he-has received his wages
Ne povoit croire ne savoir
Not he-could believe nor know
que tes genz péussent avoir,
that thy folk could have
ki aveques toi demouroient,
who with thee remained
si grant grace comme il avoient;
so great grace as they had
et sanz doute ne remest mie,
and without doubt not he-remained at-all
fors pour honnir ta compeignie.
except for to-shame thy company

Saches de voir qu'il est funduz
Know for true that-he is sunk
dusqu'en abysme et est perduz;
down-into abyss and is lost
de lui plus ne pallera-on
of him more not will-speak-one
ne en fable ne en chançon,
nor in fable nor in song
devant ce que cil revenra
before this that that-one shall-come-again
qui le liu vuit raemplira:
who the place empty shall-fill
cil-méismes le doit trouver.
that-one-himself him must find
Meis de lui plus [n'estuet] paller.
But of him more not-it-behooves speak
Qui recreirunt ma compeignie
Who shall-renounce my company
et la teue, ne doute mie,
and the thine not doubt at-all
de Moyses se clamerunt
of Moses themselves will-complain
et durement l'acuserunt.
and harshly him-will-accuse
Ainsi le doiz dire et conter
Thus it thou-must say and tell
a tes deciples et moustrer.
to thy disciples and show

Or pense que tu pourquis has,
Now think what thou procured hast
vers moi ainsi le trouveras.»
toward me thus it thou-shalt-find
Ainsi ha à Joseph pallé
Thus has to Joseph spoken
li Sainz-Espriz et ha moustré
the Holy-Spirit and has shown
la mauveise euvre Moysest,
the wicked work (of-)Moses
et li ha dist comment il est;
and to-him has said how he is
et Joseph ne le coile mie
and Joseph not it conceals at-all
a Bron ne à sa compeignie,
from Bron nor from his company
ainz leur ha apertement dist
rather to-them has openly said
quanqu'il oï de Jhesu-Crist,
whatever-he heard from Jesus-Christ
et la chose comment ele est
and the thing how it is
et qu'il ha feit de Moysest.
and what-he has done with Moses
Il dient tout par verité:
They say all by truth
«Granz est de Dieu la poesté.
Great is of God the power

Fous est qui pourchace folie
Mad is who pursues folly
pour ceste dolereuse vie.»
for this grievous life
Brons et sa femme lonc tens furent
Bron and his wife long time were
ensemble tout ainsi con durent,
together all thus as they-ought
tant que il eurent douze fiuz
until that they had twelve sons
et biaus et genz et parcréuz;
both fair and noble and grown
et en furent mout encombré
and thereof were much encumbered
(car bien leur couvint à plenté),
for well them it-behooved in plenty
tant qu'Enyseus à Bron palla,
until that-Enygeus to Bron spoke
a son seigneur, et dist li ha:
to her lord and said to-him has
«Sire, vous déussier mander
Lord you ought send-for
Joseph men frere, et demander
Joseph my brother and ask
que nous feruns de nos enfanz:
what we shall-do with our children
vez-les touz parcréuz et granz;
see-them all grown and great

car nous riens feire ne devuns
for we anything do not ought
que ainçois à lui n'en palluns.»
that first to him thereof we-speak
Brons dist: «Tout ausi le pensoie
Bron said All so it I-thought
que je à vous en palleroie;
that I to you thereof would-speak
mout volentiers à lui irei
very gladly to him I-shall-go
et de boen cuer l'en prierei.»
and with good heart him-thereof shall-pray
Brons vint à Joseph, si li dist,
Bron came to Joseph so to-him said
tout ainsi con li plut et sist,
all thus as to-him it-pleased and suited
que sa suer l'eut là envoié,
that his sister him-had there sent
de cele besoigne touchié:
of that need touched
«Sire, douze granz fiuz avuns;
Lord twelve great sons we-have
assener pas ne les vouluns
settle at-all not them we-wish
ne riens feire se par toi non:
nor anything to-do except by thee not
si me diras que en feron.»
so to-me thou-wilt-tell what with-them we-shall-do

Joseph dist: «En la compeignie
Joseph said In the company
serunt de Dieu, n'i faurrunt mie.
they-shall-be of God not-there they-will-fail at-all
Mout volentiers l'en prierei,
Very gladly him-thereof I-shall-pray
quant je liu et tens en verrei.»
when I place and time thereof shall-see
Lors ont tout ce leissié ester
Then they-have all this let be
dusqu'à un jour qu'alez ourer
until-to a day that-gone to-pray
fu Joseph devant sen veissel;
was Joseph before his vessel
si li souvint et l'en fu bel
so to-him it-remembered and to-him-thereof it-was fair
de ce que Brons li eut prié,
of this that Bron him had prayed
si prist à plourer de pitié
so he-took to weep for pity
et prie Dieu mout tenrement:
and prays God very tenderly
«Peres Diex, rois omnipotent,
Father God king omnipotent
s'il vous pleit, feites-moi savoir
if-it you pleases make-me know
de ceste chose vo vouloir,
of this thing your will
que nous de mes nevez feruns,
what we with my nephews shall-do

en quel labeur les meteruns.
into what labor them we-shall-put
Feites-m'en aucune moustrance,
Make-me-thereof some showing
s'il vous pleist, et senefiance.»
if-it you pleases and signification
Et Diex à Joseph envoia
And God to Joseph sent
un angle qui li anunça,
an angel who to-him announced
si li dist: «Diex m'envoie à toi:
so to-him said God me-sends to thee
sez-tu que te mande par moi?
knowest-thou what to-thee he-sends through me
Il fera tant pour tes neveus,
He will-do so-much for thy nephews
tout quanque tu pries et vieus;
all whatever thou prayest and wishest
il vieut qu'il soient atourné
he wishes that-they be turned
au service Dieu et mené,
to-the service (of-)God and led
que il si deciple serunt
that they his disciples shall-be
et meistre seu eus averunt.
and master over them shall-have
Se il vuelent femes avoir,
If they wish wives to-have

il les arunt; et doit savoir
they them shall-have and must know
cil qui point de femme n'ara,
he who whit of wife not-shall-have
li mariez le servira;
the married-one him shall-serve
meis tu commanderas au pere
but thou shalt-command to-the father
et si le diras à la mere
and so it shalt-say to the mother
que il t'ameinnent devant toi
that they to-thee-bring before thee
celui qui femme aveques soi
that-one who wife with himself
ne voura avoir ne tenir.
not will-wish to-have nor to-hold
A toi les feras obéir;
To thee them thou-shalt-make obey
et quant serunt à toi venu,
and when they-shall-be to thee come
tu ne feras pas l'esperdu;
thou not shalt-play at-all the-distraught
meis devant t'en venras,
but before thee-thence thou-shalt-come
la vouiz dou Seint-Esprit orras.»
the voice of-the Holy-Spirit thou-shalt-hear
Joseph mout bien trestout aprist
Joseph very well all learned
quanque li angles li eut dist,
whatever the angel to-him had said

et puis li angles s'en ala,
and then the angel himself-thence went
et Joseph mout liez demoura
and Joseph very glad remained
pour le grant bien qu'il entendoit
for the great good that-he understood
que chaucuns des enfanz aroit;
that each-one of-the children would-have
a Bron vint, et li ha conté
to Bron he-came and to-him has told
le conseil qu'il avoit trouvé:
the counsel that-he had found
«Sez-tu, dist Joseph, que te proi?
Knowest-thou said Joseph what thee I-pray
Tes enfanz e[n]seigne à la loi
Thy children teach to the law
de Dieu garder et meintenir;
of God keep and maintain
femmes aient à leur pleisir,
wives let-them-have at their pleasure
a la menniere d'autre gent
in the manner of-other folk
les arunt par espousement.
them they-shall-have by marriage
S'aucuns y ha qui femme avoir
If-any there is who wife to-have
ne vueille, et remennoir
not may-wish and to-remain
o moi en ma meison vourra,
with me in my house will-wish

icil avec moi demourra.»
that-one with me shall-remain
Brons dist: «A vo commandement
Bron said At your command
et à vo pleisir boennement.» 2930
and at your pleasure gladly
Brons à sa femme repeira,
Bron to his wife returned
ce que Joseph dist li conta.
this that Joseph said to-her told
Quant Enyseus eut tout ce oï,
When Enygeus had all this heard
dedenz sen cuer s'en esbaudi;
within her heart herself-thereof cheered
a Bron dist: «Sire, or vous hastez, 2935
to Bron she-said Lord now yourself hasten
s'en feites ce que vous devez.»
so-thereof do this that you ought
Brons touz ses enfanz apela,
Bron all his children called
a touz ensemble demanda
of all together asked
queu vie chaucuns vieut mener.
what life each-one wishes to-lead
Il dient: «Dou tout acorder 2940
They say In-the all to-agree
vouluns à ten commandement
we-wish to thy command
et le feruns mout boennement.»
and it we-shall-do very gladly

Et de ce furent-il mout lié;
And at this were-they very glad
meis Hebruns leur ha pourchacié
but Hebron for-them has procured
et loing et près tant qu'il éussent
both far and near until that-they should-have
femmes et qu'il marié fussent,
wives and that-they married were
commande leur que loiaument
he-commands them that loyally
se tenissent et belement
themselves they-should-hold and fairly
en la compeignie leur femmes,
in the company (of-)their wives
seigneur soient et eles dames.
lords let-them-be and they ladies
Pristrent les selonc la viez loi,
They-took them according-to the old law
tout sanz orgueil et sanz bofoi,
all without pride and without boast
en la fourme de sainte Eglise;
in the form of holy Church
et Joseph mout bien leur devise
and Joseph very well to-them sets-out
qu'il doivent leissier et tenir,
what-they must leave and hold
comment se doivent meintenir.
how themselves they-must maintain
Ainsi fu la chose atournée.
Thus was the thing arranged

Chaucuns ha la seue espousée,
Each-one has the his-own married
fors c'un, qui avant escorchier
except one who rather flay
se leiroit et tout detrenchier
himself would-let and all cut-to-pieces
que femme espousast ne préist:
than wife he-should-marry nor take
n'en vieut nule, si comme il dist.
not-thereof he-wishes any so as he said
Quant Brons l'ot, mout se merveilla,
When Bron it-hears much himself he-marveled
a privé conseil l'apela
to private counsel him-he-called
et dist: «Fiuz, pour quoi ne prenez
and said Son for what not take-you
femme, si cum feire devez,
wife so as do you-ought
ausi cumme vo frere unt feit?»
just as your brothers have done
— «N'en pallez plus tout entreseit,
Not-thereof speak more all straightway
qu'en mon aé femme n'arei
for-in my life wife not-I-shall-have
ne jà femme n'espouserei.»
nor ever wife not-I-shall-marry

Li unze enfant sunt marié;
The eleven children are married
le douzime ha Brons ramené
the twelfth has Bron brought-back
a Joseph, sen oncle, et li dist.
to Joseph his uncle and to-him said
Quant Joseph l'oï, si s'en rist.
When Joseph it-heard so himself-thereof laughed
Joseph dist: «Cestui-ci avoir
Joseph said This-one-here have
doï, si sera miens pour voir.
I-ought so he-shall-be mine for true
Se vous et ma sereur voulez,
If you and my sister wish
entre vous deus le me donrez.»
between you two him to-me you-shall-give
Il respondent: «Volentiers, sire;
They answer Gladly lord
vostres soit sanz duel et sanz ire.»
yours let-him-be without grief and without wrath
Joseph entre ses braz le prist,
Joseph between his arms him took
acola le, et au pere dist
embraced him and to-the father said
et à sa suer qu'il s'en alassent
and to his sister that-they themselves-thence should-go
et l'enfant avec lui leissassent.
and the-child with him should-leave
Brons o sa fame s'en ala,
Bron with his wife himself-thence went

l'enfès o Joseph demoura.
the-child with Joseph remained
Lors dist Joseph: «Biaus niés, por voir,
Then said Joseph Fair nephew for true
mout grant joie devez avoir:
very great joy you-ought have
Nostres-Sires par son pleisir
Our-Lord by his pleasure
vous ha eslut à lui servir
you has chosen to him serve
et à essaucier sen douz non,
and to exalt his sweet name
qu'assez loer ne le puet-on.
for-enough praise not it can-one
Biaus douz niés, cheveteins serez
Fair sweet nephew chieftain you-shall-be
et vos freres gouvernerez.
and your brothers you-shall-govern
De delez moi ne vous mouvez,
From beside me not yourself move
ce que vous direi retenez.
this that to-you I-shall-say retain
La puissance de Jhesu-Crist,
The power of Jesus-Christ
le nostre sauveeur eslist,
the our savior chose
s'il li pleist qu'il parout à moi,
if-it him pleases that-be speak to me
si fera-il, si cum je croi.»
so will-do-he so as I believe

The voice tells Joseph to teach Alain Christ's love and passion and the story of the vessel, to warn him against the Enemy's guile and the flesh, and to say that from Alain will come an heir to keep the vessel. Alain will lead his brothers westward, and Petrus will go to the vales of Avaron to await Alain's son. Robert de Boron says the whole tale would be nearly a hundred times as long. A letter descends for Petrus, who names Avaron as his road, and Alain and his brothers set out to preach. Petrus, begged to stay, agrees to wait until the next day's service.

Joseph à sen veissel ala,
Joseph to his vessel went
mout devotement Dieu pria
very devoutly God prayed
demoustrast li de son neveu
that-he-should-show to-him of his nephew
comment il li feroit son preu.
how he for-him would-do his profit
Joseph a finé s'oroison,
Joseph has ended his-prayer
et tantost ha oï le son
and at-once has heard the sound
de la vouiz, ki li respondi:
of the voice which to-him answered
«Tes niés est sages, ce te di,
Thy nephew is wise this to-thee I-say
simples et bien endoctrinez
simple and well instructed
et retenanz et bien temprez;
and retentive and well tempered

de toutes choses te creira,
in all things thee he-will-believe
quanque li diras retenra.
whatever to-him thou-shalt-say he-will-retain
Enten comment l'enseigneras:
Hear how him-thou-shalt-teach
l'amour que j'ei li conteras
the-love that I-have to-him thou-shalt-tell
a toi et à toutes tes genz
to thee and to all thy folk
ki unt boens endoctrinemenz.
who have good instructions
Conte-li comment vins en terre,
Tell-him how I-came on earth
comment eurent tout à moi guerre
how they-had all with me war
et comment je fui achetez,
and how I was bought
venduz, bailliez et delivrez,
sold handed-over and delivered
comment fui batuz et leidiz,
how I-was beaten and insulted
d'un de mes deciples trahiz,
by-one of my disciples betrayed
et escopiz et decrachiez,
and spat-upon and spat-at
et à l'estache fu loiez;
and to the-post was bound
quanque peurent de leit me firent,
whatever they-could of harm to-me they-did

car au darrien me pendirent;
for at-the last me they-banged
comment tu de la crouiz m'ostas,
how thou from the cross me-tookest
comment mes plaies me lavas,
how my wounds for-me thou-washedst
comment ce veissel-ci éus
how this vessel-here thou-hadst
et le mien sanc y recéus,
and the my blood there received
comment tu fus des Juis pris
how thou wast by-the Jews taken
et ou fonz de la chartre mis,
and into-the bottom of the dungeon put
et comment je te confortei
and how I thee comforted
quant en la chartre te trouvei;
when in the dungeon thee I-found
et là un don te donnei-ge,
and there a gift thee gave-I
a toi et à tout ten lignage,
to thee and to all thy lineage
a touz ceus qui le saverunt
to all those who it shall-know
et qui apenre le vourrunt.
and who to-learn it will-wish
Di-li et l'amour et la vie
Tell-him both the-love and the life
qu'ei à toute ta compeignie,
that-I-have to all thy company

aies en ten ramembrement
have in thy remembrance
que te donnei emplusement
what to-thee I-gave of-fullness
de cuer d'omme en ta compeignie;
of heart of-man in thy company
a ten neveu n'ou cele mie,
from thy nephew not-it conceal at-all
et à touz ceus qui ce sarunt
and to all those who this shall-know
parfeitement le conterunt,
perfectly it they-shall-tell
et pleisance et grace averunt
and pleasure and grace shall-have
cil qui au siecle bien ferunt.
those who in-the world well shall-do
Leur heritages garderei,
Their heritages I-shall-guard
en toutes courz leur eiderei,
in all courts them I-shall-aid
ne pourrunt estre forjugié
not they-shall-be-able be wrongly-judged
ne de leur membres mehaignié
nor of their limbs maimed
et leur chose dont sacrement
and their thing whereof sacrament
ferunt en mon remembrement.
they-shall-make in my remembrance
Quant tout ce moustré li aras,
When all this shown to-him thou-shalt-have

men veissel li aporteras,
my vessel to-him thou-shalt-bring
et ce qui est dedenz li di:
and this which is within to-him tell
c'est dou sanc qui de moi issi.
this-is of-the blood that from me issued
S'il le croit ainsi vraiement,
If-he it believes thus truly
de foi aura confermement.
of faith he-will-have confirmation
Moustre-li comment Ennemis
Show-him how the-Enemy
engigne et deçoit mes amis
beguiles and deceives my friends
et ceus qui se tiennent à moi,
and those who themselves hold to me
que il s'en gart, car je l'en proi.
that he himself-therefrom guard for I him-thereof pray
Ne li oblie pas à dire
Not to-him forget at-all to say
qu'il se gart de courouz et d'ire,
that-he himself guard from anger and from-wrath
que il enhorbetez ne soit:
that he blinded not be
maubailliz est qui bien ne voit.
ill-handled is who well not sees
La chose très bien court tenra:
The thing very well short he-shall-hold

c'est ce qui mieuz le gitera
this-is this which best him will-cast
et plus tost de mauveis pensez
and more soon from wicked thoughts
d'estre tristoiez ne irez.
of-being saddened nor angered
Cest choses mestier li arunt
These things use to-him shall-have
et mout très bien le garderunt
and very very well him shall-guard
contre l'enging de l'Ennemi,
against the-guile of the-Enemy
qu'il ne puist rien avoir en lui.
that-he not may anything have in him
De la joie de char se gart,
From the joy of flesh himself let-him-guard
qu'il ne se tiegne pour musart:
that-he not himself may-hold for fool
la char tost l'ara engignié
the flesh soon him-will-have beguiled
et mis à duel et à pechié.
and put to grief and to sin
Quant tout ce moustré li aras,
When all this shown to-him thou-shalt-have
tu li diras et prieras
thou to-him shalt-say and shalt-pray
qu'il à ses amis le redie,
that-he to his friends it should-say-again
pour chose nule n'ou leit mie,
for thing any not-it may-leave at-all

a ceus que preudomes saura
to those whom worthy-men he-will-know
et que boens estre connoistra.
and whom good to-be he-will-recognize
Il pallera de moi adès
He will-speak of me always
où qu'il sera, et loig et près;
where that-he shall-be both far and near
car plus en bien en pallera
for more in good thereof he-will-speak
et plus de bien y trouvera.
and more of good there he-will-find
Di-li que de lui doit oissir
Tell-him that from him must issue
un oir malle, qui doit venir;
an heir male who must come
ce veissel ara garder,
this vessel he-will-have to-keep
et si li doiz ausi moustrer
and so to-him thou-must also show
et nous et nostre compeignie.
both us and our company
Enseurquetout n'oublie mie,
Above-all not-forget at-all
quant tu averas tout ce feit,
when thou shalt-have all this done
la garde de ses freres eit
the keeping of his brothers he-may-have
et de ses sereurs ensement.
and of his sisters likewise

Puis s'en ira vers occident
Then himself-thence he-will-go toward west
es plus loiteins lius que pourra;
into-the most distant places that he-can
et en touz les lius où venra,
and in all the places where he-shall-come
touz jours essaucera men non
all days he-will-exalt my name
par trestoute la region;
through all the region
et à son pere priera
and to his father he-will-pray
qu'il eit sa grace, et il l'aura.
that-he may-have his grace and he it-will-have
Demein, quant serez assemblé,
Tomorrow when you-shall-be assembled
vous verrez une grant clarté,
you will-see a great brightness
ki entre vous descendera
which among you will-descend
et un brief vous aportera.
and a letter to-you will-bring
Le brief qui sera aportez,
The letter which shall-be brought
a Petrus lire le ferez,
to Petrus read it you-shall-make

et li commanderez briément
and him you-shall-command briefly
que il s'en voit ysnelement
that he himself-thence go swiftly
en quel partie qu'il vourra
into what part that-he will-wish
et lau li cuers plus le trerra,
and where-there the heart most him will-draw
et qu'il ne soit pas esmaiez,
and that-he not be at-all dismayed
que de moi n'iert pas oubliez.
for by me not-he-shall-be at-all forgotten
Quant ce commandé li aras,
When this commanded to-him thou-shalt-have
après ce li demanderas
after this of-him thou-shalt-ask
en quel liu li cuers le treit plus;
into what place the heart him draws most
il te dira, n'en doute nus,
he to-thee will-say not-thereof doubt anyone
qu'ès vaus d'Avaron s'en ira
that-into-the vales of-Avaron himself-thence he-will-go
et en ce païs demourra.
and in that country will-remain
Ces terres trestout vraiement
These lands all truly
se treient devers occident.
themselves draw toward west

Di-li lau il s'arrestera
Tell-him where-there he himself-will-stop
le fil Alein atendera,
the son (of-)Alain he-will-await
ne il ne pourra devier
nor he not will-be-able die
ne de cest siecle trespasser
nor from this world pass-away
devant le jour que il ara
before the day that he will-have
celui qui sen brief li lira:
that-one who his letter to-him will-read
enseignera li povoir
he-will-teach him the-power
que cist veissiaus-ci puet avoir,
that this vessel-here can have
dira li que est devenuz
he-will-tell him what is become
Moyses qui estoit perduz.
Moses who was lost
Quant ces choses ara véues
When these things he-shall-have seen
et oïes et percéues,
and heard and perceived
adonques si trespassera,
then so he-will-pass-away
en joie sanz faillir venra.
into joy without failing he-will-come
Et quant tu tout ce dist aras,
And when thou all this said shalt-have

pour tes neveus envoieras;
for thy nephews thou-shalt-send
toutes ces paroles leur di
all these words to-them tell
que je t'ei contées ici,
that I to-thee-have told here
et trestout cest enseignement
and all this teaching
leur di sanz trespasser neent.»
to-them tell without passing-over anything
Mout fu bien convertiz Aleins
Very was well converted Alain
et de la grace de Dieu pleins.
and of the grace of God full
Joseph eut bien tout entendu
Joseph had well all heard
que la vouiz dist et retenu;
what the voice said and retained
Alein sen neveu apela,
Alain his nephew he-called
de chief en chief conté li ha
from head to head told to-him has
tout ce qu'il seut de Jhesu-Crist
all this that-he knew of Jesus-Christ
et ce que la vouiz l'en eut dist.
and this that the voice to-him-thereof had said
Meistres Robers dist de Bouron,
Master Robert says of Boron

se il voloit dire par non
if he wished to-tell by name
tout ce qu'en cest livre afferroit,
all this that-in this book would-belong
presqu'à cent doubles doubleroit;
almost-to a-hundred doubles it-would-double
meis qui cest peu pourra avoir,
but who this little will-be-able have
certeinnement pourra savoir
certainly will-be-able know
(que, s'il y vieut de cuer entendre,
for if-he there wishes with heart to-attend
assez de bien y porra prendre)
plenty of good there he-will-be-able take
ces choses que Joseph aprist
these things that Joseph taught
a sen neveu et qu'il li dist.
to his nephew and that-he to-him said
Et quant tout ce li eut moustré,
And when all this to-him he-had shown
si ha sen neveu apelé;
so has his nephew called
dist li: «Biaus niés, boens devez estre,
he-said to-him Fair nephew good you-ought be
quant de no seigneur, de no meistre,
since from our lord from our master
avez teu grace recouvrée
you-have such grace recovered
qu'ele vous est de Dieu donnée.»
that-it to-you is by God given

Lors le mena Joseph arriere,
Then him led Joseph back
et à sen pere et à sa mere
and to his father and to his mother
dist que ses freres gardera
said that his brothers he-will-keep
et que touz les gouvernera
and that all them he-will-govern
et ses sereurs; et il l'otroient
and his sisters and they it-grant
que souz lui à gouverner soient.
that under him to govern they-be
Quant d'aucune rien douterunt,
When about-any thing they-shall-be-in-doubt
a lui conseillier se venrunt:
to him counsel themselves they-shall-come
s'einsi le funt, bien leur venra;
if-thus it they-do well to-them it-will-come
s'il n'ou funt, maus leur sourdera.
if-they not-it do ills to-them will-arise
A Bron le pere ha commandé
To Bron the father he-has commanded
et à sa femme l'a rouvé;
and to his wife it-has asked
car il vieut qu'il doignent Alein
for he wishes that-they give Alain
la seignourie de leur mein
the lordship of their hand
seur leur filles, seur leur enfanz,
over their daughters over their children

uns et autres, petiz et granz,
ones and others small and great
devant eus; et plus l'en creirunt
before them and more him-thereof they-will-believe
et douterunt et amerunt,
and will-fear and will-love
et il bien les gouvernera
and he well them will-govern
tant cum chaucuns d'eus le creira.
so-much as each-one of-them him will-believe
Lendemein furent au servise,
The-next-day they-were at-the service
si cum l'estoire le devise;
so as the-history it sets-out
et avint c'une grant clarté
and it-happened that-a great brightness
leur apparust, s'a aporté
to-them appeared so-has brought
un brief, et trestout, ce me semble,
a letter and all this to-me seems
encontre se lievent ensemble.
toward-it themselves rise together
Joseph le prist, et apela
Joseph it took and called
a lui Petrus, et dist li ha:
to him Petrus and said to-him has
«Petrus, biaus freres, Dieu amis,
Petrus fair brother (of-)God friend
Jhesu, le roi de Paradis,
Jesus the king of Paradise

qui d'enfer touz nous racheta,
who from-hell all us redeemed
a message esléu vous ha;
for messenger chosen you has
ce brief avec vous porterez
this letter with you you-shall-carry
en quelque liu que vous vourrez.»
into whatever place that you will-wish
Quant Petrus Joseph paller oit,
When Petrus Joseph speak hears
si li dist que pas ne quidoit
so to-him said that at-all not he-thought
que Diex messagier le féist
that God messenger him would-make
ne brief porter li couvenist.
nor letter to-carry him would-behoove
Cil dist: «Mieuz vous connoist assez
That-one said Better you knows much
que vous méismes ne savez;
than you yourself — know
meis une chose vous priuns,
but a thing of-you we-pray
et pour l'amour qu'à vous avuns:
and for the-love that-to you we-have
que vous nous vouilliez demoustrer
that you to-us may-wish to-show
de quel part vous voudrez aler.»
to what side you will-wish to-go
Petrus dist: «Je le sai mout bien,
Petrus said I it know very well

et se ne m'en ha nus dist rien;
and so not to-me-thereof has anyone said anything
ainz ne véistes messagier
ever not you-saw messenger
qui mieuz le séust sanz nuncier.
who better it should-know without announcing
En la terre vers Occident,
Into the land toward West
ki est sauvage durement, 3220
which is wild harshly
es vaus d'Avaron m'en irei,
into-the vales of-Avaron myself-thence I-shall-go
la merci Dieu attenderei;
the mercy (of-)God I-shall-await
et vous de moi merci aiez,
and you on me mercy have
a Dieu nostre seigneur priez
to God our lord pray
que n'aie force ne povoir, 3225
that not-I-may-have force nor power
enging, corage ne vouloir
wit courage nor will
d'aler contre sa volenté
to-go against his will
ne de dire contre son gré.
nor to speak against his pleasure

Encor metrez en vo priere
Still you-shall-put in your prayer
qu'Ennemis en nule menniere
that-the-Enemy in any manner
me puist perdre ne tempester
me may lose nor torment
ne de l'amour de Dieu sevrer.»
nor from the-love of God sever
Trestout respondent d'une part:
All answer on-one side
«Diex, qui feire le puet, t'en gart!»
God who do it can thee-therefrom guard
En la meison Bron s'en alerent,
Into the house (of-)Bron themselves-thence they-went
les enfanz Hebron apelerent,
the children (of-)Hebron they-called
et à eus touz Hebrons a dist:
and to them all Hebron has said
«Mi fil, mes filles estes tuit;
My sons my daughters you-are all
paradis avoir ne povez,
paradise have not you-can
s'à cui que soit n'obéissiez:
if-to whom that be not-you-obey
pour ce vueil et si le desir
for this I-wish and so it desire
vous touz à un seul obéir;
you all to one alone to-obey

et tant com je de bien donner
and so-much as I of good give
puis et de grace delivrer,
can and of grace deliver
je la doins à men fil Alein,
I it give to my son Alain
et ce ne sera pas en vein.
and this not shall-be at-all in vain
Je li commant et vueil prier
I him command and wish to-pray
qu'il vous preigne touz à garder,
that-he you take all to keep
et vous à lui obéirez
and you to him shall-obey
comme à seigneur feire devez;
as to lord do you-ought
et s'avez de conseil mestier,
and if-you-have of counsel need
a lui irez sanz atargier:
to him you-shall-go without delaying
sanz doute il vous conseillera
without doubt he you will-counsel
si loiaument comme il pourra.
as loyally as he can
Une chose dire vous ose:
A thing say to-you I-dare

que vous n'entreprenez pas chose
that you not-undertake at-all thing
deseur le suen commandement;
above the his command
sen voloir feites boennement.»
his will do gladly
Li enfant s'en vunt tout ainsi,
The children themselves-thence go all thus
de leur pere sunt departi,
from their father they-are departed
et mout boenne volenté unt
and very good will they-have
qu'il Alein leur frere crerunt.
that-they Alain their brother will-believe
En estranges terres ala,
Into strange lands he-went
avec lui ses freres mena;
with him his brothers he-led
en touz les lius où il venoit,
in all the places where he came
hommes et femmes qu'il trouvoit
men and women whom-he found
la mort anunçoit Jhesu-Crist
the death he-announced (of-)Jesus-Christ
ainsi cum Joseph li aprist,
just as Joseph him taught
le non Jhesu-Crist preeschoit,
the name (of-)Jesus-Christ he-preached
entre touz mout grant grace avoit.
among all very great grace he-had

Ainsi furent d'ilec parti;
Thus they-were from-there parted
meis or d'eus vous leirei ici,
but now of-them you I-shall-leave here
que je n'en vueil or plus paller,
for I not-thereof wish now more to-speak
se m'i couvenra retourner.
so to-me-there it-will-behoove to-return
Parti s'en sunt et tout alé.
Parted themselves-thence they-are and all gone
Petrus ha Joseph apelé
Petrus has Joseph called
et les autres, si leur ha dit:
and the others so to-them has said
«Il m'en couvient aler, ce quit.»
It me-thence behooves to-go this I-think
— «Ce soit au Dieu commandement!»
This be at-the God's command
Après funt leur assemblement,
After they-make their assembly
Petrus prient ne s'en voit pas;
Petrus they-pray not himself-thence he-go at-all
il leur respont ynelepas
he to-them answers straightway
qu'il n'a talent de demourer,
that-he not-has desire to remain
car d'ilec l'en couvient aler.
for from-there him-thence it-behooves to-go
«Meis huimeis pour vous demourrei,
But today for you I-shall-remain

et puis demein si m'en irei,
and then tomorrow so myself-thence I-shall-go
quant aruns esté au servise.»
when we-shall-have been at-the service
Ainsi remest à leur devise.
Thus he-remained at their wish

XIII · THE RICH FISHER

An angel tells Joseph that Bron must have the vessel and the secret words after him and be called the Rich Fisher, for the fish he caught; he will go west to await his son's son. Petrus, held back to see Bron given the vessel, will then leave, and Joseph will die in joy. Joseph does all this and stays behind while the Rich Fisher departs. Robert de Boron, who first told the story with Lord Walter of Montbéliard, says that four branches remain to be told, of Alain, Petrus, Moses, and the Rich Fisher, and that he will join them if he finds them in a book; for now he sets them aside to tell a fifth.

Nostres-Sires, qui tout savoit
Our-Lord who all knew
comment la chose aler devoit,
how the thing go was-to
a Joseph son angle envoia,
to Joseph his angel sent
qui mout très bien le conforta
who very very well him comforted
et dist qu'il ne s'esmaie mie,
and said that-he not himself-dismay at-all
que il nule foiz ne l'oublie.
for he at-any time not him-forgets
«Ma volenté te couvient feire,
My will thee it-behooves to-do

l'amour de moi et toi retreire.
the-love of me and thee to-relate
Petrus de vous se doit partir:
Petrus from you himself must part
sez-tu pour quoi? Hui retenir
knowest-thou for what Today hold-back
l'osastes, et il demourer.
him-you-dared and he to-remain
Diex le vouloit ainsi moustrer, 3300
God it wished thus to-show
pour ce que voir dire pouist
for this that true say he-might
ne de rien nule ne mentist
nor in thing any not he-should-lie
a celui pour qui il s'en va,
to that-one for whom he himself-thence goes
quant il de ton veissel verra
when he of thy vessel shall-see
et des choses que je t'ei dites, 3305
and of-the things that I to-thee-have said
qu'eles sunt boennes et eslites.
that-they are good and chosen
Joseph, il couvient vraiement
Joseph it behooves truly
les choses qui commencement
the things which beginning
ont que fin aient après.
have that end they-have after

Nostres-Sires set bien adès
Our-Lord knows well always
que Brons mout preudons ha esté,
that Bron very worthy-man has been
et pour ce fu sa volenté
and for this was his will
que il en l'iaue peeschast
that he in the-water should-fish
et qu'il le poisson pourchacast
and that-he the fish should-procure
que vous avez en vo servise.
which you have in your service
Diex vieut et einsi le devise
God wishes and thus it sets-out
que il ten veissel avera
that he thy vessel shall-have
et après toi le gardera.
and after thee it will-keep
Apren-li comment meintenir
Teach-him how maintain
se devera et contenir,
himself he-shall-have-to and conduct
et l'amour que tu has à moi
and the-love that thou hast to me
et qu'ei adès éue à toi;
and that-I-have always had to thee
apren-li touz les erremenz
teach-him all the ways
et trestouz les contenemenz,
and all the conducts

trestout ce que de Dieu oïs
all this that from God thou-heardest
dès cele eure que tu naschis.
from that hour that thou wast-born
En ma creance le metras
In my belief him thou-shalt-put
et très bien li enseigneras.
and very well him shalt-teach
Di-li comment Diex à toi vint
Tell-him how God to thee came
en la chartre et ton veissel tint
in the dungeon and thy vessel held
et en tes meins le te bailla;
and into thy hands it to-thee gave
les seintes paroles dist t'a,
the holy words said to-thee-has
ki sunt douces et precieuses
which are sweet and precious
et gracieuses et piteuses,
and gracious and pitiful
ki sunt propement apelées
which are properly called
secrez dou Graal et nummées.
secrets of-the Grail and named
Quant ce averas feit bien et bel,
When this thou-shalt-have done well and fair
commanderas-li le veissel,
thou-shalt-entrust-him the vessel
qu'il le gart dès or en avant;
that-he it keep from now in forward

n'i mespreigne ne tant ne quant:
not-there let-him-err neither so-much nor how-much
toute la mesproison seroit
all the misdeed would-be
seur lui, et chier le comparroit.
upon him and dear it he-would-pay-for
Et cil qui nummer le vourrunt,
And those who name him will-wish
par son droit non l'apelerunt
by his right name him-shall-call
adès le riche Pescheeur.
always the rich Fisher
A touz jours croistera s'onneur,
At all days will-increase his-honor
pour le poisson qu'il peescha
for the fish that-he fished
quant cele grace commença.
when that grace began
Ainsi couvenra la chose estre,
Thus will-behoove the thing to-be
tu l'en feras seigneur et meistre.
thou him-thereof shalt-make lord and master
Ausi cum li monz va avant
Just as the world goes forward
et touz jours en amenuisant,
and all days in lessening
couvient que toute ceste gent
it-behooves that all this folk
se treie devers Occident.
itself draw toward West

Si tost com il seisiz sera
As soon as he seized shall-be
de ten veissel et il l'ara,
of thy vessel and he it-shall-have
il li couvient que il s'en voit
it him behooves that he himself-thence go
par devers Occident tout droit,
by toward West all straight
en quelque liu que il vourra
into whatever place that he will-wish
et lau li cuers plus le treira;
and where-there the heart most him will-draw
et quant il sera arrestez
and when he shall-be stopped
là où il voura demourez,
there where he will-wish to-remain
il atendra le fil sen fil
he will-await the son (of-)his son
séurement et sanz peril;
securely and without peril
et quant cil fiuz sera venuz,
and when that son shall-be come

li veissiaus li sera renduz
the vessel to-him shall-be rendered
et la grace, et se li diras
and the grace and so to-him thou-shalt-say
de par moi et commanderas
from by me and shalt-command
que il celui le recommant
that he to-that-one it entrust
qu'il le gart dès or en avant.
that-he it keep from now in forward
Lors sera la senefiance
Then will-be the signification
acomplie et la demoustrance
fulfilled and the showing
de la benoite Trinité,
of the blessed Trinity
qu'avons en trois parz devisé.
which-we-have into three parts divided
Dou tierz, ce te di-ge pour voir,
Of-the third this to-thee say-I for true
fera Jhesu-Criz sen vouloir,
will-do Jesus-Christ his will
qui sires est de ceste chose:
who lord is of this thing
nus oster ne li puet ne ose.
anyone take-away not from-him can nor dares

Quant le veissel à Bron donras
When the vessel to Bron thou-shalt-give
et grace et tout li bailleras
and grace and all to-him shalt-deliver
et tu en seras desseisiz,
and thou of-it shalt-be dispossessed
ces feiz mout bien touz acompliz,
these deeds very well all fulfilled
adonques s'en ira Petrus,
then himself-thence will-go Petrus
je ne vueil qu'il y demeurt plus;
I not wish that-he there may-remain more
car vraiement dire pourra
for truly say he-will-be-able
que il seisi véu aura
that he seized seen will-have
Hebron, le riche Pescheeur,
Hebron the rich Fisher
et dou veissel et de l'onneur:
both of-the vessel and of the-honor
pour ce Petrus fu demourez
for this Petrus was remained
dusqu'au mein, puis s'en est alez.
until-the morning then himself-thence is gone
Quant ce aras feit, il se mouvra,
When this thou-shalt-have done he himself will-move
par terre et par mer s'en ira,
by land and by sea himself-thence he-will-go

et Cil qui toutes choses garde
and He who all things keeps
l'avera dou tout en sa garde;
him-will-have of-the all in his keeping
et tu, quant tout ce feit aras,
and thou when all this done thou-shalt-have
dou siecle te departiras,
from-the world thyself shalt-depart
si venras en parfeite joie,
so thou-shalt-come into perfect joy
ki as boens est et si est moie:
which to-the good is and so is mine
ce est en pardurable vie.
this is in everlasting life
Tu et ti oir et ta lignie,
Thou and thy heirs and thy lineage
tout ce qu'est né et qui neistra
all this that-is born and which shall-be-born
de ta sereur, sauf estera;
of thy sister saved shall-be
et cil qui ce dire sarunt,
and those who this tell shall-know
plus amé et chieri serunt,
more loved and cherished shall-be
de toutes genz plus hennouré
by all folk more honored
et de preudommes plus douté.»
and by worthy-men more feared

Ainsi Joseph trestout feit ha
Thus Joseph all done has
ce que la vouiz li commanda.
this that the voice to-him commanded
Lendemein tout se rasemblerent
The-next-day all themselves reassembled
et au servise demourerent;
and at-the service remained
Joseph leur ha trestout retreit
Joseph to-them has all related
quanque la voiz dist entreseit,
whatever the voice said entirely
fors la parole Jhesu-Crist,
except the word (of-)Jesus-Christ
qu'en la chartre li avoit dist.
which-in the dungeon to-him he-had said
Cele parole sanz faleur
That word without failing
aprist au riche Pescheeur;
he-taught to-the rich Fisher
et quant ces choses li eut dites,
and when these things to-him he-had said
si li bailla après escrites.
so to-him gave after written
Il li ha feit demoustrement
He to-him has made showing
des secrez tout privéement.
of-the secrets all privately

Quant il eurent Joseph oï
When they had Joseph heard
et chaucuns d'eus bien l'entendi,
and each-one of-them well it-understood
de leur compaingnie partoit
from their company he-was-parting
ne avec eus plus ne seroit,
nor with them more not would-be
il en furent tout esbahi.
they thereof were all astonished
Quant virent Joseph desseisi,
When they-saw Joseph dispossessed
il en eurent mout grant pitié;
they thereof had very great pity
car il seurent qu'il eut baillié
for they knew that-he had given
sa grace et son commandement,
his grace and his command
ne savoient pas bien comment.
not they-knew at-all well how
Seisiz fu li riches Peschierres
Seized was the rich Fisher
dou Graal et touz commanderes.
of-the Grail and all commander
Congié prist, quant levé se sunt.
Leave he-took when risen themselves they-are
Au departir mout plouré unt,
At-the departing much wept they-have
souspirent et unt larmoié:
they-sigh and have shed-tears

c'estoit tout par humilité.
this-was all through humility
Il funt oroisons et prieres:
They make orisons and prayers
ce sunt choses que Diex ha chieres.
these are things that God holds dear
Joseph remet, pour feire honneur,
Joseph remains for to-do honor
avec le riche Peescheeur;
with the rich Fisher
trois jours fu en sa compeignie,
three days he-was in his company
que Joseph ne refusa mie.
which Joseph not refused at-all
Au tierz jour ha à Joseph dist:
On-the third day he-has to Joseph said
«Joseph, or m'enten un petit,
Joseph now me-hear a little
verité te direi sanz faille:
truth to-thee I-shall-tell without fail
volenté ei que je m'en aille.
will I-have that I myself-thence may-go
Se il te venoit à pleisir,
If it to-thee came to pleasure
par ten congié m'en vueil partir.»
by thy leave myself-thence I-wish to-part
— «Il me pleit bien, Joseph respont;
It me pleases well Joseph answers
car ces choses de par Dieu sunt.
for these things from by God are

Bien sez que tu emporteras
Well thou-knowest what thou shalt-carry-off
et en quel païs t'en iras.
and into what country thyself-thence thou-shalt-go
Tu t'en iras; je remeindrei,
Thou thyself-thence shalt-go I shall-remain
au commendement Dieu serei.»
at-the command (of-)God I-shall-be
Ainsi Joseph se demoura.
Thus Joseph himself remained
Li boens Pescherres s'en ala
The good Fisher himself-thence went
(dont furent puis meintes paroles
whereof were since many words
contées, ki ne sunt pas foles)
told which not are at-all foolish
en la terre lau il fu nez,
into the land where-there he was born
et Joseph si est demourez.
and Joseph so is remained
Messires Roberz de Beron
My-lord Robert of Boron
dist, se ce ci savoir voulun,
says if this here to-know we-wish
sanz doute savoir couvenra
without doubt to-know it-will-behoove
conter là où Aleins ala,
to-tell there where Alain went
li fiuz Hebron, et qu'il devint,
the son (of-)Hebron and what-he became

en queu terre aler le couvint,
into what land to-go him it-behooved
et qués oirs de li peut issir,
and what heirs of him could issue
et queu femme le peut nourrir,
and what woman him could nourish
et queu vie Petrus mena,
and what life Petrus led
qu'il devint n'en quel liu ala, 3470
what-he became nor-into what place he-went
en quel liu sera recouvrez:
in what place he-shall-be recovered
a peinnes sera retrouvez;
with pains he-shall-be found-again
que Moyses est devenuz,
what Moses is become
qui fu si longuement perduz:
who was so long lost
trouver le couvient par reison 3475
to-find him it-behooves by reason
(de parole ainsi le dist-on)
by word thus it says-one
lau li riches Peschierres va;
where-there the rich Fisher goes
en quel liu il s'arrestera,
in what place he himself-will-stop
et celui sache ramener
and that-one may-know-how to-bring-back
qui orendroit s'en doit aler. 3480
who now himself-thence must go

Ces quatre choses rassembler
These four things to-reassemble
couvient chaucune, et ratourner
it-behooves each-one and to-restore
chascune partie par soi
each part by itself
si comme ele est; meis je bien croi
so as it is but I well believe
que nus hons ne 's puet rassembler
that any man not them can reassemble
s'il n'a avant oï conter
if-he not-has before heard tell
dou Graal la plus grant estoire,
of-the Grail the most great history
sanz doute, ki est toute voire.
without doubt which is all true
A ce tens que je la retreis
At this time that I it related
o mon seigneur Gautier en peis,
with my lord Walter in peace
qui de Mont-Belyal estoit,
who of Montbéliard was
unques retreite esté n'avoit
ever related been not-had
la grant estoire dou Graal
the great history of-the Grail
par nul homme qui fust mortal;
by any man who were mortal

meis je fais bien à touz savoir
but I make well to all know
qui cest livre vourrunt avoir,
who this book will-wish to-have
que, se Diex me donne santé
that if God me gives health
et vie, bien ei volenté
and life well I-have will
de ces parties assembler,
of these parts to-assemble
se en livre les puis trouver.
if in book them I-can find
Ausi cumme d'une partie
Just as of-one part
leisse, que je ne retrei mie,
I-leave which I not relate at-all
ausi couvenra-il conter
so will-behoove-it to-tell
la quinte, et les quatre oublier,
the fifth and the four to-forget
tant que je puisse revenir
until that I may come-back
au retreire plus par loisir
to-the relating more at leisure
et à ceste uuevre tout par moi,
and to this work all by myself
et chascune m'estu[et] pa[r soi];
and each-one me-behooves by itself
meis se je or les leisse à tant,
but if I now them leave at that

3510 je ne sai homme si sachant
I not know man so knowing
qui ne quit que soient perdues
who not may-think that they-be lost
ne qu'eles serunt devenues,
nor what-they shall-be become
ne en quele senefiance
nor in what signification
j'en aroie feit dessevrance.
I-thereof would-have made separation

ANONYMOUS

Perceval

The Prose Perceval

When Arthur is crowned, Merlin tells the barons he is Uther Pendragon's son, raised by Antor. In private, before Kay and Gawain, he foretells that Arthur will be emperor of Rome once the Round Table is exalted, and tells of the three tables, Christ's, Joseph's, whose empty seat swallowed Moses, and the Round Table made in Uther's time; of the Grail, left by Joseph to Bron, the sick Fisher King in the isles of Ireland; and of the knight who must ask what the Grail serves, to heal him and end the enchantments of Britain. Merlin goes to Blaise, Arthur's court grows famous, and Perceval, Alain the Fat's son, resolves to go to it when his father dies.

Quant Artus fu sacrés et le messe fu cantée, si issirent tot
When Arthur was consecrated and the mass was sung so came-out all
li baron del mostier, si esgarderent, et ne virent pas le
the barons from-the minster so they-looked and not they-saw at-all the
perron, si ne sorent que il fu devenus. Ensi fu Artus esleus
block so not they-knew what it was become Thus was Arthur chosen
a roi et tint le terre et le regne de Logres lonc tans
for king and held the land and the kingdom of Logres long time
en pais. Quant Artus fu fais rois et le messe fu cantée,
in peace When Arthur was made king and the mass was sung
si s'en revint arriere a son palais, et tot li baron
so himself-thence came-back back to his palace and all the barons
qui l'espée li avoient veüe esracier dou perron. Dont vint
who the-sword him had seen pull-out from-the block Then came
Merlins après ceste eslection a la cort, et quant li baron
Merlin after this election to the court and when the barons
le virent qui le counissoient, si en firent mult grant joie,
him saw who him knew so thereof made very great joy
et Merlins parla a aus et lor dist: 'Segnor, or entendés
and Merlin spoke to them and to-them said Lords now hear
a çou que je vous dirai. Je vuel bien que vous saciés que
to this that I to-you shall-tell I wish well that you know that

Artus, qui vous avés receü a roi, fu fius a Uter Pandragon
Arthur whom you have received as king was son to Uther Pendragon
vostre segnor lige et la roïne Ygerne, et quant il fu nés
your lord liege and the queen Igerne and when he was born
si commanda li rois qu'on le me baillast. Si tost comme
so commanded the king that-one him to-me should-give So soon as
je l'euc je le portai Entor, por çou que je le savoie
I him-had I him carried (to-)Antor for this that I him knew
preudome, et il le garda volentiers por les grans biens que
worthy-man and he him kept gladly for the great goods that
je dis qu'il en auroit. Et ensi com je le dis si l'a il veü,
I said that-he thereof would-have And thus as I it said so it-has he seen
car il a fait de Keu son fil senescal. Et li rois dist: 'Ce
for he has made of Kay his son seneschal And the king said This
ai mon ne jamais a ma vie nen ert getés.' A ceste parole
I-have indeed nor ever-more in my life not will-be cast-out At this word
fu mult grans li joie et tout li baron en furent liés, et
was very great the joy and all the barons thereof were glad and
meïsme Gavains q'estoit fius sa seror et fils au roi Lot.
even Gawain who-was son (of-)his sister and son of-the king Lot
Après cest afaire si commanda li rois que on fesist les
After this affair so commanded the king that one should-make the
tables tot maintenant drecier, et on si fist, et s'asisent tot
tables all at-once set-up and one so did and themselves-sat all
au mangier parmi le sale, et furent mult ricement servi,
at-the eating through the hall and were very richly served
et orent quanqu'il volrent commander. Quant li baron orent
and had whatever-they wished to-command When the barons had
mangié si osterent li garçon et li serjant les tables, et
eaten so removed the boys and the sergeants the tables and
se leverent li baron, et s'en vinrent au roi cil
themselves rose the barons and themselves-thence came to-the king those

qui bien counissoient Merlin, et qui Uterpandragon avoient
who well knew Merlin and who Uther-Pendragon had
servi et li dient: 'Sire, honerés molt Merlin, car ce fu li
served and to-him say Lord honor much Merlin for this was the
bons devins a vostre pere, et qui vostre lignages a tous jors
good seer to your father and who your lineage has all days
molt amés, et a Vertigier dist se mort, et qui la table ronde
much loved and to Vortigern told his death and who the table round
fist faire. Or gardés qu'il soit molt onerés, car vous ne li
made make Now take-care that-he be much honored for you not of-him
demanderés ja cose que il ne vous die.' Et Artus respondi,
will-ask ever thing that he not to-you may-tell And Arthur answered
si fera il. Lors prist li rois Merlin et l'asist dejoste lui, et
so will-do he Then took the king Merlin and him-seated beside him and
fist molt grant joie de sa venue. Et Merlins li dist: 'Sire, je
made very great joy of his coming And Merlin to-him said Lord I
parleroie volentiers a vous a consel priveement, et si eüst
would-speak gladly to you in counsel privately and so there-should-be
aveuc vos .ij. de vos barons en qui plus vous vous fiés.'
with you two of your barons in whom most you yourselves trust
Et li rois dist: 'Merlin, je ferai quanque vous me loerés
And the king said Merlin I shall-do whatever you me will-advise
por bien.' Et Merlins respondi: 'Je ne vous loerai ja cose
for good And Merlin answered I not you will-advise ever thing
que contre la volenté a Nostre Segnor soit.' Lor apela li rois
that against the will of Our Lord may-be Then called the king
Keu le seneschal qu'il avoit longement tenu por son frere,
Kay the seneschal whom-he had long held for his brother
et mon segnor Gavain le fil le roi Lot d'Orchanie qui
and my lord Gawain the son (of-)the king Lot of-Orkney who
estoit ses niés, et furent tot .iiij. a un consel, et lors li
was his nephew and they-were all four in a counsel and then to-him

dist Merlins: 'Artu, vous estes roi, la Diu merci, et Uter
said Merlin Arthur you are king the (of-)God mercy and Uther
vostre pere si fu molt preudom, et fu faite la table reonde
your father so was very worthy-man and was made the table round
a son tans, qui fu faite en senefiance de celi u Notre
in his time which was made in signification of that-one where Our
Sire sist au juesdi, quant il dist que Judas le traïroit, et
Lord sat on-the Thursday when he said that Judas him would-betray and
si fu faite encontre la table Joseph, que estorée fu de par
so was made against the table (of-)Joseph which established was on behalf-of
le Graal, quant il departi les buens des mauvais. Si vuel
the Grail when he parted the good from-the wicked So I-wish
que vous saciés qu'il a eü .ij. rois en Bretagne qui ont
that you know that-there has been two kings in Britain who have
esté roi de France et empereor de Rome, et je vuel bien
been king of France and emperor of Rome and I wish well
que vous saciés que en Bretagne sera encor li tiers rois, qui
that you know that in Britain will-be yet the third king who
rois et emperere en sera, et le conquerra a force sor les
king and emperor thereof will-be and it will-conquer by force over the
Romains, et je vous di, si com jou ai le pooir de savoir
Romans and I to-you say so as I have the power of knowing
les coses qui sont a venir, que je les tieng de Nostre
the things which are to come that I them hold from Our
Segnor, que .cc. ans devant çou que vous fussiés nés
Lord that two-hundred years before this that you were born
si vous fu ele prophetisie et jetés le sors sor vous. Mais il
so to-you was it prophesied and cast the lot upon you But it
vous couvient ançois que vous soiés si preus et si vaillans
you behooves first that you be so worthy and so valiant
que li table reonde soit resaucie par vous. Et bien vous
that the table round be exalted by you And well you

fac seür que vous ja emperere n'en serés, desci adont
I-make sure that you ever emperor not-thereof shall-be until then
que li table reonde ert si essaucie que je vous dirai.'
that the table round shall-be so exalted as I to-you shall-tell
'Il avint jadis que li Graaus si fu bailliés a Joseph,
It happened formerly that the Grail so was given to Joseph
quant il fu mis en la prison que Nostre Sire meïsme li
when he was put in the prison which Our Lord himself to-him
aporta, et cil Joseph, quant il fu mis hors de le prison,
brought and that Joseph when he was put out of the prison
si s'en entra en un desert, et une grant partie de le
so himself-thence entered into a desert and a great part of the
gent de Judée avuec lui, et tant com il se tinrent
folk of Judea with him and so-long as they themselves held
en bien si orent la grasse de Nostre Segnor, et quant
in good so had the grace of Our Lord and when
il fu autrement si lor defali. Et il demanderent Joseph se
it was otherwise so them it-failed And they asked Joseph if
çou estoit par lor pecié u par le sien que li grasse lor
this was through their sin or through the his that the grace them
estoit faillie? Et quant Joseph l'oï si en fu dolans, et
was failed And when Joseph it-heard so thereof was grieved and
s'en ala devant son vaissel, et pria a Nostre Segnor
himself-thence went before his vessel and prayed to Our Lord
qu'il li fesist demostrance comment ce pooit estre. Et
that-he to-him should-make showing how this could be And
lors s'aparut la vois del Saint Esperit et li dist qu'il
then itself-appeared the voice of-the Holy Spirit and to-him said that-he
estorast une table, et il si fist, et quant il l'ot faite, si
should-establish a table and he so did and when he it-had made so
assist son vaissel desus, et les rova asseïr. Lors s'asisent
set his vessel upon-it and them bade sit Then themselves-sat

cil qui del pecié estoient cuite, et cil que le pecié
those who of-the sin were quit and those who the sin
avoient fait s'en alerent, qui n'i porent demorer.
had done themselves-thence went who not-there could remain
A cele table si ot un liu vuit, por çou qu'il sambla
At that table so there-was a place empty for this that-it seemed
Joseph que nus hom ne devoit seïr el liu u Nostre
(to-)Joseph that any man not ought sit in-the place where Our
Sires avoit sis, et uns faus deciples, qui avoit non Moys,
Lord had sat and a false disciple who had-as name Moses
qui molt sovent les essaia et tempta en plusors manieres,
who very often them tried and tempted in several manners
si s'en vint a Joseph et li pria por Diu que cel liu
so himself-thence came to Joseph and him prayed for God that that place
qui la estoit vuis li laissast aemplir, car il dist qu'il
which there was empty him he-should-let fill for he said that-he
sentoit tant de la grasse Nostre Segnor que bien estoit
felt so-much of the grace (of-)Our Lord that well he-was
dignes del seïr el liu vuit. Et Joseph li dist: 'Moys,
worthy of-the sitting in-the place empty And Joseph to-him said Moses
si vous n'estes teus com vous faites le semblant je vous lo
if you not-are such as you make the show I you advise
que vous ne vous en metés ja en essai'; et cil deciples
that you not yourself thereof put ever in trial and that disciple
li respondi que ausi li dounast Dius la victoire del
to-him answered that so to-him may-give God the victory of-the
liu aemplir com il estoit buens. Et lors li dist Joseph,
place filling as he was good And then to-him said Joseph
se il estoit si buens si s'i alast asseoir, et Moys
if he was so good so himself-there he-should-go sit and Moses
s'asist et fondi en abysme. Or si saciés que Nostre Sire
himself-sat and sank into abyss Now so know that Our Lord

fist la premiere table, et Joseph fist la seconde, et jou,
made the first table and Joseph made the second and I
au tans Uterpandragon vostre pere, fis faire le tierce,
in-the time (of-)Uther-Pendragon your father made make the third
que mult sera encore essaucie, et parlera par tout le
which much will-be yet exalted and one-will-speak through all the
monde de le buene cevalerie que a vostre tans sera. Or si
world of the good chivalry which in your time will-be Now so
sacés que li Graaus fu bailliés a Joseph, et après son fin
know that the Grail was given to Joseph and after his end
le laissa a son serorge, qui avoit non Bron; et cil Bron
it he-left to his brother-in-law who had-as name Bron and that Bron
si a .xii. fils, si en est li uns només Alains li Gros,
so has twelve sons so thereof is the one named Alain the Fat
et li commanda li Rois Peschiere la garde de ses freres.
and to-him commanded the King Fisher the keeping of his brothers
Cil Alains est venus en ceste terre de Judée, si comme
That Alain is come into this land from Judea so as
Nostre Sire l'a commandé, en ces illes vers occidant et
Our Lord it-has commanded into these isles toward west and
sont arrivé en cest païs, et li Rois Peschiere si converse
they-are arrived in this country and the King Fisher so dwells
en ces illes d'Irlande en .j. des plus biaus lius del monde,
in these isles of-Ireland in one of-the most fair places of-the world
et sacés qu'il est a la gregnor mesaise que onques fust
and know that-he is in the greatest hardship that ever was
hom, et est cheüs en grant maladie. Mais tant vous
man and is fallen into great sickness But so-much to-you
puis je bien dire que, por viellece que il ait, ne por
can I well say that for old-age that he may-have nor for
enfermeté, ne puet morir desci adont que uns chevaliers
infirmity not he-can die until then that a knight

que sera a la table reonde ait tant fait d'armes et de
who will-be at the table round may-have so-much done of-arms and of
cevalerie en tornois, et par querre aventures, qu'il sera li
chivalry in tourneys and by seeking adventures that-he will-be the
plus alosés del monde; et cil, quant il sera si essaucie
most renowned of-the world and that-one when he will-be so exalted
qu'il pora venir a la cort le rice Roi Pescheor, et
that-he will-be-able come to the court (of-)the rich King Fisher and
qu'il aura demandé de quoi li Graaus a servi et de quoi
that-he will-have asked of what the Grail has served and of what
il sert, et tant tost sera garis. Et lors li acontera
it serves and so soon he-will-be healed And then to-him he-will-tell
les secrées paroles de Nostre Segneur, si trespassera de vie
the secret words of Our Lord so he-will-pass from life
a mort, et cil chevaliers ara le sang Jesus Christ en
to death and that knight will-have the blood (of-)Jesus Christ in
garde et lors charront li encantement par le terre de
keeping and then will-fall the enchantments through the land of
Bretagne, et adont si sera la prophesie toute paracomplie.
Britain and then so will-be the prophecy all fulfilled

'Or si saces, se tu le fais ensi com je t'ai ensagnié,
Now so know if thou it doest thus as I thee-have taught
que grans buens t'en pora venir. Et il m'en
that great good to-thee-thereof will-be-able come And it me-thence
covenra aler, que je ne poroie plus estre au siecle, car
will-behoove to-go for I not could more be in-the world for
saciés que je n'en ai pas le congié de mon Sauveor.' Et
know that I not-thereof have at-all the leave of my Savior And
li rois dist que se il pooit ne voloit avuec lui demourer,
the king said that if he could nor wished with him to-remain
qu'il l'ameroit molt durement, et Merlin lui dist que
that-he him-would-love very hard and Merlin to-him said that

ce ne poroit avenir qu'il demorast. Atant departi Merlins
this not could happen that-he should-remain At-that departed Merlin
del roi, si s'en ala en Nortumbellande a Blayse qui
from-the king so himself-thence went into Northumberland to Blaise who
ot esté confessere se mere et qui avoit mises toutes
had been confessor (of-)his mother and who had put all
ses oeuvres en escrit, çou que Merlins l'en avoit dit.
his works in writing this that Merlin to-him-thereof had said
Et Artus remest avuec ses barons et pensa mult a çou
And Arthur remained with his barons and thought much on this
que Merlins li avoit conté, et saciés bien que onques
that Merlin to-him had told and know well that ever
rois ausi grant cort ne ausi grant feste ne fist comme fist
king so great court nor so great feast not made as made
Artus, ne onques ne fu rois qui tant se fesist amer a
Arthur nor ever not was king who so-much himself made love by
ses barons com il fist, et il meïsmes estoit li plus biaus
his barons as he did and he himself was the most fair
hom et li mieldres chevaliers qu'on seüst, et por çou qu'il
man and the best knight that-one knew and for this that-he
estoit si vaillans rois, et por les biaus dons qu'il dounoist,
was so valiant king and for the fair gifts that-he gave
si estoit il si renommés qu'on ne parloit par tot le monde
so was he so renowned that-one not spoke through all the world
se de lui non, si que toute li chevalerie repairoit a se
except of him not so that all the chivalry resorted to his
cort por lui veïr et por son acointement, ne on ne prisoit
court for him to-see and for his acquaintance nor one not prized
chevalerie que nus hom faisoit se il n'eüst ançois esté .j.
chivalry that any man did if he not-had first been one
an de la maisnie Artu et il n'eüst u mance u pegnon
year of the household (of-)Arthur and he not-had either sleeve or pennon

de ses armes, si que par tout le mont en parla on, et
of his arms so that through all the world thereof spoke one and
en vinrent les noveles la u Alains li Gros conversoit,
thereof came the news there where Alain the Fat dwelt
et pensa en son cuer qu'il i envoieroit Perceval son fil
and he-thought in his heart that-he there would-send Perceval his son
quant il seroit tens qu'il poroit ses armes baillier; et li
when it would-be time that-he could his arms bear and to-him
dist maintes fois: 'Biaus fis, quant vous serés grans je vos
said many times Fair son when you shall-be grown I you
menrai mult ricement a le cort le roi Artu.' Ceste parole
shall-lead very richly to the court (of-)the king Arthur This word
li dist maintes fois tant qu'a Nostre Segnor plot
to-him he-said many times until that-to Our Lord it-pleased
qu'Alains li Gros trespassa de cest siecle, et quant il fu
that-Alain the Fat passed from this world and when he was
mors si se pensa Percevaus qu'il iroit a le cort Artu.
dead so himself bethought Perceval that-he would-go to the court (of-)Arthur

Perceval rides to Arthur's court without his mother's knowledge, and she dies of grief. Arthur knights him, and at Pentecost the Round Table is restored with twelve peers, the thirteenth seat left empty. Perceval cannot take part in the feast's jousts, being wounded in the hand. Elaine, Gawain's sister, loves him on sight and sends him red arms, asking him to joust for her the next day, and he gladly agrees.

.I. jor si prist unes armes, si s'arma mult ricement et
One day so he-took some arms so himself-armed very richly and
monta en un chaceor et s'en ala si coiement que
mounted on a courser and himself-thence went so quietly that
onques se mere ne le sot. Quant se mere oï la novele
ever his mother not it knew When his mother heard the news
que Percevaus en estoit alés si en demena mult grant
that Perceval thence was gone so thereof made very great
duel, et pensa en son cuer que li sauvecine de le forest
grief and thought in her heart that the wild-beasts of the forest
le mangeroient, et tant en ot grant duel qu'ele en
him would-eat and so-much thereof had great grief that-she thereof
morut de le pensée. Et Percevaus cevauça tant qu'il vint a
died of the thought And Perceval rode so-long that-he came to
le cort le rice roi Artu, et vint devant lui et le salua
the court (of-)the rich king Arthur and came before him and him greeted
molt hautement voiant les barons, et dist que se lui
very loftily in-the-sight-of the barons and said that if him
plaisoit qu'il demourroit a lui molt volentiers, et seroit
it-pleased that-he would-remain with him very gladly and would-be
de se maisnie. Et li rois le retint, et le fist chevalier,
of his household And the king him retained and him made knight
et illuec aprist molt de sens et de cortesie, car saciés
and there he-learned much of sense and of courtesy for know

que quant il issi de ciés sa mere qu'il ne savoit
that when he came-out from at-the-house-of his mother that-he not knew
riens; et si bien se prova o les autres barons qu'il fu
anything and so well himself proved with the other barons that-he was
puis de le table reonde, et fu molt amés a le cort des
since of the table round and was much loved at the court by-the
barons. Après çou i vint Saigremore, et Yvains le fius
barons After this there came Sagremor and Yvain the son
au roi Urien, et uns autres Yvains as blances mains, et
of-the king Urien and an other Yvain of-the white hands and
Dodiniaus li fius a le dame de Malehaut, et Mordrés le
Dodinel the son of the lady of Malehaut and Mordred the
niés Artu, qui puis fist le grant mesprison si com vous
nephew (of-)Arthur who since did the great misdeed so as you
porrés oïr, et Guirrés ses frere, et Garriés, et Gawains,
will-be-able hear and Guerrehet his brother and Gaberiet and Gawain
et cil .iiij. estoient fil li roi Lot d'Orchanie, et li rois
and those four were sons (of-)the king Lot of-Orkney and the king
Artus estoit lor oncles. Après i vint Lanselos del Lac,
Arthur was their uncle After there came Lancelot of-the Lake
qui molt estoit de haut afaire, et tant i vinrent d'autres
who very was of high condition and so-many there came of-other
chevaliers que je nes puis retraire, mais tant vous puis
knights that I not-them can relate but so-much to-you can
je bien dire qu'il i ot tant de buens chevaliers a le
I well say that-it there was so-many of good knights at the
cort le rice roi Artu qu'on ne parloit par tout le mont
court (of-)the rich king Arthur that-one not spoke through all the world
se de le buene cevalerie non de le table reonde que li
except of the good chivalry not of the table round which the
rices rois Artus tenoit; tant que Artus se pensa de çou
rich king Arthur held until that Arthur himself bethought of this

que Merlins li avoit dit; si s'en vint a ses barons
that Merlin to-him had said so himself-thence came to his barons
et ses cevaliers, si lor dist: 'Segnor, saciés qu'il vous
and his knights so to-them said Lords know that-it you
covenra tous revenir a le Pentecoste, car jou i volrai
will-behoove all to-come-back at the Pentecost for I there shall-wish
le gregnor feste tenir a icel jor qu'onques nus rois tenist en
the greatest feast to-hold on that day that-ever any king held in
nule terre. Et si vuel que cascuns de vous amaint se feme
any land And so I-wish that each-one of you bring his wife
avuec lui, car je volrai molt onerer le table reonde que
with him for I shall-wish much to-honor the table round which
Merlins estora au tans Uterpandragon mon pere, et si
Merlin established in-the time (of-)Uther-Pendragon my father and so
i volrai asseoir as .xij. lius les .xij. pers de ma cort.
there I-shall-wish to-seat in-the twelve places the twelve peers of my court
Si saciés que tot cil qui a ma feste seront, et avuec moi
So know that all those who at my feast will-be and with me
volront demourer, seront a tous jors de le table reonde et
will-wish to-remain will-be for all days of the table round and
aront si grant francise par tout la u il venront que
will-have so great freedom through all there where they shall-come that
cascuns ara pegnon u counissance de le table reonde.'
each-one will-have pennon or token of the table round

A ceste parole ot molt grant bruit, et molt furent lié
At this word there-was very great noise and very were glad
tout li baron de le cort qui molt desiroient qu'ils fussent
all the barons of the court who much desired that-they were
renomé de le table reonde. Atant s'en partirent et ala
renowned of the table round At-that themselves-thence parted and went

cascuns en son païs, et Artus demoura a Logres qui molt fu
each-one into his country and Arthur remained at Logres who very was
en grant pensée, comment il peüst le table reonde essaucier.
in great thought how he might the table round exalt
A le Pentecouste avint que tout li cevalier de par
At the Pentecost it-happened that all the knights from by
toutes les terres s'assamblérent por venir a le feste que li
all the lands themselves-assembled for to-come to the feast which the
rois Artus tenoit, et bien saciés que li rois Artus estoit de
king Arthur held and well know that the king Arthur was of
si grant pris que cil meïsme qui de lui ne tenoient riens
so great worth that those even who from him not held anything
cuidassent estre honis, et n'osassent jamais venir a le buene
would-think to-be shamed and not-would-dare ever-more come to the good
cort, ne en liu u preudom les veïst, se il ne venissent a
court nor in place where worthy-man them might-see if they not came to
le cort le rice roi Artu as Pentecostes. Lors en i vint
the court (of-)the rich king Arthur at-the Pentecosts Then thereof there came
tant de par toutes terres que nus hom ne les puist retraire,
so-many from by all lands that any man not them could relate
tant que le jor de le Pentecoste avint que Artus s'en
until that the day of the Pentecost it-happened that Arthur himself-thence
vint a le table reonde, et i fist la messe canter voiant
came to the table round and there made the mass sing in-the-sight-of
tout le peule qui la estoit. Et quant la messe fu cantée si
all the people who there was And when the mass was sung so
prist li rois les .xij. pers, et les fist asseoir es .xij. lius,
took the king the twelve peers and them made sit in-the twelve places
et li tresimes remest vius, por le senefiance del liu u
and the thirteenth remained empty for the signification of-the place where

Judas sist quant il se leva, et a le table Uterpandragon le
Judas sat when he himself rose and at the table (of-)Uther-Pendragon it
laissa Merlins vuit, et por çou ne l'osa faire li rois aemplir.
left Merlin empty and for this not it-dared make the king fill
Molt fu grans li feste que li rois tint le jor de le
Very was great the feast which the king held the day of the
Pentecoste. Car cil de le table reonde li vestirent dras
Pentecost For those of the table round him clothed-in garments
roiaus et si li misent le corone el cief, et fu li rois
royal and so to-him put the crown on-the head and was the king
si honerés com il devoit estre. Car en plus de .vij. c.
so honored as he ought be For in more than seven hundred
encensiers de fin or l'encensoit on par tot la u il aloit,
censers of fine gold him-censed one through all there where he went
et li jetoient le glaiol et le mente devant lui, et li
and to-him they-threw the gladiolus and the mint before him and to-him
faisoient tant d'onnor com il plus porent. Lors commanda
did so-much of-honor as they most could Then commanded
li rois que tout cil qui estoient a sa feste venu fussent tout
the king that all those who were to his feast come were all
revesti d'unes reubes, et d'unes counissances; et bien saciés
clothed in-some robes and in-some tokens and well know
que si tost com il ot commandé si fu il fait, et tant i
that so soon as he had commanded so was it done and so-many there
ot de cevaliers et de demisiaus que li rois en dona a .v.
were of knights and of young-men that the king thereof gave to five
mil et .cccc. reubes et recounissances de le table reonde.
thousand and four-hundred robes and tokens of the table round
Atant fist li rois l'aigue corner a .c. buisines, et
At-that made the king the-water sound with a-hundred trumpets and
s'asisent tout li chevaliers a mangier, et saciés que Artus
themselves-sat all the knights to eat and know that Arthur

servi, le corone el cief, en une reube d'or, et fu molt
served the crown on-the head in a robe of-gold and was much
regardé de çaus qui ainc mais ne l'avoient veü, et fu a
looked-at by those who ever before not him-had seen and was at
mervelles le jor prisiés de tous çaus qui le virent. Après
marvels the day prized by all those who him saw After
mangier fist li rois les tables oster, et s'en issirent
eating made the king the tables remove and themselves-thence went-out
as cans por behorder. Qui dont veïst dames et demiseles
to-the fields for to-joust Who then had-seen ladies and damsels
monter en ces tors et apoier a ces creniaus de ces murs,
climb into these towers and lean on these battlements of these walls
por veïr le behort des chevaliers, et por veïr le feste
for to-see the jousting of-the knights and for to-see the feast
qu'on faisoit! Car saciés bien que le jor i josterent cil
that-one made For know well that the day there jousted those
de le table reonde a çaus qui defors estoient venus, et
of the table round with those who from-outside were come and
molt furent regardé de dames et de demiseles, et por çou
much were looked-at by ladies and by damsels and for this
se penoient molt plus, car il n'i avoit gaires chevalier
themselves they-strove much more for it not-there was much knight
qui n'i eüst u se seror, u se feme, u s'amie; et saciés
who not-there had either his sister or his wife or his-friend and know
bien que le jor emporterent le pris d'armes cil de le table
well that the day carried-off the prize of-arms those of the table
reonde, car Mesire Gavains, li fius li roi Lot i josta
round for My-lord Gawain the son (of-)the king Lot there jousted
molt ruistement, et Kex li senescaus qui estoit fius Entor,
very fiercely and Kay the seneschal who was son (of-)Antor
et Urgains uns hardis chevalier, et Saigremors, et Lanselos
and Urgain a bold knight and Sagremor and Lancelot

del Lac, et Eres qui molt estoit cevalerous. Tant i
of-the Lake and Erec who very was chivalrous So-much there
josterent bien qu'il forjosterent çaus defors, et au vespre
jousted well that-they outjousted those outside and at-the evening
en orent le pris, et li rois Artus, qui molt fu vaillans,
thereof had the prize and the king Arthur who very was valiant
sist le jor sor .j. palefroy, et tenoit .j. baston en se main,
sat the day upon a palfrey and held a staff in his hand
et aloit entre les rens por tenir pais que nus ne s'i
and went between the ranks for to-hold peace that anyone not himself-there
mellast. Et avuec lui fu Percevaus, li fils Alains li Gros,
should-embroil And with him was Perceval the son (of-)Alain the Fat
qui molt fu dolans de çou qu'il n'i avoit josté, mais il
who very was grieved of this that-he not-there had jousted but he
estoit navré en se main si n'i josta mie, et ala toute
was wounded in his hand so not-there he-jousted at-all and went all
jor avuec Artu, et Guirrés et Gariés qui frere estoient
day with Arthur and Guerrehet and Gaheriet who brothers were
a mon segnor Gavain, et fil le roi Lot. Et cil .iij.
to my lord Gawain and sons (of-)the king Lot And those three
furent toute jor avuec le roi, et alerent veoir les dames
were all day with the king and went see the ladies
et les demiseles, et regardirent les jostes qu'on fist le
and the damsels and looked-at the jousts that-one made the
jor. Et la fille au roi Lot d'Orchanie, la suer mon
day And the daughter of-the king Lot of-Orkney the sister (of-)my
segnor Gavain, qui avoit non Elaine, et estoit la plus bele
lord Gawain who had-as name Elaine and was the most fair
demisele qui fust a son tans, et vit Perceval le Galois, et
damsel who was in her time and saw Perceval the Welshman and
l'en ama molt durement en son cuer, et qu'en pot
him-thereof loved very hard in her heart and what-thereof could

ele? car il estoit li plus biaus chevalier de toute la maisnie
she for he was the most fair knight of all the household
Artu le roy. Au vespre si se departi li tornois, et
(of-)Arthur the king At-the evening so itself parted the tourney and
commencierent a caroler li chevaliers et les demiseles, et
began to dance the knights and the damsels and
a faire molt grant feste. Mais Elainne li suer monsegnor
to make very great feast But Elaine the sister (of-)my-lord
Gavains pensa molt a Perceval le Galois, qu'ele amoit molt
Gawain thought much on Perceval the Welshman whom-she loved very
durement, et quant ce vint a la nuit li cevalier alerent
hard and when it came to the night the knights went
a lors osteus et a lor trés, mais Elainne ne s'aseüra
to their lodgings and to their tents but Elaine not herself-assured
mie, ains apela .j. vallet, si l'envoia a Perceval le Galois,
at-all rather called a youth so him-sent to Perceval the Welshman
et li manda que Elainne, le suer monsegnor Gavain, le
and to-him sent-word that Elaine the sister (of-)my-lord Gawain him
saluoit molt hautement, et qu'ele desiroit molt qu'ele le
greeted very loftily and that-she desired much that-she him
veïst joster a la table reonde, et li manda que par
might-see joust at the table round and to-him sent-word that by
la foi qu'il li devoit qu'il jostast au matin devant
the faith that-he to-her owed that-he should-joust at-the morning before
li, et fust armés d'unes armes vermelles qu'ele li
her and should-be armed in-some arms red which-she to-him
envoieroit. Et quant Percevaus l'oï si s'en mervella
would-send And when Perceval it-heard so himself-thereof marveled
molt, et en ot molt grant joie en son cuer de çou que
much and thereof had very great joy in his heart of this that
si vaillans demisele que le fille le roi Lot li avoit
so worthy damsel as the daughter (of-)the king Lot to-him had

mandé que por s'amor s'armast, et alast joster a
sent-word that for her-love he-should-arm-himself and should-go joust at
le table reonde. Lors dist au mesage que il n'est riens
the table round Then he-said to-the messenger that it not-is anything
que li demisele li mandast qu'il ne fesist por s'amor,
that the damsel to-him might-send that-he not would-do for her-love
'et jou i josterai molt volentiers.'
and I there shall-joust very gladly

Quant li mesages l'eut oï, si en fu molt liés, et revint
When the messenger it-had heard so thereof was very glad and came-back
a se demisele, et li conta tout çou que Percevaus li
to his damsel and to-her told all this that Perceval to-him
avoit respondu, et li demisele, qui molt en fu lie, prist
had answered and the damsel who very thereof was glad took
les armes, si les envoia a Perceval qui molt durement en
the arms so them sent to Perceval who very greatly thereof
fu liés; et saciés qu'il dormi molt petit le nuit. Au matin
was glad and know that-he slept very little the night At-the morning
se leva li rois, et ala le messe oïr, et li baron avuec
himself rose the king and went the mass hear and the barons with
lui, et quant li messe fu dite si s'en alerent li .xij.
him and when the mass was said so themselves-thence went the twelve
per a le table reonde mangier, et i furent bien servi, et
peers to the table round eat and there were well served and
Artus les ouneroit molt a son pooir, et fist l'aigue corner,
Arthur them honored much to his power and made the-water sound
et sisent li cevalier au mangier par le sale, et furent
and sat the knights at-the eating through the hall and were
bien servi, mais de lor mès ne de çou qu'ils mangierent,
well served but of their dishes nor of this that-they ate
ne parole pas li contes, mais tant vous puis je bien dire
not speaks at-all the tale but so-much to-you can I well say

qu'il orent quanqu'il volrent deviser. Après mangier fist li
that-they had whatever-they wished to-devise After eating made the
rois les tables oster, et issirent as cans les dames et les
king the tables remove and went-out to-the fields the ladies and the
demiseles por veïr le behordie, et le feste de le table reonde.
damsels for to-see the jousting and the feast of the table round

III · THE SIEGE PERILOUS

In the red arms Perceval unhorses Sagremor, Kay, Yvain, and Lancelot, and Arthur takes him into the Round Table. Perceval insists on sitting in the empty seat; Arthur reluctantly allows it, and the stone splits under him with a great cry. A voice rebukes Arthur: only the goodness of Alain and Bron saved Perceval from Moses's fate, and the Fisher King will be healed and the seat mended only when the best knight of the world reaches his house and asks what the Grail serves. Perceval and the knights swear to seek it.

Elainne, li suer monsegnor Gavain, i fu venue, qui molt
Elaine the sister (of-)my-lord Gawain there was come who much
desiroit a mervelles qu'ele veïst Perceval armé des armes
desired at marvels that-she might-see Perceval armed with-the arms
qu'ele li envoia. Lors issirent li cevalier de Carduel
which-she to-him sent Then went-out the knights from Carduel
qui joster voloient et avoir le pris, et vinrent a le table
who to-joust wished and to-have the prize and came to the table
reonde, et commencierent a behorder, et lors recommença
round and began to joust and then began-again
la feste que onques mais n'avoit esté si grans. Et bien
the feast which ever before not-had been so great And well
saciés que Lanselos del Lac forjostoit tous çaus de fors, et
know that Lancelot of-the Lake outjousted all those from outside and

Gavains et mesire Yvains li fius au roi Urien. Lors i
Gawain and my-lord Yvain the son of-the king Urien Then there
vint Perceval li Galois, si s'estoit bien armés des armes
came Perceval the Welshman so himself-was well armed with-the arms
que li demisele li avoit envoiiées, et ala ferir de plain
which the damsel to-him had sent and went strike at full
eslais en l'escu Saigremor, et quant Saigremors le vit si
gallop on the-shield (of-)Sagremor and when Sagremor him saw so
s'en issi contre lui, et laissierent les cevaus aler de
himself-thence went-out against him and let the horses go of
tant com il porent corre, et se donnerent si grans
as-much as they could run and each-other gave so great
cols es escus que les lances peçoierent, et Percevaus li
blows on-the shields that the lances shattered and Perceval the
Galois, qui molt sot de teus afaires, le hurta si durement
Welshman who much knew of such affairs him struck so hard
de cors et de ceval que Saigremors fu si estounés qu'il ne
with body and with horse that Sagremor was so stunned that-he not
sot qu'il devint, et vola en mi le pré si durement que
knew what-he became and flew into mid the meadow so hard that
tout cil qui le virent cuiderent qu'il fu mors, et Percevaus
all those who him saw thought that-he was dead and Perceval
prist le ceval, si le presenta a Elainne qui molt grant joie
took the horse so it presented to Elaine who much great joy
en demena, et bien saciés que Percevaus fist le jor tant
thereof made and well know that Perceval did the day so-much
d'armes qu'il forjosta tous çaus de le table reonde, et
of-arms that-he outjousted all those of the table round and
abati Keu le senescal, et Yvain li fil Urien, et Lanselot
struck-down Kay the seneschal and Yvain the son (of-)Urien and Lancelot
del Lac, et disent que bien devoit le liu de le table
of-the Lake and they-said that well he-ought the place of the table

reonde aemplir. Et li rois, qui molt fu vaillans et sage,
round fill And the king who very was valiant and wise
s'en vint a Perceval, et si li dist: 'Sire cevaliers des
himself-thence came to Perceval and so to-him said Sir knight from
or vuel jou que vous soiés de ma maisnie, et de le table
now wish I that you be of my household and of the table
reonde, et que vous demorés a moi, et saciés que je vous
round and that you remain with me and know that I you
volrai molt onerer d'or en avant.' Et Percevaus li dist:
shall-wish much to-honor from-now in forward And Perceval to-him said
'Sire, la vostre merci.' Lors osta Percevaus son hiaume et
Lord the your mercy Then removed Perceval his helm and
li rois l'a coneü, si li vint a grant mervelle, et li
the king him-has recognized so to-him it-came to great marvel and of-him
demanda por quoi çou estoit qu'il ne s'estoit tres ier
asked for what this was that-he not himself-was since yesterday
armés, et por quoi il s'estoit desconeüs, et Percevaus li
armed and for what he himself-was disguised and Perceval to-him
dist: 'Sire, ce vous aiderai je bien a celer, mais tant vous
said Lord this you shall-help I well to conceal but so-much to-you
puis je bien dire que por amors ai fait çou que jou
can I well say that for love I-have done this that I
en ai fait, et saciés que se jo m'en peüsse destorner
thereof have done and know that if I myself-thence could turn-aside
qu'encore i fusse jou a venir.' Et quant li rois l'a
that-still there were I to come And when the king it-has
oï et entendu, si commença a rire, et li pardouna molt
heard and understood so he-began to laugh and him pardoned very
buenement, et li dist que çou que l'on faisoit par amor
gladly and to-him said that this that one did for love
devoit on legierement pardouner, et ausi fist mesire Gavains
ought one lightly pardon and so did my-lord Gawain

et Yvains et Lanselos, et tout cil de le table reonde. Et
and Yvain and Lancelot and all those of the table round And
lors dist Percevaus au roi qu'il voloit aler veïr le table
then said Perceval to-the king that-he wished to-go see the table
reonde et çaus qui i seoient, et li rois li dist: 'Biaus
round and those who there sat and the king to-him said Fair
amis, demain le poés veoir,' et Percevaus li dist: 'Sire,
friend tomorrow it you-can see and Perceval to-him said Lord
je les i verroie molt volentiers seoir.' A tant le laissa,
I them there would-see very gladly sit At that it he-left
et firent grant feste le nuit, et lendemain s'asamblerent
and they-made great feast the night and next-day themselves-assembled
li baron et oïrent le messe, et quant li messe fu dite si
the barons and heard the mass and when the mass was said so
s'en vinrent tout el liu la u le table reonde
themselves-thence came all into-the place there where the table round
seoit, et li rois les fist aseoir et quant il furent assis
stood and the king them made sit and when they were seated
si remest li lius vius, et Percevaus demanda le roi que
so remained the place empty and Perceval asked the king what
cil lius vius senefia, et li rois li dist: 'Biaus amis, il
that place empty signified and the king to-him said Fair friend it
senefie grant cose, car il i doit seoir li mieldres cevaliers
signifies great thing for it there must sit the best knight
del monde!' Et Percevaus pensa en son cuer qu'il s'i
of-the world And Perceval thought in his heart that-he himself-there
asseroit, et li dist le roi: 'Sire, donés moi le don que
would-sit and to-him said the king Lord give me the gift that
je m'i assiece.' Et li rois respondi qu'il ne s'i
I myself-there may-sit And the king answered that-he not himself-there
asseroit mie, car il l'en poroit bien meschaïr, car el liu
would-sit at-all for it him-thereof could well ill-befall for in-the place

vuit s'assist ja uns faus deciples, que maintenant qu'il fu
empty himself-sat once a false disciple who as-soon that-he was
assis fu fondus en terre, 'et se je vous en donoie le don
seated was sunk into earth and if I to-you thereof gave the gift
si ne vous i devés vous mie asseïr.' Et quant Percevaus
so not yourself there ought you at-all sit And when Perceval
l'oï si s'en coreça, et dist: 'Sire rois, si m'aït
it-heard so himself-thereof angered and said Lord king so me-may-help
Dex, se vous ne m'en donés le congié je vous di bien que
God if you not me-thereof give the leave I to-you say well that
je ne serai plus de vostre maisnie!' Quant Gavains a çou
I not shall-be more of your household When Gawain has this
oï si en fu molt dolans, car il amoit molt Perceval, et
heard so thereof was very grieved for he loved much Perceval and
li dist: 'Sire, donnés l'ent le congié.' Et lors en pria
to-him said Lord give him-thereof the leave And then thereof prayed
Lanselos le roi, et tout li .xij. per, et tant en proierent
Lancelot the king and all the twelve peers and so-much thereof prayed
le roi que a grans painnes qu'il li otroia, et li
the king that with great pains that-he to-him granted and to-him
dist: 'Je vos en doing le don.' Quant Percevaus l'a oï
said I to-you thereof give the gift When Perceval it-has heard
si en fu molt liés, et passa avant, et se segna del
so thereof was very glad and passed forward and himself crossed with-the
Saint Esperit, et s'asist el liu, et tant tost com il fu
Holy Spirit and himself-sat in-the place and so soon as he was
assis li piére fendi desous lui et braist si angoisseusement
seated the stone split beneath him and roared so anguishedly
qu'il sambla a tous çaus qui la estoient que li siecles
that-it seemed to all those who there were that the world
fondist en abisme, et del brait que li terre jeta si
sank into abyss and from-the roar that the earth cast so

issi une si grans tenebrors qu'il ne porent entreveïr en
came-out a so great darkness that-they not could see-each-other in
plus d'une liuee. Après cou si vint une vois qui lors dist:
more of-a league After this so came a voice which then said
'Rois Artus, tu as faite la plus grande mesprison que
King Arthur thou hast done the most great misdeed that
onques rois qui en Bretagne fust fesist. Car tu as trespassé
ever king who in Britain was did For thou hast transgressed
le commandement que Merlins t'avoit ensagnié, et bien
the commandment that Merlin thee-had taught and well
saces que cil Percevaus a fait le plus grant hardement
know that that Perceval has done the most great boldness
que onques mais nus hom fesist, et dont il charra en la
that ever before any man did and whereof he will-fall into the
forçor painne del monde, et il, et tout cil de le table
greatest pain of-the world both he and all those of the table
reonde, et bien saces que, se ne fust por la bonté Alains
round and well know that if not were for the goodness (of-)Alain
le Gros son pere, et por la bonté Bron son taion, qui
the Fat his father and for the goodness (of-)Bron his grandfather who
est clamés li Rois Peschiere, qu'il fust fondu en abisme,
is called the King Fisher that-he would-be sunk into abyss
et morust de la dolerouse mort dont Moys morut, quant il
and would-die of the grievous death whereof Moses died when he
s'asist fausement el liu que Joseph li avoit desfendu.
himself-sat falsely in-the place which Joseph to-him had forbidden
Et saces, rois Artus, que Nostre Sire vous fait savoir que
And know king Arthur that Our Lord you makes know that
icil vaissiaus que Nostre Sire donna a Joseph en le prison,
that vessel which Our Lord gave to Joseph in the prison
saces qu'il est en cest païs, et est apelés Graaus. Icil Rois
know that-it is in this country and is called Grail That King

Peschiere si est cheüs en grant maladie, et est cheüs en
Fisher so is fallen into great sickness and is fallen into
grant enfermeté, et bien saces que cil rois n'ara ja mais
great infirmity and well know that that king not-will-have ever more
garison ne ne sera la piere rasoldée del liu de le table
cure nor not will-be the stone rejoined of-the place of the table
reonde u Percevaus s'asist, dusque dont qu'uns cevaliers
round where Perceval himself-sat until then that-a knight
ait tant fait d'armes, et de bontés, et de proueces,
may-have so-much done of-arms and of goodnesses and of prowesses
de çaus meïsmes qui sont assis a cele table, et quant cil
of those same who are seated at that table and when that
chevaliers sera si essauciés sor tos homes, et ara le pris
knight will-be so exalted over all men and will-have the prize
de le chevalerie del siecle, quant il ara tant fait, si
of the chivalry of-the world when he will-have so-much done so
l'asenera Dex a la maison le rice Roi Pescheor. Et lors,
him-will-direct God to the house (of-)the rich King Fisher And then
quant il aura demandé quoi on en fait, et cui on en
when he will-have asked what one thereof does and whom one thereby
sert, de cel Graal, lors, quant il aura çou demandé, si sera
serves of that Grail then when he will-have this asked so will-be
li Rois Peschiere garis, et sera la piere rasoldée del liu
the King Fisher healed and will-be the stone rejoined of-the place
de le table reonde et charront li encantement que hui cest
of the table round and will-fall the enchantments which today this
jor sont en le terre de Bretagne.' Quant li rois l'a oï et
day are in the land of Britain When the king it-has heard and
cil qui a la table reonde seoient, si s'en mervellierent
those who at the table round sat so themselves-thereof marveled
molt, et disent bien tout que jamais n'aresteront desci
much and said well all that ever-more not-they-will-stop until

adont qu'il aront trovée le maison au rice Roi Pescheor,
then that-they will-have found the house of-the rich King Fisher
et si demanderont de quoi li Graaus sert. Et Percevaus li
and so will-ask of what the Grail serves And Perceval the
Galois jura bien que jamais ne gira une nuit la u
Welshman swore well that ever-more not he-will-lie one night there where
il gira autre dusqu'adont qu'il l'ara trovée, et autretel
he will-lie another until-then that-he it-will-have found and the-like
dist mesire Gavains, et Eres, et Saigremors, et tot cil
said my-lord Gawain and Erec and Sagremor and all those
qui a la table reonde seoient. Quant Artus l'entendi si en
who at the table round sat When Arthur it-heard so thereof
fu molt dolans, et toutes voies lor en douna le don.
was very grieved and all the-same to-them thereof gave the gift

IV · THE QUEST BEGINS

The knights ride out together, then part at a cross to seek the Grail alone. Perceval spends a night watching his horse in the forest, and the next day he finds a damsel weeping over a knight killed with a lance and a sword. She tells him how her lover rescued her from a giant, how a dwarf at the Proud Knight of the Heath's pavilion struck her, and how the Proud Knight killed her lover. Perceval vows to avenge him.

Atant departi Artus sa cort, et ralerent li plusor en lor
At-that dismissed Arthur his court and went-back the most into their
païs, et li plusor remesent a lor osteus, et avuec li roi.
countries and the most remained at their lodgings and with the king
Et Percevaus et cil de le table reonde s'atornerent com
And Perceval and those of the table round themselves-prepared as
por aler, et s'armerent a lor osteus, et, quant il furent
for to-go and themselves-armed at their lodgings and when they were

atiré, si vinrent tot monté devant le roi, voiant les
equipped so came all mounted before the king in-the-sight-of the
barons de le cort, et lors dist mesire Gavains, voiant
barons of the court and then said my-lord Gawain in-the-sight-of
les barons de le cort: 'Segneur, il nos en covenra aler, si
the barons of the court Lords it us thence will-behoove to-go so
com la vois de Nostre Segnor nos a ensagnié, mais nous
as the voice of Our Lord us has taught but we
ne savons u, ne de quel part, desci adont que Nostre Sire
not know where nor to what side until then that Our Lord
nous i fera adrecier.' Quant li rois et li baron l'oïrent,
us there will-make direct When the king and the barons it-heard
si commencierent a plorer, car il n'en cuident jamais .j.
so began to weep for they not-thereof think ever-more one
reveoir. Atant s'en departirent li baron del roi,
to-see-again At-that themselves-thence departed the barons from-the king
et cevaucierent toute jor ensamble qu'onques aventure ne
and rode all day together so-that-ever adventure not
troverent, et l'endemain desci a none, et tant cevaucierent
they-found and the-next-day until at nones and so-long they-rode
qu'il troverent une crois. Lors s'aresterent iluec, et aorerent
that-they found a cross Then themselves-stopped there and adored
le crois et proierent Diu merci. Et lors dist Percevaus a
the cross and prayed God mercy And then said Perceval to
ses compagnons: 'Segneur, se nous cevauçons ensamble, nous
his companions Lords if we ride together we
n'i ferons mie grant conquest, mais je vos proi que nous
not-there shall-make at-all great conquest but I you pray that we
nous departons, et voist cascuns sa voie par lui.' Et Gavains
ourselves part and may-go each-one his way by himself And Gawain
respondi: 'Se nous le faisiemes ensi, nostre besogne sera
answered If we it did thus our business will-be

mauvaisement furnie, mais faisons le ensi com Perceval nous
badly accomplished but let-us-do it thus as Perceval us
a consellié.' Et il respondent tout: 'Nous l'otroions ensi.'
has counseled And they answer all We it-grant thus

Atant se departirent, et ala cascuns la voie que
At-that themselves departed and went each-one the way that
miels li sist et entrerent en la queste del Graal, mais
best him suited and entered into the quest of-the Grail but
des aventures qu'il troverent, ne des painnes qu'il orent,
of-the adventures that-they found nor of-the pains that-they had
ne vous puis je pas faire conte fors tant qu'au livre
not to-you can I at-all make tale except so-much as-to-the book
en monte, ne de Gavains ne de ses compagnons.
thereof amounts nor of Gawain nor of his companions

Quar saciés que quant Percevaus se departi de ses
For know that when Perceval himself departed from his
compagnons, qu'il cevauça tout le jor, qu'onques aventure ne
companions that-he rode all the day so-that-ever adventure not
trova, ne ne pot trover ostel u il se peüst herbergier;
he-found nor not could find lodging where he himself could lodge
si le covint le nuit gesir en la forest, si osta le frain de
so him it-behooved the night to-lie in the forest so removed the bridle from
son ceval, si laissa paistre l'erbe, ne onques Percevaus le nuit
his horse so let graze the-grass nor ever Perceval the night
ne dormi, ains gaita toute nuit son ceval por la sauveçine de
not slept rather watched all night his horse for the wild-beasts of
le forest. Et lendemain quant l'aube fu crevée si rensela son
the forest And next-day when the-dawn was broken so resaddled his
ceval et mist le frain, et monta sans atargier, et cevauça
horse and put the bridle and mounted without delaying and rode
parmi le forest toute jor desci a prime. Ensi com il cevauçoit
through the forest all day until at prime Thus as he rode

si regarda joste lui a senestre, et vit un cevalier qui estoit
so he-looked beside him to left and saw a knight who was
ferus d'une lance parmi le cors et si que la lance i estoit
struck with-a lance through the body and so that the lance there was
encore, et si avoit une espée embroiie parmi son hiaume
still and so had a sword thrust through his helm
desci es dens, et dejoste lui si avoit .j. ceval atacié et .j.
until in-the teeth and beside him so there-was a horse tied and a
escu, et joste le cors avoit le plus bele demisele qu'onques
shield and beside the body there-was the most fair damsel that-ever
fesist nature, et menoit la forçor doleur qu'onques mais
made nature and made the greatest grief that-ever before
feme demenast, et plagnoit et regretoit le cevalier qu'illuec
woman made and lamented and mourned the knight who-there
estoit, et feroit l'un puing en l'autre et esraçoit les caviaus,
was and struck the-one fist on the-other and tore-out the hair
et esgratinoit son viaire si angoisseusement qu'il n'est nus
and scratched her face so anguishedly that-it not-is any
hom qui le veïst qui n'en eüst grant pitié. Et quant
man who her might-see who not-thereof should-have great pity And when
Percevaus le vit si en ot molt grant pitié, si point le ceval
Perceval her saw so thereof had very great pity so spurred the horse
des esporons et point cele part, et quant li demisele le
with-the spurs and spurred that way and when the damsel him
vit sie laissa auques son duel ester et se dreça encontre
saw so-she left somewhat her grief be and herself rose toward
lui, et li dist: 'Sire, bien puissiés vous venir.' Et Percevaus
him and to-him said Lord well may you come And Perceval
li dist: 'Demisele, Dex vous otroit forçor joie que vous
to-her said Damsel God you grant greater joy than you
n'aiés.' Et ele li a respondu: 'Sire, je [ne] poroie jamais
have And she to-him has answered Lord I not could ever-more

avoir joie, qu'on m'a devant moi celui ocis que je tant
have joy for-one me-has before me him killed whom I so-much
amoie, et que tant m'avoit honorée, qu'il n'estoit riens qu'il
loved and who so-much me-had honored that-it not-was anything that-he
tant amast com il faisoit le cors de moi.' Et quant Percevaus
so-much loved as he did the body of me And when Perceval
l'oï si li demanda: 'Demisele, tres quant estiés vous en
it-heard so of-her asked Damsel since when were you in
sa compagnie?' Et ele respont: 'Biaus Sire, je le vous dirai.
his company And she answers Fair Lord I it to-you shall-tell
Il avint cose que je estoie a le maison mon pere en
It happened thing that I was at the house (of-)my father in
ceste forest, et uns gaians manoit a se maison a demie
this forest and a giant dwelt at his house at half
jornée pres. Si m'avoit demandée a mon pere grant tans
day near So me-had asked of my father great time
avoit, mais mes pere l'en avoit escondit et si en a
it-was but my father him-thereof had refused and so thereof has
mon pere lonc tans guerroié, et tant que li gaians sot
my father long time warred and until that the giant knew
que mes pere estoit alés a le maison le rice roi Artu,
that my father was gone to the house (of-)the rich king Arthur
qu'il devoit tenir a la Pentecoste le table reonde a Carduel.
for-he was-to hold at the Pentecost the table round at Carduel
Quant il sot que mes pere estoit alés a le cort le roi
When he knew that my father was gone to the court (of-)the king
Artu si s'en vint a no manoir, et esraça la porte et
Arthur so himself-thence came to our manor and tore-out the gate and
vint en la sale qu'il ne trova qui le contredist. Et tant
came into the hall for-he not found who him might-gainsay And until
qu'il vint en le cambre me mere, et me ravi et emporta
that-he came into the chamber (of-)my mother and me seized and carried-off

avuec lui, et me fist monter sor son ceval que vous poés
with him and me made mount upon his horse which you can
illuec veoir, et m'amena ici, et me fist descendre, et volt
there see and me-brought here and me made dismount and wished
avueques moi gesir; et je qui molt le redoutai plorai et
with me to-lie and I who much him feared wept and
criai hautement, et cil chevaliers que vous veés ci entendi
cried loudly and that knight whom you see here heard
la vois, et vint ferant des esporons desci que sor nous,
the voice and came striking with-the spurs until that upon us
si que li gaians ne s'en dona onques garde, desci qu'il
so that the giant not himself-thereof gave ever heed until that-he
le vit dejoste lui; si en ot molt grant duel, et li
him saw beside him so thereof had very great grief and at-him
corut sus de plain eslais, et li cevaliers, qui molt fu preus
ran upon at full gallop and the knight who very was worthy
et vaillans, le reçut molt vivement au pooir qu'il ot,
and valiant him received very vigorously to-the power that-he had
mais tant vous puis je bien dire que li gaians le reçut
but so-much to-you can I well say that the giant him received
molt mauvaisement, et le greva molt, mais le chevaliers
very wickedly and him harmed much but the knight
le hasta de l'espée, et li colpa le teste, et le pendi
him pressed with the-sword and from-him cut the head and it hung
la aval a le brance d'un arbre, et lors vint a moi, et
there below on the branch of-a tree and then came to me and
me fist monter, et dist qu'il feroit de moi s'amie, et
me made mount and said that-he would-make of me his-friend and
je, qui molt en oi grant leece, si li otroia[i] volentiers,
I who very thereof had great gladness so to-him granted gladly
et li dis qu'a tos jors mais le retenroie a segnor et
and to-him said that-for all days more him I-would-hold as lord and

a ami puis qu'il m'avoit delivrée de l'anemi qui m'eüst
as friend since that-he me-had delivered from the-enemy who me-would-have
honie et morte. Et cevauçames ier toute jor ensamble,
shamed and killed And we-rode yesterday all day together
et hui matin desci a tierce, et tant que nous trovames .j.
and today morning until at terce and until that we found a
pavellon tendu; si alames cele part por veir la feste qu'on
pavilion pitched so we-went that way for to-see the feast that-one
i faisoit, car ainc si grant feste ne fu veüe comme cil
there made for ever so great feast not was seen as those
demenoient qui estoient el tref. Et quant nos entrames
made who were in-the tent And when we entered
dedens le pavellon dont li pan estoient haucié, et quant
within the pavilion whose the flaps were raised and when
nos fumes entrés dedens le pavellon, tout autresi com il
we were entered within the pavilion all just as they
avoient fait joie si demenerent après grant dolor, quant il
had made joy so made after great sorrow when they
nous virent venir. Et quant mes amis vit qu'il demenoient
us saw come And when my friend saw that-they made
si grant dolor si s'en esmervella molt. Et lors vint
so great sorrow so himself-thereof marveled much And then came
une demisele qui dist que nos vuidissiemes tost le tré et
a damsel who said that we should-quit soon the tent and
tornast on en fuies car se on plus i demouroit il sera
should-turn one in flight for if one more there remained he will-be
ja ocis. Et il respondi com cil qui rien ne savoit de
soon killed And he answered as that-one who anything not knew of
lor affaire qu'il ne s'en isteroit rien encore. Et lor
their affair that-he not himself-thence would-go-out anything yet And them
pria: 'Demiseles por Diu laissiés ester la dolor, et faites
prayed Damsels for God let be the sorrow and make

la joie que vous soliés faire.' Et eles respondirent: 'Biaus
the joy that you were-wont to-do And they answered Fair
Sire, comment feriemes nous feste quant il vos covenra ja
Lord how would-make we feast when it you will-behoove soon
morir devant nous? Car li Orguelleus de le Lande, qui ci
to-die before us For the Proud-One of the Heath who here
a tendu son pavellon, vous ocira, et bien saciés que ja
has pitched his pavilion you will-kill and well know that ever
n'en avera merci. mais se vos m'en creés vous irés
not-thereof he-will-have mercy but if you me-thereof believe you will-go
ançois que pis vous en venist. Et il respondi: 'Douces
before that worse to-you thereof should-come And he answered Sweet
demiseles, je ne dout pas qu'un chevaliers me puisse bien
damsels I not fear at-all that-a knight me can well
damagier.' Et quant eles l'oïrent si commencierent a plorer.
harm And when they it-heard so began to weep
Atant vint uns nains cevauçant sor un roncin, une corgie
At-that came a dwarf riding upon a nag a whip
en se main, qui molt estoit fel et cruels, ne onques ne
in his hand who very was wicked and cruel nor ever not
nous salua autrement qu'il nous dist que mal fussiemes
us greeted otherwise than-he to-us said that ill were
nous venus, Et nous si fumes au samblant qu'il nous
we come And we so were by-the seeming that-he to-us
mostra, car il me feri molt angoisseusement de sa corgie
showed for he me struck very anguishedly with his whip
parmi mon viaire, si que les treces i parurent; et prist
across my face so that the marks there appeared and took
l'estace del tref, et l'abati sor nous, et saciés qu'a mon
the-pole of-the tent and it-threw-down upon us and know that-to my
ami en anoia molt, mais il ne se dagna meller au
friend thereof it-irked much but he not himself deigned meddle with-the

nain. Et si tost comme li nains ot ce fait, si s'en
dwarf And so soon as the dwarf had this done so himself-thence
torna et feri son roncin de se corgie, et nous nous
turned and struck his nag with his whip and we ourselves
en tornames atant et alames nos chemin, car nous n'i
thence turned at-that and went our road for we not-there
aviemes que faire plus, et n'eüsmes pas alé demi liue
had what to-do more and not-we-had at-all gone half league
quant nous veïsmes a cevauçant .j. cevalier molt bien armés
when we saw at riding a knight very well armed
d'unes vermelles armes, et venoit de si grant aleüre qu'il
in-some red arms and came at so great pace that-he
faisoit tout le bois croissir, et sambloit qu'il en i eüst
made all the wood crack and it-seemed that-it thereof there were
dis, si demena il grant tempeste. Et quant li cevaliers nos
ten so made he great tempest And when the knight us
aproça si s'escria a haute vois: 'Par Diu, dans chevaliers,
approached so himself-cried with high voice By God sir knight
mar i avés mon tref abatu, ne la joie que i
in-ill-hour there you-have my tent thrown-down nor the joy which there
estoit faite entrelaissier.' Et quant mes amis l'ot entendu si
was made interrupted And when my friend it-had heard so
s'en retorna par devers lui, et retornerent les ciés de
himself-thence turned-back by toward him and they-turned the heads of
lor cevaus, et li cevaliers, qui estoit molt fors, feri mon
their horses and the knight who was very strong struck my
ami parmi le cors, et après traist l'espée et le feri parmi
friend through the body and after drew the-sword and him struck through
li hiaume si comme vous poés veoir. Et quant il l'ot
the helm so as you can see And when he him-had
ocis si s'entorna, qu'onques moi ni mon ceval ne dagna
killed so himself-turned-away so-that-ever me nor my horse not he-deigned

regarder; et je remés toute seule en ceste forest, et se jou
look-at and I remained all alone in this forest and if I
ai grant duel nus ne m'en doit blasmer, quant jou ai
have great grief anyone not me-thereof must blame since I have
celui perdu qui m'avoit delivrée de l'anemi. Or vous ai
him lost who me-had delivered from the-enemy Now to-you I-have
dit le voir de çou que vous m'avés demandé.' Et quant cele
told the truth of this that you me-have asked And when she
ot çou dit si commença a plorer et a faire grant duel. Et
had this said so began to weep and to make great grief And
Percevaus qui molt fu dolans de la dolor qu'il li vit avoir,
Perceval who very was grieved of the sorrow that-he her saw have
parla a li et li dist, 'Demisele, en ceste duel ne povrés
spoke to her and to-her said Damsel in this grief not shall-be-able
vous rien recovrer, mais montés sor cel mul et me menés
you anything recover but mount upon that mule and me lead
au tref le cevaliers, car jamais n'arai joie desci adont
to-the tent (of-)the knight for ever-more not-I-shall-have joy until then
que je l'arai vengié.' Et li demisele li respondi: 'Sire,
that I him-shall-have avenged And the damsel to-him answered Lord
se vous m'en creés, vous n'irés pas, car li cevaliers est
if you me-thereof believe you not-shall-go at-all for the knight is
trop fors et trop grans, et se il en venoit au desus
too strong and too great and if he thereof came to-the upper-hand
il vous ociroit, et por çou nel di je pas que ce ne soit
he you would-kill and for this not-it say I at-all that this not be
li hom el monde que je plus hae.' Et Percevaus li
the man in-the world whom I most hate And Perceval to-her
dist qu'il n'arestera dusqu'a dont qu'il ara veü le cevalier.
said that-he not-will-stop until-to then that-he will-have seen the knight

At the pavilion the dwarf strikes the damsel, and Perceval knocks him from his nag. The Proud Knight arrives in red arms; after a long fight Perceval unhelms him, spares him at his plea, and makes him swear to yield to Arthur and take the damsel to Gawain or the queen. They dine together in the pavilion, and the damsel parts from Perceval in grief.

Atant fist Percevaus la damoisele monter, et tinrent lor
At-that made Perceval the damsel mount and held their
voie ensamble desci au pavellon, et oïrent la joie que les
way together until to-the pavilion and heard the joy that the
damoiselles demenoient. Et si tost com eles coisirent Percevaus
damsels made And so soon as they spied Perceval
si laissiérent lor joie ester, et li hucierent a haute vois
so left their joy be and to-him cried with high voice
qu'il s'en alast car se lor sire venoit il le covenroit a
that-he himself-thence should-go for if their lord came it him would-behoove to
morir. Et Percevaus, qui molt petit prisa çou qu'eles disoient,
die And Perceval who very little prized this that-they said
s'en vint cevauçant desci el pavellon. Si com il estoit
himself-thence came riding until in-the pavilion So as he was
ens entrés et parloit a eles si vint le nains sor .j. roncin,
within entered and spoke to them so came the dwarf upon a nag
qui molt estoit lais et hisdeus, et tint une corgie en se
which very was ugly and hideous and held a whip in his
main, et en feri le ronci en le teste, et puis li dist:
hand and therewith struck the nag on the head and then to-him said
'Fuiés tost del pavellon a mon segnor!' Et puis vint a le
Flee soon from-the pavilion of my lord And then came to the
demisele, si l'en feri parmi le col et parmi les mains,
damsel so her-therewith struck across the neck and across the hands

et prist le palefroi a le demisele, et le volt faire reculer
and took the palfrey of the damsel and it wished to-make back-up
fors del pavellon. Et quant Percevaus le vit si en fu molt
out of-the pavilion And when Perceval it saw so thereof was very
dolans, et prist se lance parmi le fer, et l'en douna .j.
grieved and took his lance by the iron and him-therewith gave a
grant colp parmi les espaules qu'il le fist voler jus del
great blow across the shoulders that-he him made fly down from-the
ronci a le terre tot plat, mais il sali sus, et vint a son
nag to the earth all flat but he leapt up and came to his
ronci, et i monta, et dist a Perceval: 'Par Diu, dans
nag and thereon mounted and said to Perceval By God sir
chevaliers, ja ançois ne sera li jors passés que grant honte
knight ever before not will-be the day passed that great shame
vous sera creüe.' Et Percevaus remest el pavellon, qui
to-you will-be grown And Perceval remained in-the pavilion who
molt fu dolans de le demisele que li nains avoit si laidoiie.
very was grieved of the damsel whom the dwarf had so mistreated
Ensi com il estoient illuec, si virent venir le chevalier
Thus as they were there so they-saw come the knight
tot armé de vermelles armes, et li nain avuec lui, et quant
all armed in red arms and the dwarf with him and when
li demisele le vit si ot paor, et li escria: 'Biaus Sire,
the damsel him saw so had fear and to-him cried Fair Lord
veés la celui qui m'ocist mon ami!' Et quant Percevaus
see there him who for-me-killed my friend And when Perceval
l'entendi si li retorna le cief de son ceval, et issi
it-heard so toward-him turned the head of his horse and went-out
del pavellon, et quant li cevalier le vit si li escria:
of-the pavilion and when the knight him saw so to-him cried
'Par Diu, dans chevaliers, mar i avés mon nain batu.'
By God sir knight in-ill-hour there you-have my dwarf beaten

Et Percevaus, qui petit prisa son dit et son beubant,
And Perceval who little prized his saying and his boasting
li torna le cief de son ceval, et s'entrevinrent de
toward-him turned the head of his horse and each-other-came at
molt grant aleüre com cil qui nient s'entreamoient. Et li
very great pace as those who nothing each-other-loved And the
cevaliers qui molt ot force et hardement fiert Perceval en
knight who much had strength and boldness strikes Perceval on
l'escu, si qu'il li fist fraindre et percier, et li fist le
the-shield so that-he it made break and pierce and for-him made the
fer passer par selonc le senestre aissele, et bien saciés que
iron pass by along the left armpit and well know that
s'il l'eüst pris en car qu'il l'eüst ocis. Et Percevaus
if-he him-had taken in flesh that-he him-would-have killed And Perceval
qui molt estoit cevalerous li rapoia sa lance en l'escu
who very was chivalrous to-him set-in-turn his lance on the-shield
par si grant mautalent qu'ainc haubers ne escus ne cose
with so great ill-will that-ever hauberk nor shield nor thing
qu'il eust vestue ne li fu garans qu'il ne li fesist le
that-he had donned not to-him was warrant that-he not to-him made the
fer sentir en le car. Et s'entrehurterent si angoisseusement
iron feel in the flesh And each-other-struck so anguishedly
des cors et des ciés et des escus qu'il furent si
with-the bodies and with-the heads and with-the shields that-they were so
estounés qu'il ne sorent qu'il devinrent, si que resnes
stunned that-they not knew what-they became so that reins
et enarmes lor volérent des puins, et porta li uns
and straps to-them flew from-the fists and bore the one
l'autre si durement a terre que vous fussiés ançois une
the-other so hard to earth that you would-have-been before a
liue alé que vous seüssiés qu'il fussent devenu. Mais au
league gone than you knew what-they were become But at-the

plus tost qu'il porent salirent sus, et prisent les escus
most soon that-they could they-leapt up and took the shields
as enarmes, et sacierent lor espées, et passa li uns
by-the straps and drew their swords and passed the one
vers l'autre. Et li chevaliers, qui molt ot force et pooir,
toward the-other And the knight who much had strength and power
tint l'espée nue et l'escu enbracié, et requist Perceval
held the-sword naked and the-shield embraced and attacked Perceval
par molt grant aïr. Et Percevaus mist l'escu avant, et
with very great fury And Perceval put the-shield forward and
li chevaliers i feri molt ruistement si que il le colpa
the knight thereon struck very fiercely so that he it cut
dusqu'en le bocle, et vint li cols avalant par molt grant
down-into the boss and came the blow descending with very great
vertu, si qu'il li fist voler a terre flors et pierres, et
force so that-he for-him made fly to earth flowers and stones and
l'eüst damagié, mais li espée li torna el puing,
him-would-have harmed but the sword for-him turned in-the fist
et escaucira en defors. Quant Percevaus le vit, si li crut
and glanced to outside When Perceval it saw so to-him grew
force et hardemens, et s'en vint vers lui, car il le
strength and boldness and himself-thence came toward him for he him
cuida ferir parmi le hiaume. Mais li cevaliers li tent
thought to-strike through the helm But the knight to-him holds-out
l'escu encontre, et Percevaus i feri, qui molt avoit ire
the-shield against and Perceval thereon struck who much had wrath
et mautalent, qu'il li fist fendre desci es puins, et
and ill-will that-he for-him made split down-to in-the fists and
le navra molt malement en le senestre espaule, et le
him wounded very badly in the left shoulder and him
hurta si que por un poi qu'il ne chaï a le terre. Lors
struck so that for a little that-he — fell to the earth Then

li recorut sus molt ruistement, et li chevaliers se
at-him he-ran-again upon very fiercely and the knight himself
desfendi au miels qu'il pot comme cil qui cuidoit que
defended at-the best that-he could as he who thought that
nus hom ne peüst contre lui. Mais Percevaus le hasta si
any man not could against him But Perceval him pressed so
qu'il li covint a defuïr parmi le pré, ne onques ne pot
that-it him behooved to flee through the meadow nor ever not could
faire nes un recouvrement, et tant le hasta Percevaus
make not-even a recovery and so-much him pressed Perceval
qu'il li osta le hiaume hors de le teste, et li
that-he from-him took the helm off of the head and from-him
eüst le teste colpée, quant il cria por Diu merci qu'il
would-have the head cut when he cried for God mercy that-he
ne l'ocesist, et qu'il se metroit en sa prison en tous
not him-should-kill and that-he himself would-put in his prison in all
les lius u il sauroit deviser. Quant Percevaus entent que
the places where he would-know devise When Perceval hears that
cil merci requeroit, si ne le dagna plus roncier, ains
that-one mercy asked so not him deigned more harass rather
se traist arriere, et li dist qu'il li juerroit sor
himself drew back and to-him said that-he to-him would-swear upon
sains qu'il et ses damoiseles se metroient en le prison
relics that-he and his damsels themselves would-put in the prison
le roi Artu, et par teus couvens que li demisele a cui
(of-)the king Arthur and by such covenant that the damsel to whom
il avoit son ami ocis menroit a le cort Artu, et le
he had her friend killed he-would-lead to the court (of-)Arthur and her
rendroit a Gavain le neveu le roi. 'Et je croi bien qu'il
would-render to Gawain the nephew (of-)the king And I believe well that-he
le traira a se volenté, u au mains le remenroit a le
her will-draw to her will or at-the least her would-lead-back to the

maison son pere.' Et li cevaliers li respondi: 'Sire ce
house (of-)her father And the knight to-him answered Lord this
ferai jou molt volentiers, mais or me dites de par cui
shall-do I very gladly but now to-me tell from by whom
je me rendrai prisonnier quant je venrai a le cort le
I myself shall-render prisoner when I shall-come to the court (of-)the
rice roi Artu?' Et il respondi: 'De par Perceval le Galois,
rich king Arthur And he answered From by Perceval the Welshman
qui est entrés en la queste del Graal. Et encor vous ai
who is entered into the quest of-the Grail And still to-you have
je oblié a dire que se vous ne trovés mon segnor Gavains,
I forgotten to say that if you not find my lord Gawain
que vous bailliés le demisele a le roïne, car certes je ne
that you give the damsel to the queen for certainly I not
cuit pas que Gavains i soit.' Et li cevaliers respondi:
think at-all that Gawain there be And the knight answered
'Sire je ferai del tout a vostre volenté, mais je vos requier
Lord I shall-do in-the all at your will but I you ask
que ançois que vous vous en alés, ne jou autresi, que vous
that before that you yourself thence go nor I likewise that you
mangiés avuec moi, et puis si m'en irai plus liement
eat with me and then so myself-thence I-shall-go more gladly
la u vous m'avés commandé.' Et Percevaus respondi
there where you me-have commanded And Perceval answered
com cil qui grant mestier en avoit, que ce fera il molt
as he who great need thereof had that this will-do he very
volentiers. Atant s'en vinrent au tref, et quant il
gladly At-that themselves-thence came to-the tent and when they
furent ens entrés li cevaliers commanda li demiseles qu'eles
were within entered the knight commanded the damsels that-they
fesissent au cevalier bel samblant, et si com il les ot
should-make to-the knight fair show and so as he them had

rové et commandé si le fisent eles, et li afublerent un
bidden and commanded so it did they and on-him put a
mantel molt rice, et les tables furent mises, et s'asisent
mantle very rich and the tables were set and themselves-sat
au mangier, et orent a grant plenté. Et quant il orent
at-the eating and had in great plenty And when they had
mangié si se leverent et Percevaus demanda ses armes,
eaten so themselves rose and Perceval asked his arms
et on li aporta, et il s'arma, et quant il fu armés
and one to-him brought and he himself-armed and when he was armed
si monta sur son ceval, et li cevaliers refist autretel
so mounted upon his horse and the knight did-again the-like
et fist monter ses demiseles et li demisele autresi que
and made mount his damsels and the damsel likewise whom
Percevaus avoit illuec amenée. Et bien saciés que quant ele
Perceval had there brought And well know that when she
si parti de Perceval qu'ele demena molt grant duel, et
herself parted from Perceval that-she made very great grief and
sambla bien au samblant qu'ele mostra qu'ele amast miels
it-seemed well by-the seeming that-she showed that-she would-love better
a tenir sa compagnie que la compagnie au cevalier, mais
to hold his company than the company of-the knight but
estre ne pooit, car Percevaus pensa molt a autre cose.
be not could for Perceval thought much on other thing

The Proud Knight yields at Arthur's court. Perceval comes to an empty castle where chessmen play against him by themselves and mate him three times; he would throw them into the water below, but a damsel stops him. She promises him her love if he brings her the head of the white stag of the forest, and lends him her hound. He hunts the stag down and cuts off its head, but an old woman rides off with the hound, and he overtakes her and demands it back.

Ensi se departirent et li cevaliers cevauça tant qu'il
Thus themselves departed and the knight rode so-long that-he
vint a la cort le rice roi Artu, et Artus estoit en sa
came to the court (of-)the rich king Arthur and Arthur was in his
maistre sale et avuec lui li roïne qui molt estoit bele,
master hall and with him the queen who very was fair
et maint buen cevalier qui a le cort estoient venu. Et li
and many-a good knight who to the court were come And the
cevaliers vint en le sale que Percevaus i avoit envoié et
knight came into the hall whom Perceval there had sent and
salua le roi et la roïne et tous les barons en après, et
greeted the king and the queen and all the barons in after and
li dist: 'Sire, a vous me rent et en la vostre prison,
to-him said Lord to you myself I-render and into the your prison
et cis demiseles que vous poés ci veoir, a faire le votre
and these damsels whom you can here see to do the your
volonté, de par Perceval le Galois, et cele demisele que
will from by Perceval the Welshman and that damsel whom
vous veés la envoie a mon segnor Gavain, et se mesire
you see there he-sends to my lord Gawain and if my-lord
Gavains n'i est si manda la roïne qu'ele le recoive, car
Gawain not-there is so he-sent-word the queen that-she her receive for
ele est de molt grant parenté, et il meïsme vous salue tous.'
she is of very great kindred and he himself you greets all

Quant li rois Artus l'oï si en fu molt liés, et
When the king Arthur it-heard so thereof was very glad and
le retint de sa maisnie et li clama sa prison cuite,
him retained of his household and to-him declared his prison quit
et la roïne prist le demisele si li fist bel samblant et
and the queen took the damsel so to-her made fair show and
molt grant onor, por l'amor de monsegnor Gavains cui ele
very great honor for the-love of my-lord Gawain whose she
estoit cosine. Ensi remest li cevaliers a le cort le roi
was cousin Thus remained the knight at the court (of-)the king
Artu, et fu puis molt amés a le cort des barons. Et
Arthur and was afterward much loved at the court by-the barons And
Percevaus quant il fu departis del chevalier cevauça toute
Perceval when he was departed from-the knight rode all
jor, qu'onques aventure ne trova, et aproïsma li vespres,
day so-that-ever adventure not he-found and approached the evening
et il proia Nostre Segnor qu'il li envoiast ostel u
and he prayed Our Lord that-he to-him should-send lodging where
il se peüst herbergier, car il en avoit .j. mauvais eü
he himself could lodge for he thereof had a bad had
la nuit devant, et lors garda par devant lui, si vit aparoir
the night before and then looked by before him so saw appear
parmi l'espesse de le forest le pumel d'une tor, qui molt
through the-thick of the forest the pommel of-a tower which very
estoit biaus et gros; et quant Percevaus le vit si en ot
was fair and big and when Perceval it saw so thereof had
molt grant joie et cevauça cele part grant aleüre, et quant
very great joy and rode that way great pace and when
il vint la si vit que ce estoit li plus biaus castiaus del
he came there so saw that this was the most fair castle of-the
monde, et vit le pont abaissié, et le porte desfermée, si
world and saw the bridge lowered and the gate unlocked so

entra ens tot a ceval, et vint au perron devant le sale,
entered within all on horse and came to-the block before the hall
et descendi et atacha son ceval a .j. anel, et monta amont
and dismounted and tied his horse to a ring and climbed up
tous armés l'espée çainte. Et quant il fu amont el palais
all armed the-sword girt And when he was up in-the palace
si garda amont et aval, et ne vit home ne fame, et vint
so looked up and down and not saw man nor woman and came
a une cambre et entra dedens et garda partout, mais il
to a chamber and entered within and looked everywhere but he
n'i vit home ne feme. Et Percevaus revint arriere ens
not-there saw man nor woman And Perceval came-back back within
el palais, si s'en mervella molt, et dist: 'Par Diu,
in-the palace so himself-thereof marveled much and said By God
mervelles puis veoir car ceste sale est si joncie, et si
marvels I-can see for this hall is so strewn-with-rushes and so
sai bien qu'il n'a mie lonc tans qu'il i ot gent, et
I-know well that-there not-is at-all long time that-there there was folk and
or n'i voi nului.' Lors s'en revint en mi le sale
now not-there I-see anyone Then himself-thence came-back into mid the hall
et vit devant les fenestres .j. eskekier de fin argent, et par
and saw before the windows a chessboard of fine silver and by
desus l'eskekier avoit uns eskés de blanc ivoire et de noir,
upon the-chessboard there-was a chessmen of white ivory and of black
et estoient assis autresi com por juer. Et quant Percevaus
and were set just as for to-play And when Perceval
vit les eskés si biaus, si vint cele part et regarda les
saw the chessmen so fair so came that way and looked-at the
eskés molt longement, et quant il les ot assés regardés si
chessmen very long and when he them had enough looked-at so
prist les eskés, si les manoia, et en bouta un avant, et
took the chessmen so them handled and thereof pushed one forward and

li eskés retraist contre lui. Quant Percevaus vit les eskés
the chessman moved against him When Perceval saw the chessmen
qui traioient contre lui, si le tint a molt grant mervelle
which moved against him so it held for very great marvel
et retrait un autre eskec, et uns autres retrait contre lui,
and moved an other chessman and an other moved against him
et quant Percevaus le vit si s'asist et commença a juer,
and when Perceval it saw so himself-sat and began to play
et tant jua que par .iij. fois le mata li gius, et quant
and so-long played that by three times him mated the game and when
Percevaus vit çou si en ot molt grant engagne, et dist:
Perceval saw this so thereof had very great vexation and said
'Par la foi que je doi a Nostre Segnor, grant mervelle
By the faith that I owe to Our Lord great marvel
voi, car je cuidoie tant de ce giu savoir et il m'a maté
I-see for I thought so-much of this game to-know and it me-has mated
par .iij. fois, et je ai dehait quant jamais moi ne autre
by three times and I have curse when ever-more me nor other
cevalier matera ne fera honte.' Lors prist les eskés au
knight it-will-mate nor will-do shame Then took the chessmen in-the
pan de son hauberc et vint a le fenestre et les volt
skirt of his hauberk and came to the window and them wished
jeter en l'aigue que desous couroit. Issi com il les devoit
to-throw into the-water which below ran Thus as he them was-to
laissier aler si li escria une demisele qui desus lui estoit
let go so to-him cried a damsel who above him was
a une fenestre en haut et li dist: 'Cevaliers vostre cuers
at a window on high and to-him said Knight your heart
vous a esmeü a molt grant vilenie faire qui les eskés
you has moved to very great villainy do who the chessmen
volés ensi jeter en l'aigue, et saciés que si vous les getés
wish thus to-throw into the-water and know that if you them throw

vous ferés grant mal.' Et Percevaus li dist: 'Demisele, se
you will-do great ill And Perceval to-her said Damsel if
vous volés venir aval, saciés que je n'en i geterai nul.'
you wish to-come down know that I not-thereof there shall-throw any
Et ele respondi: 'Je n'i iroie pas, mais jetés les arriere
And she answered I not-there would-go at-all but throw them back
sor l'eskekier si ferés que cortois.' 'Qu'est ce, demisele?
upon the-chessboard so you-will-do as courteous What-is this damsel
dist Percevaus, vous ne volés faire rien por moi, et vous
said Perceval you not wish to-do anything for me and you
volés que je face por vous, mais, par saint Nicholai, se
wish that I do for you but by saint Nicholas if
vous ne venés ça jus je les i geterai!' Et quant li
you not come here down I them there shall-throw And when the
demisele l'oï ensi parler si li dist: 'Sire cevaliers, or
damsel him-heard thus speak so to-him said Lord knight now
metés les eskés arriere, et ançois descenderai jou que vous
put the chessmen back and rather shall-come-down I than you
les i getés.' Et quant Percevaus l'oï, si en fu molt
them there throw And when Perceval it-heard so thereof was very
liés, et vint a l'eskekier et rasist les eskés deseure, et
glad and came to the-chessboard and set-back the chessmen thereon and
il meïsme par aus seus si raseoient miels que nus hom
they themselves by them alone so set-back better than any man
ne les i peüst raseïr. Lors vint la damoisele parmi l'uis
— them there could set-back Then came the damsel through the-door
d'une cambre, et puceles avuec li bien desci a .x., et
of-a chamber and maidens with her well up to ten and
.iij. serjant devant ele qui molt estoient bien afaitiés, car,
three sergeants before her who very were well trained for
si tost com il virent Perceval, si s'en corurent a
so soon as they saw Perceval so themselves-thence ran to

lui desarmer, et li osterent le hiaume de le teste, et
him disarm and from-him removed the helm from the head and
li osterent les cauces, et li sacierent le hauberc
from-him removed the hose and from-him pulled the hauberk
del dos, et il remest en pur le cors, et saciés que
from-the back and he remained in pure the body and know that
ce estoit le plus biaus cevaliers qu'on seüst. Et doi vallet
this was the most fair knight that-one knew And two youths
corurent a son ceval et l'establerent, et une demisele li
ran to his horse and it-stabled and a damsel to-him
aporta .j. mantel d'escarlate cort, et l'en afubla, et
brought a mantle of-scarlet short and him-therewith clad and
puis l'en mena en le cambre avuec le demisele de la
then him-thence led into the chamber with the damsel of the
maison qui molt grant joie en fist par samblant, et
house who very great joy thereof made by seeming and
bien saciés que ce estoit li plus bele demisele del monde.
well know that this was the most fair damsel of-the world
Et quant Percevaus le vit si l'en ama molt durement
And when Perceval her saw so her-thereof loved very hard
et dist en son cuer que molt sera fols se il ne li
and said in his heart that very he-will-be mad if he not of-her
requiert s'amor puis qu'il est o lui a si grant loisir, et
asks her-love since that-he is with her at so great leisure and
ensi com il l'ot pensé si le fist, si l'en requist molt
thus as he it-had thought so it did so her-thereof asked very
durement, et essaia en maintes manieres, et tant que li
hard and tried in many manners and until that the
demisele dist: 'Sire, se m'aïst Dex, saciés que je molt
damsel said Lord so me-may-help God know that I very
volentiers vous oïsse de çou que vous me requerés se je
gladly you would-hear of this that you me ask if I

cuidasse que vous en fuissés ausi en grant par fait com
thought that you thereof were as in earnest by deed as
vous estes par parole, et neporquant saciés que je pas ne
you are by word and nevertheless know that I at-all not
vous mescroi de çou que vous m'avez dit, et se vous voliés
you disbelieve of this that you me-have said and if you wished
faire çou que je vous requerroie saciés que je vous ameroie,
to-do this that I of-you would-ask know that I you would-love
et feroie segnor de cest castel. Quant Perceval l'oï si
and would-make lord of this castle When Perceval it-heard so
en fu molt liés et li dist: 'Demisele, il n'est riens
thereof was very glad and to-her said Damsel it not-is anything
el mont, se vous le me requerés, que je ne face, mais
in-the world if you it of-me ask that I not do but
or dites çou qui vous plaist. Et ele respondi: 'Si vous
now say this which you pleases And she answered If you
me poés prendre le blanc cerf qui en cele forest maint,
for-me can take the white stag which in that forest dwells
et m'en aportissés le cief avuec vous, saciés qu'a tos
and to-me-thence should-bring the head with you know that-for all
jors mais serai votre amie, et saciés que je vous baillerai
days more I-shall-be your friend and know that I to-you shall-give
.j. tel braket qui molt est buens et vrais, car si tost que
a such hound which very is good and true for so soon as
vous l'arés laissié aler il ira droitement la u li
you it-shall-have let go it will-go straight there where the
cers est, et vous alés après grant aleüre, et li colpés
stag is and you go after great pace and from-it cut
le cief et le m'aportés.' Et Percevaus respondi: 'Dame,
the head and it to-me-bring And Perceval answered Lady
volentiers, et saciés, se Dex me done vie, que je cuit bien
gladly and know if God me gives life that I think well

faire tot çou que vous m'avés dit.' Atant vinrent les serjant
to-do all this that you me-have said At-that came the sergeants
a le demisele avant et misent les tables, et s'asisent au
of the damsel forward and set the tables and themselves-sat at-the
mangier, et orent assés qu'anqu'il volrent. Après mangier
eating and had enough whatever-they wished After eating
se leverent et alerent aval le cort, Percevaus et li
themselves they-rose and went down the court Perceval and the
demisele, tant que tans fu del aler coucier. Lors vinrent
damsel until that time was of-the going lie-down Then came
li serjant a Perceval et le descauçierent, et le coucierent
the sergeants to Perceval and him unshod and him laid
en .j. bel lit qu'il orent aparellié, et Percevaus s'i
in a fair bed which-they had prepared and Perceval himself-there
couça, et saciés qu'il dormi molt petit le nuit, car il
lay and know that-he slept very little the night for he
pensa molt a le demisele et a son afaire.
thought much on the damsel and on her affair

Au matin, quant li aube fu crevée, si leva Percevaus et
At-the morning when the dawn was broken so rose Perceval and
prist ses armes, si s'arma, et doi vallet li amenerent
took his arms so himself-armed and two youths to-him brought
son ceval, et il i monta, et li demisele vint avant
his horse and he thereon mounted and the damsel came forward
et li dona son braket, et li commanda que, si cier
and to-him gave her hound and him commanded that as dear
qu'il avoit s'amor, qu'il li gardast. Et Percevaus respondi:
as-he had her-love that-he it should-keep And Perceval answered
'Demisele, par Diu, il n'est riens que je ne volsisse miels
Damsel by God it not-is anything that I not would-wish rather
avoit perdu que le braket', et le mist sor le col del ceval
to-have lost than the hound and it put upon the neck of-the horse

par devant lui, et prist congié a le demisele, et s'en
by before him and took leave of the damsel and himself-thence
torna grant aleüre, tant qu'il vint en le forest, si mist le
turned great pace until that-he came into the forest so put the
braket jus et le laissa aler, et li braket entra en la trace
hound down and it let go and the hound entered into the track
del cerf et ala tant qu'il vint en .j. buisson, et l'esmut,
of-the stag and went so-long that-it came into a bush and it-roused
et li cers s'en fuï qui estoit blans comme nois et
and the stag itself-thence fled which was white as snow and
grant et ramus. Et quant Percevaus le vit si en fu molt
great and antlered And when Perceval it saw so thereof was very
liés et feri ceval des esporons, et li cevaus l'emporta
glad and struck horse with-the spurs and the horse him-carried
si durement que toute li forest en retenti. Et que vous
so hard that all the forest thereof resounded And what to-you
feroie lonc conte? tant le caça li brakès que tout le
would-I-make long tale so-long it hunted the hound that all it
recreï, et le tenoit par les .ij. cuisses, tot coi, et Percevaus,
exhausted and it held by the two thighs all still and Perceval
qui molt en ot grant joie, descent errament et li trença
who very thereof had great joy dismounts straightway and from-it cut
le teste, et dist a lui meïsme qu'il le penderoit a sa sele.
the head and said to him self that-he it would-hang on his saddle
A çou qu'il entendoit a le teste torser, si vint une vielle
At this that-he attended to the head pack so came an old-woman
sor .j. palefroi grant aleüre, et prist le braket et s'en
upon a palfrey great pace and took the hound and herself-thence
torna a tout. Et quant Percevaus le vit si en fu molt
turned with all And when Perceval it saw so thereof was very
iriés, et monta erramment et point après a esporon tant
angered and mounted straightway and spurred after at spur until

qu'il le rataint, et le prist par les espaules, et l'aresta,
that-he her overtook and her took by the shoulders and her-stopped
et li dist, 'Dame, par amors, rendés moi mon braket,
and to-her said Lady by love render me my hound
car çou est grans vilenie que vous ensi vous en alés.'
for this is great villainy that you thus yourself thence go

VII · THE KNIGHT OF THE TOMB; PERCEVAL'S SISTER

The old woman will return the hound only if Perceval tells a knight painted on a tomb that his painter was false. He does, and a knight in black arms rides out; while they fight, another knight carries off the stag's head and the hound, and the tomb knight retreats into his tomb. Searching for them, Perceval reaches his boyhood home, where his sister, not knowing him, tells how their mother died of grief when he left. They embrace, and he says he has sought their grandfather the Fisher King's court for more than three years.

Quant la vielle, qui molt fu felenesse, entendi Perceval
When the old-woman who very was wicked heard Perceval
si li dist: 'Biaus Sire chevaliers, mal dehait ait qui mi
so to-him said Fair Lord knight ill curse have who me
aresta, et qui ce dist que li brakès fust onques vostre,
stopped and who this says that the hound was ever yours
car je croi miels que vous l'aiés emblé, et saciés que je le
for I believe rather that you it-have stolen and know that I it
rendrai a celi cui ço est, car vous n'i avés nul droit.'
shall-render to her whose it is for you not-there have any right
Et quant Percevaus l'oï si li dist: 'Dame, se vous ne
And when Perceval it-heard so to-her said Lady if you not
me le rendés par amor, saciés que je m'en courecerai,
to-me it render by love know that I myself-thereof shall-anger

et si n'en porterés mie, si vaura dont pis qu'il ne
and so not-thereof you-shall-carry at-all so will-be-worth then worse than-it —
fait ore.' Et ele respont: 'Biaus Sire, force n'est mie drois,
does now And she answers Fair Lord force not-is at-all right
et force me poés vous bien faire, mais se vous volés faire
and force to-me can you well do but if you wish to-do
çou que je vous dirai je le vous rendrai sans noise.' Et
this that I to-you shall-say I it to-you shall-render without quarrel And
Percevaus li dist: 'Or dites que çou est, et je le ferai se
Perceval to-her said Now say what this is and I it shall-do if
je puis car saciés que je n'ai cure de comencier meslée a
I can for know that I not-have care of beginning fray with
vous.' Et ele respont: 'Ci devant sor cel cemin troveras .j.
you And she answers Here before on that road thou-shalt-find a
tombel et deseure .j. cevalier paint, et tu iras avant et
tomb and upon-it a knight painted and thou shalt-go forward and
li diras que faus fu qui illuec le painst; et puis, quant
to-him shalt-say that false was who there him painted and then when
tu aras ce fait, si vien a moi et je te rendrai ton
thou shalt-have this done so come to me and I to-thee shall-render thy
braket.' Et Percevaus respondi: 'Por çou ne le perdrai je mie.'
bound And Perceval answered For this not it shall-lose I at-all
Lor s'en vint au tombel, et li dist: 'Dans cevaliers,
Then himself-thence came to-the tomb and to-it said Sir knight
faus fu qu'illuec vous painst,' et quant il ot ce dit, et
false was who-there you painted and when he had this said and
il s'en revenoit, si oï une si grant noise arriere soi,
he himself-thence came-back so heard a so great noise behind himself
qu'il s'en regarda, et vit venir .j. cevalier de molt grant
that-he himself-thence looked and saw come a knight at very great
aleüre, par deseur .j. si grant ceval tot noir que ce sambloit
pace by upon a so great horse all black that this seemed

une grant mervelle, et estoit armés de toutes armes, et
a great marvel and was armed in all arms and
toutes ses armes estoient plus noires qu'onques fust aremens.
all his arms were more black than-ever was ink
Quant Percevaus vit le chevalier si s'en esfrea, et se
When Perceval saw the knight so himself-thereof frightened and himself
segna si tost com il le vit, car il estoit si grans que molt
crossed so soon as he him saw for he was so great that much
faisoit a redouter, mais, puis qu'il ot fait sor lui le signe
he-made to dread but since that-he had made upon himself the sign
de le veraie crois, cuelli force et hardement, et li
of the true cross he-gathered strength and boldness and toward-him
retorna errament le cief de son ceval; et s'entrevinrent de molt
turned straightway the head of his horse and each-other-came at very
grant aleüre, et se hurterent si angoisseusement qu'il
great pace and each-other struck so anguishedly that-they
defroissierent et lances et escus, et s'entrecontrerent des
shattered both lances and shields and each-other-met with-the
cors, et des pis, et des hiaumes si angoisseusement que
bodies and with-the chests and with-the helms so anguishedly that
li cuer lor esquasserent dedens les cors, et orent si lor veü
the hearts to-them crushed within the bodies and had so their sight
estorblées qu'il ne sorent qu'il devinrent, et perdirent et
troubled that-they not knew what-they became and lost both
resnes et enarmes et verserent a terre si roidement que a
reins and straps and fell to earth so stiffly that by
poi que li cuer ne lor creverent, et eüssiés ançois alés
little that the hearts — to-them burst and you-would-have before gone
.ij. arpens qu'il seüssent qu'il fussent devenu, ne que li
two acres than-they knew what-they were become nor that the
uns seüst quel part li autres ala. Et quant sens et memoire
one knew which way the other went And when sense and memory

lor fu revenus, si se leverent, et sacierent lor espées,
to-them was returned so themselves they-rose and drew their swords
et prisent lor escus, et s'en revint li uns vers l'autre.
and took their shields and himself-thence came the one toward the-other
Li cevaliers del tombel requist Perceval par molt grant aïr,
The knight of-the tomb attacked Perceval with very great fury
et le fiert de l'espée parmi le hiaume, mais tant fu durs
and him strikes with the-sword through the helm but so-much it-was hard
qu'il ne le pot empirer, et Percevaus li rekeurt sus molt
that-he not it could impair and Perceval at-him runs-again upon very
aigrement, et le suit si près qu'il li fait vuidier estal, et
bitterly and him follows so close that-he him makes empty place and
le feri de l'espée parmi le hiaume si qu'il li a trencié,
him struck with the-sword through the helm so that-he for-him has cut
et le coife autresi, et le navra en le teste a le senestre
and the coif likewise and him wounded in the head on the left
partie, et le hurta si durement qu'il le fist canceler, et
part and him struck so hard that-he him made stagger and
bien saciés que si l'espée ne li fust tornée ens el puing
well know that if the-sword not to-him were turned within in-the fist
qu'il l'eüst mort. Mais li cevaliers reprist les enarmes,
that-he him-would-have dead But the knight took-again the straps
et li recourut sus par molt grant ire, et Percevaus
and at-him ran-again upon with very great wrath and Perceval
se desfendi. A çou qu'il estoient illuec en mi le pré
himself defended At this that-they were there in mid the meadow
si vint uns chevaliers sor aus, bien armés de toutes armes,
so came a knight upon them well armed in all arms
et prist le teste del cerf, et le braket que li vielle
and took the head of-the stag and the hound that the old-woman
tenoit, si s'en torna qu'il onques ne lor dist mot.
held so himself-thence turned so-that-he ever not to-them said word

Quant Percevaus vit ce si en fu molt desconfortés, ne il
When Perceval saw this so thereof was very discomforted nor he
ne le pot suivre por li cevalier qui molt durement l'asaloit,
not him could follow for the knight who very hard him-assailed
lors crut a Perceval force et hardemens, et corut le cevalier
then grew to Perceval strength and boldness and ran the knight
sus de molt grant aïr, et li cevaliers ne le pot plus soufrir,
upon with very great fury and the knight not it could more suffer
et le redouta molt, et s'en torna vers son tombel
and him feared much and himself-thence turned toward his tomb
grant aleüre, et li tombiaus se leva encontre mont et li
great pace and the tomb itself raised toward up and the
cevaliers se feri dedens. et Percevaus se cuida après le
knight himself thrust within and Perceval himself thought after the
chevalier lancier, mais il ne pot car le tombiaus se flati
knight to-hurl but he not could for the tomb itself slammed
si durement après le chevalier que li terre en crolla après.
so hard after the knight that the earth thereof shook after
Perceval, qui molt en ot grant mervelle de çou qu'il ot
Perceval who very thereof had great marvel of this that-he had
veü e[n] vint au tombel, et huça le cevalier par .iij. fois
seen thence came to-the tomb and called the knight by three times
mais il ne li respondi nient. Et quant Perceval vit qu'il
but he not to-him answered anything And when Perceval saw that-he
ne parleroit si s'en revint arriere vers son ceval, et
not would-speak so himself-thence came-back back toward his horse and
monta, et sivi le cevalier grant aleüre qui se teste et
mounted and followed the knight great pace who his head and
son braket emportoit, et dist que jamais ne finira si
his hound carried-off and said that ever-more not he-will-stop until
l'ara retrové, Ensi com il cevauçoit, si vit le vielle
him-he-will-have found-again Thus as he rode so saw the old-woman

devant lui qui l'arcel li avoit ensagnie, et Percevaus point
before him who the-coffer to-him had shown and Perceval spurs
vers li et li demanda qui li cevaliers estoit del tombel,
toward her and of-her asked who the knight was of-the tomb
et s'ele counissoit celui qui son braket emporte? Et quant li
and if-she knew him who his hound carries-off And when the
vielle l'oï si li dist; 'Dans chevaliers mal dehait ait
old-woman it-heard so to-him said Sir knight ill curse have
qui de çou m'aparlera dont je ne sai riens, mais se vous
who of this me-will-address whereof I not know anything but if you
l'avés perdu si querés que vous l'aiés retrové, car a moi ne
it-have lost so seek that you it-may-have found-again for to me not
monte rien de vostre afaire.' Et quant Percevaus oï qu'il
amounts anything of your affair And when Perceval heard that-he
ne trouveroit en li nule raison, si le commanda a diables, et
not would-find in her any reason so her commended to devils and
s'en torna après le chevalier qui se teste et son braket
himself-thence turned after the knight who his head and his hound
emportoit, et cevauça grant partie de le saison qu'onques de
carried-off and rode great part of the season so-that-ever of
le cevalier n'oï ensagne. Tant cevauça parmi les forests
the knight not-he-heard token So-long he-rode through the forests
et parmi les boskages que molt i trova d'aventures, mais
and through the thickets that many there he-found of-adventures but
teus aventure le mena qu'il vint .j. jor en le gaste forest
such adventure him led that-he came one day into the waste forest
u se mere avoit conversé, et ses pere autresi, et estoit
where his mother had dwelt and his father likewise and was
li castiaus remest a une demisele qui estoit suer Perceval.
the castle remained to a damsel who was sister (of-)Perceval

Quant Percevaus vint en le forest si ne s'i recounu
When Perceval came into the forest so not himself-there recognized
nule cose, car molt avoit lonc tans qu'il n'i avoit esté,
any thing for very it-was long time that-he not-there had been
mais com aventure le mena si s'i adreça et vint en la
but as adventure him led so himself-there directed and came into the
maison tot a ceval, et quant li demisele qui estoit sa suer
house all on horse and when the damsel who was his sister
le vit si li corut a l'estrier, et li dist: 'Sire chevaliers,
him saw so to-him ran to the-stirrup and to-him said Sir knight
descendés car vous arés molt buen ostel si vous volés
dismount for you will-have very good lodging if you wish
demorer hui mais dusqu'a demain.' Et Percevaus respont:
to-remain today more until-to tomorrow And Perceval answers
'Demisele, saciés que je ne ving por el.' Atant descendi
Damsel know that I not came for else At-that dismounted
Percevaus, et li demisele li corut a l'estrier et li aida
Perceval and the damsel to-him ran to the-stirrup and him helped
molt debuenairement, et avuec li .ij. soies demiseles, qui
very graciously and with her two her-own damsels who
estoient ses nieces et li aidierent a desarmer, et quant il
were her nieces and him helped to disarm and when he
fu desarmés si li aporta li demisele qui se suer estoit .j.
was disarmed so to-him brought the damsel who his sister was a
sorchot de soie molt bel, et s'asist dejoste lui et le regarda
surcoat of silk very fair and herself-sat beside him and him looked-at
molt durement, et commença a plorer. Et quant Percevaus le
very hard and began to weep And when Perceval her
vit plorer si en fu molt dolans et li demanda qu'ele avoit
saw weep so thereof was very grieved and of-her asked what-she had
qu'ensi ploroit, et cele li a respondu: 'Sire, je le vos dirai.
that-thus she-wept and she to-him has answered Lord I it to-you shall-tell

Sire, jou ai un frere jovne baceler, et je ere se suer, et
Lord I have a brother young bachelor and I was his sister and
fumes ambedui d'un pere et d'une mere. Si avint que nos
we-were both of-one father and of-one mother So it-happened that our
pere morut si com Diu plot, et bien saciés que Jesus Christ
father died so as to-God it-pleased and well know that Jesus Christ
i envoia le vois del Saint Esperit a son trespassement.
there sent the voice of-the Holy Spirit at his passing
Quant il fu mors mes frere s'en ala a le cort le rice
When he was dead my brother himself-thence went to the court (of-)the rich
roi Artu. Sire, mes frere estoit molt jovnes, et de molt povre
king Arthur Lord my brother was very young and of very poor
essiant, et me mere en fu molt dolante, et tel duel
understanding and my mother thereof was very grieved and such grief
en ot qu'ele en feri en tel maladie qu'ele en morut.
thereof had that-she thereof fell into such sickness that-she thereof died
Or sai bien que li pecié de ma mere l'a encombré.' Et
Now I-know well that the sin of my mother him-has encumbered And
quant Percevaus l'oï si li dist: 'Bele suer, saciés que je
when Perceval it-heard so to-her said Fair sister know that I
sui Percevaus li vostre frere, qui a le cort le rice roi Artu
am Perceval the your brother who to the court (of-)the rich king Arthur
en ala.' Quant li demisele l'oï si en fu molt lie, et sali
thence went When the damsel it-heard so thereof was very glad and leapt
sus en plorant, et l'acola, et le baisa plus de .c. fois,
up in weeping and him-embraced and him kissed more than a-hundred times
et Percevaus li ensement, et fisent molt grant joie li uns de
and Perceval her likewise and made very great joy the one of
l'autre, et tant que li demisele li demanda se il avoit esté
the-other and until that the damsel of-him asked if he had been
a le cort son taion le rice Roi Pescheor, et Percevaus
at the court (of-)his grandfather the rich King Fisher and Perceval

li dist: 'Bele suer je n'i ai pas encore esté, et si
to-her said Fair sister I not-there have at-all yet been and so
l'ai quis molt longement, et plus a de .iij. ans que je
it-I-have sought very long and more there-is than three years that I
le vois querant, et saciés bele suer que je jamais n'aresterai
it go seeking and know fair sister that I ever-more not-shall-stop
si l'arai trové.' Li demisele respond: 'Biaus frere, Dex
until it-I-shall-have found The damsel answers Fair brother God
te laist si faire a se volenté que tu soies a son plaisir.'
thee let so do at his will that thou be at his pleasure

VIII · THE HERMIT UNCLE

His sister takes Perceval to their uncle, a hermit and brother of Alain, who tells him that the Fisher King Bron, his grandfather, keeps the Grail and cannot die until Perceval comes to his court and is made lord of the Grail. The hermit charges him not to kill knights and to pray for his mother's soul. On the way back Perceval kills a knight who rides at him to seize his sister, and grieves at it. Despite her pleas, he arms to leave her and go on with his quest.

Ensi com li uns parloit a l'autre et faisoient grant joie li uns
Thus as the one spoke to the-other and made great joy the one
de l'autre, si vinrent li vallet a le demisele en le maison; et
of the-other so came the youths of the damsel into the house and
quant il virent que lor demisele baisoit si forment Perceval
when they saw that their damsel kissed so greatly Perceval
si en orent molt grant duel et disent que molt est fole lor
so thereof had very great grief and said that very is mad their
demisele qu'ensi baise cel estrange chevalier, et li demisele
damsel who-thus kisses that strange knight and the damsel
les apela avant, et lor dist: 'Bele maisnie, saciés que çou
them called forward and to-them said Fair household know that this

est ci Percevaus mes frere qui si jovnes s'en ala de
is here Perceval my brother who so young himself-thence went from
çaiens.' Quant li vallez l'ont oï si en furent molt lie, et
herein When the youths it-have heard so thereof were very glad and
fisent de lui grant joie, et quant il orent mangié si l'apela
made of him great joy and when they had eaten so him-called
le demisele, et li dist: 'Biaus frere, jou ai molt grant
the damsel and to-him said Fair brother I have very great
paor de vous qu'ensi alés, car molt estes jovnes, et li cevalier
fear for you that-thus you-go for very you-are young and the knights
qui vont par le païs si sont molt cruel et molt felon, et
who go through the country so are very cruel and very wicked and
saciés que, se il pueent, il vous ociront por le vostre ceval
know that if they can they you will-kill for the your horse
gaagnier; mais se vous m'en creés, biaus frere, vous lairés
to-win but if you me-thereof believe fair brother you will-let
ester ceste painne la u vous estes entrés, et demoerés
be this pain there where you are entered and will-remain
avuec moi, car çou est grans peciés de chevalier ocire, et
with me for this is great sin of knight to-kill and
si estes cascuns jor en grant peril de le mort recevoir.'
so you-are each day in great peril of the death to-receive

'Certes, dist Perceval, bele suer, saciés que je molt
Certainly said Perceval fair sister know that I very
volentiers demoerroie se je avoie acomplie la queste u je
gladly would-remain if I had fulfilled the quest where I
sui entrés, et si tost com je l'arai acomplie je revenrai
am entered and so soon as I it-shall-have fulfilled I shall-come-back
a vous, et vous consellerai et aiderai a mon pooir, mais
to you and you shall-counsel and aid to my power but
desci adont que je l'aie acomplie ne demoeroie je pas.'
until then that I it-may-have fulfilled not would-remain I at-all

Et quant le demisele l'oï si en plora molt tendrement et
And when the damsel it-heard so thereof wept very tenderly and
li dist: 'Perceval, biaus dos frere, dont vous vuel je proier
to-him said Perceval fair sweet brother then you wish I to-pray
que vous faciés çou que je vous proierai.' Et il li respont:
that you do this that I you shall-pray And he to-her answers
'Bele suer, dites moi çou que vous volés, et je le ferai.' Et
Fair sister tell me this that you wish and I it shall-do And
ele li respondi: 'Je vuel que vous venés avueques moi a
she to-him answered I wish that you come with me to
le maison .j. vostre oncle qui est hermites, et si est molt
the house (of-)a your uncle who is hermit and so is very
preudom; et maint en ceste forest, desci a demie liue lonc
worthy-man and dwells in this forest until at half league long
de ci, et vous confesserés a lui, et prendrés penitance de
from here and you shall-confess to him and shall-take penance for
le nostre mere qui por vous morut; et saciés qu'il vous
the our mother who for you died and know that-he you
en consellera a son pooir; et gardés que vous faites çou
thereof will-counsel to his power and take-care that you do this
qu'il vous commandera, car il est molt sains hom, et vint
that-he you will-command for he is very holy man and came
en cest païs de devers Jerusalem de le terre de Judée, et
into this country from toward Jerusalem from the land of Judea and
fu li uns des frere de nostre pere Alain le Gros. Et saciés
was the one of-the brothers of our father Alain the Fat And know
que se il fait a Jesus Christ orisons que Dex vous avoit a
that if he makes to Jesus Christ prayers that God you may-guide to
çou trover que vous querés, saciés que, par ses proieres, i
this find that you seek know that by his prayers there
poés vous bien ançois assener, car molt fait buen oïr les
can you well sooner arrive for very it-makes good to-hear the

paroles qu'il m'a retraites del vostre ancestre, et de Joseph,
words that-he me-has related of-the your ancestor and of Joseph
et de Enigeus se mere qui fu suer Joseph, et de Bron son
and of Enygeus his mother who was sister (of-)Joseph and of Bron his
pere qu'on apele le Roi Pescheor, et m'a aconté que cil
father whom-one calls the King Fisher and me-has told that that
Bron, qui est li vostre taions, a le vaissel u li sans
Bron who is the your grandfather has the vessel where the blood
Nostre Segnor fu recuellois, et est cil vassiaus nomes Graaus,
(of-)Our Lord was gathered and is that vessel named Grail
et m'a dist que Nostre Sire dist qu'a vous doit revenir,
and me-has said that Our Lord said that-to you it-must return
et vous le covenra tant querre que vous l'arés trové.'
and you it will-behoove so-long to-seek that you it-shall-have found
Quant Percevaus oï ensi se seror parler si s'en
When Perceval heard thus his sister speak so himself-thereof
esjoi molt durement, et dist qu'il ira molt volentiers a
rejoiced very greatly and said that-he will-go very gladly to
son oncle. Lors s'arma Perceval atant, et monta en son
his uncle Then himself-armed Perceval at-that and mounted on his
ceval, et fist sa seror monter en un chaceor qu'il avoit en
horse and made his sister mount on a courser which-he had in
la maison, et s'en alerent ambedui, et tinrent lor
the house and themselves-thence went both and held their
voie desci a le maison l'ermite; et quant il vinrent a
way until to the house (of-)the-hermit and when they came to
le porte si ferirent del maillet au postic; et li ermites,
the gate so struck with-the mallet on-the postern and the hermit
qui molt fu sains hom et viels, s'en vint apoiant de
who very was holy man and old himself-thence came leaning on
se potence, et ouvri le postic, et Perceval descendi, et li
his crutch and opened the postern and Perceval dismounted and the

demisele ensement, et entrerent en le maison a l'ermite,
damsel likewise and entered into the house of the-hermit
mais lor ceval demourerent par defors, car il ne porent
but their horses remained by outside for they not could
entrer en le maison car li huis estoit si bas qu'il covint
enter into the house for the door was so low that-it behooved
Perceval a baissier a l'entrer ens. Quant li sains hom vit
Perceval to stoop at the-entering within When the holy man saw
sa niece qui venue estoit avuec le chevalier, si s'en
his niece who come was with the knight so himself-thereof
mervella molt, et li demanda por quoi çou estoit qu'ele
marveled much and of-her asked for what this was that-she
estoit avuec cel cevalier venue ne se il l'avoit prise a reubée?
was with that knight come nor if he her-had taken by robbery
Et ele li dist: 'Biaus oncles, saciés que çou est Percevaus
And she to-him said Fair uncle know that this is Perceval
li miens frere, et fu fius Alain le Gros, le vostre frere,
the my brother and was son (of-)Alain the Fat the your brother
qui s'en ala a le cort le rice roi Artu por armes
who himself-thence went to the court (of-)the rich king Arthur for arms
prendre, et il, li Diu merci, i ala, et si les a.' Quant
to-take and he the God's mercy there went and so them has When
li preudom l'oï si en fu molt liés, et li dist: 'Biaus
the worthy-man it-heard so thereof was very glad and to-him said Fair
niés, dites moi, avés vous encore esté a le maison le rice
nephew tell me have you yet been at the house (of-)the rich
Roi Pescheor, qui est mon pere, et qui li vostre taions
King Fisher who is my father and who the your grandfather
est?' Et Percevaus li respondi qu'il l'avoit molt quis, mais
is And Perceval to-him answered that-he it-had much sought but
il n'i avoit pas encore esté. Et li preudom respondi:
he not-there had at-all yet been And the worthy-man answered

‘Biaus niés, saciés que a la caisne, la u nous seÿmes,
Fair nephew know that at the oak there where we sat
oïmes la vois del Saint Esperit qui nos commanda a aler
we-heard the voice of-the Holy Spirit which us commanded to go
en alienes terres vers Occidant, et si commanda Bron le
into foreign lands toward West and so commanded Bron the
mien pere qu’il i venist en ceste partie la u li
my father that-he there should-come into this part there where the
solaus avaloit, et si dist la vois que de Alain le Gros
sun went-down and so said the voice that from Alain the Fat
naisteroit uns oirs qui le Graal aroit en se baillie, et
would-be-born an heir who the Grail would-have in his keeping and
dist que li Rois Pesciere ne poroit morir dusqu’a tant que
said that the King Fisher not could die until-to so-much that
vous ariés esté a se cort, et quant vous i ariés esté
you would-have been at his court and when you there would-have been
il seroit garis, et vous bailleroit sa grasse et son vaissel,
he would-be healed and you would-give his grace and his vessel
et seriés sire del sanc Nostre Segnor Jesus Christ.
and you-would-be lord of-the blood (of-)Our Lord Jesus Christ
Or gardés que vous soiés preudom, et vous proi que de
Now take-care that you be worthy-man and you I-pray that of
chevalier ocire ne vous caille, mais deportés les, et soufrés
knight killing not to-you it-matter but spare them and suffer
en maintes manieres, por l’ame a la vostre mere, et proiés
in many manners for the-soul of the your mother and pray
a Nostre Segnor qu’il ait de vous pitié, car saciés que
to Our Lord that-he may-have on you pity for know that
por la dolor que vostre mere ot de vous est ele morte.
for the sorrow that your mother had of you is she dead
Or si vous proi qu’il vous en soviegne et soiés curieus
Now so you I-pray that-it to-you thereof may-remember and be careful

de vous garder de pecier ne de faire vilainne oevre, car
of yourself guarding from sinning nor from doing villainous work for
vous estes d'une lignie qui molt a Nostre Segnor amé, et
you are of-a lineage which much has Our Lord loved and
il les a tant essauciés qu'il les a doné sa car et son
he them has so-much exalted that-he them has given his flesh and his
sanc a garder.' Et Percevaus respondi: 'Sire, Dex me laist
blood to keep And Perceval answered Lord God me let
son service faire en tele maniere que je soie a se volenté.'
his service do in such manner that I be at his will
Et li preudom en pria Nostre Segnor, et assés li
And the worthy-man thereof prayed Our Lord and many to-him
dist le preudom de buenes paroles que je ne vous puis
said the worthy-man of good words that I not to-you can
retraire, mais tant vous puis je bien dire que Percevaus
relate but so-much to-you can I well say that Perceval
i demoura toute la nuit dusqu'al demain, que Percevaus
there remained all the night until-the morrow that Perceval
oï le messe del preudome en le capele, et quant il ot
heard the mass of-the worthy-man in the chapel and when he had
le messe oïe, et le preudom se fu desvestus des armes
the mass heard and the worthy-man himself was unclothed of-the arms
a Nostre Segnor, si vint Percevaus a lui, et l'enclina molt
of Our Lord so came Perceval to him and him-bowed-to very
humblement et prist congié a lui, et dist qu'il voloit aler
humbly and took leave of him and said that-he wished to-go
en son afaire qu'il avoit empris; et li preudom proia a
in his affair that-he had undertaken and the worthy-man prayed to
Nostre Segnor qu'il li envoit tempre trover le maison
Our Lord that-he to-him may-send soon find the house
son pere. Atant s'en issi Percevaus fors de le maison,
(of-)his father At-that himself-thence went Perceval out of the house

et vint a son ceval, et i monta et fist monter se seror.
and came to his horse and thereon mounted and made mount his sister
Atant s'en torna, et li preudom demeura tot plorant,
At-that himself-thence turned and the worthy-man remained all weeping
et Percevaus cevauça grant aleüre entre lui et se seror qui
and Perceval rode great pace between him and his sister who
molt avoit grant joie de son frere. Ensi com il cevauçoient,
very had great joy of her brother Thus as they rode
et estoient ja près de lor castel, et s'aresta joste
and were already near to their castle and himself-stopped beside
une crois, u Percevaus aloit sovent s'esbanoier quant il
a cross where Perceval went often himself-to-amuse when he
manoit en le maison se mere, si vit venir .j. chevalier
dwelt in the house (of-)his mother so saw come a knight
tot armé sor un ceval, et el venir qu'il fist s'escria
all armed upon a horse and in-the coming that-he made himself-cried
molt hautement, 'Par Diu, dans cevaliers, saciés que le
very loudly By God sir knight know that the
demisele n'en poés vous pas mener se envers moi ne
damsel not-thence can you at-all lead if against me not
le poés calengier. Et Percevaus l'oï molt bien, mais ainc
her you-can claim And Perceval it-heard very well but ever
mot ne li respondi, ains estoit si pensis a son afaire
word not to-him answered rather was so pensive on his affair
qu'il ne pensoit rien a çou que cil cevaliers li escrioit.
that-he not thought anything on this that that knight to-him cried
Et li chevaliers, qui molt en fu dolans, vint cevauçant
And the knight who very thereof was grieved came riding
par molt grant aleüre, et avoit le lance brandie, et bien
at very great pace and had the lance brandished and well
saciés qu'il en eüst Perceval feru si se suer ne li
know that-he therewith would-have Perceval struck if his sister not to-him

eüst escrié, et li dist: 'Perceval biau frere, gardés vous,
had cried and to-him said Perceval fair brother guard yourself
u cis chevaliers vous ocira!' Quant Percevaus l'oï si le
or this knight you will-kill When Perceval it-heard so it
tint a grant mervelle, car tant pensoit a son afaire et a
held for great marvel for so-much he-thought on his affair and on
le demisele qui son braket li avoit baillié, qu'il ne se
the damsel who her hound to-him had given that-he not himself
dounoit garde del chevalier, mais quant il l'ot quoisi si
gave heed of-the knight but when he him-had spied so
torna le cief de son ceval, et le laissa corre vers celui qui
turned the head of his horse and it let run toward him who
venoit. Et li chevaliers revint d'autele maniere encontre lui,
came And the knight came-again of-such-like manner toward him
et fist cascuns grant samblant de son compagnon grever.
and made each-one great show of his companion harming
Li cevaliers feri Perceval de le lance en l'escu, si qu'il
The knight struck Perceval with the lance on the-shield so that-he
li frainst et perça, mais li haubers fu fors, qu'il ne le
for-him broke and pierced but the hauberk was strong so-that-he not it
pot empirier; si vola se hanste en asteles. Et Percevaus li
could impair so flew his shaft into splinters And Perceval to-him
ra se hanste assise en l'escu de tel aïr qu'il i mist
again-has his shaft set on the-shield with such fury that-he therein put
toute sa force, et bien saciés que ainc escus ne haubers ne
all his strength and well know that ever shield nor hauberk not
li fu garans qu'il ne li mesist la lance parmi le pis,
to-him was warrant that-he not to-him put the lance through the chest
et le hurta par tel mautalent qu'il le fist voler a le terre
and him struck with such ill-will that-he him made fly to the earth
tot estendu, et au chaïr qu'il fist si li creva li cuers,
all stretched-out and at-the falling that-he made so to-him burst the heart

et morut illueques, qu'onques pié ne main ne li lait
and he-died there so-that-ever foot nor hand not to-him it-lets
remuer. Et lors li dist Perceval: 'Par Diu, dans chevaliers,
move And then to-him said Perceval By God sir knight
par le vostre forfait vous est damages venus, et bien sai
through the your misdeed to-you is harm come and well I-know
que miels vous venist que vous vous eüssiés teüt, que
that better to-you it-would-have-come that you yourself had silenced than
moi avoir sivi en tele maniere, et si m'en poise que je
me to-have followed in such manner and so me-thereof it-grieves that I
vous ai ocis; jou amaisse miels que je vous eüsse conquis,
you have killed I would-love better that I you had conquered
car grans peciés est de chevalier ocire.' Lors prist le ceval,
for great sin it-is of knight to-kill Then he-took the horse
et s'en torna et vint a se seror, et li rendi. Atant
and himself-thence turned and came to his sister and to-her gave-it At-that
s'en tornerent grant aleüre et vinrent a lor manoir,
themselves-thence turned great pace and came to their manor
et descendirent maintenant, et li serjant a le demisele
and dismounted at-once and the sergeants of the damsel
vinrent encontre aus, et prisent lor cevaus, et les menerent
came toward them and took their horses and them led
en l'estable, et furent molt bien aaisié, mais forment
into the-stable and were very well eased but greatly
s'en mervellierent del ceval que Perceval avoit amené,
themselves-thereof marveled of-the horse that Perceval had brought
et vinrent a lui, et le desarmerent molt cortoisement.
and came to him and him disarmed very courteously
Et quant il fu desarmés si misent li serjant le table, et
And when he was disarmed so set the sergeants the table and
Percevaus manga avuec se seror, et quant il ot mangié si
Perceval ate with his sister and when he had eaten so

se couça un poi dormir et por çou qu'il avoit le nuit
himself lay-down a little sleep and for this that-he had the night
devant vellié. Et quant il ot un poi dormi si se leva et
before watched And when he had a little slept so himself rose and
demanda ses armes, et s'arma erraument, et quant se
asked his arms and himself-armed straightway and when his
seror le vit armer si en ot grant dolor a son cuer, et
sister him saw arm so thereof had great sorrow at her heart and
vint a lui, si li dist: 'Qu'est çou, Perceval, biaus frere?
came to him so to-him said What-is this Perceval fair brother
que volés vous faire? Vous en volés vous aler sans moi,
what wish you to-do You thence wish you to-go without me
et laissier seule en ceste forest?' Et Perceval li dist: 'Bele
and to-leave alone in this forest And Perceval to-her said Fair
suer, saciés que si je puis retorner a vous en nule maniere,
sister know that if I can return to you in any manner
que je i retornerai, et vous conselleraï a mon pooir ensi
that I there shall-return and you shall-counsel to my power thus
com faire doi, mais a ceste fois ne vuel je plus demorer.'
as do I-ought but at this time not wish I more to-remain

Perceval meets a knight riding with a hideous damsel whom he kisses tenderly; when Perceval laughs, the knight challenges him. Perceval defeats him and learns that he is the Fair Wicked and she is Rosette the Fair, whom he loves more than his own eyes. He sends them to Arthur's court, where Kay mocks Rosette's beauty, Arthur rebukes him, and she stays with the queen.

Quant le demisele l'oï si en ot molt grant pitié, et plora
When the damsel it-heard so thereof had very great pity and wept
molt tenrement, mais Perceval le reconforte au miels qu'il
very tenderly but Perceval her comforts at-the best that-he
pot, et li dist qu'au plus procainement qu'il pora
could and to-her said that-at-the most soon that-he will-be-able
revenra a li. Atant demanda son ceval, et monta
he-will-come-back to her At-that he-asked his horse and mounted
isnelement com cil qui n'avoit cure de sejorner, et commanda
swiftly as he who not-had care of sojourning and commended
se seror a Diu, et ele lui, tot plorant et molt irié, mais ele
his sister to God and she him all weeping and very grieved but she
n'en pot el faire. Et Percevaus, puis qu'il se fu departis
not-thereof could else do And Perceval since that-he himself was departed
de se seror, cevauça tot le jor qu'onques aventure ne trova, ne
from his sister rode all the day so-that-ever adventure not he-found nor
ostel u il se pot herbregier; et saciés qu'il li covint le
lodging where he himself could lodge and know that-it him behooved the
nuit gesir en le forest, et osta son ceval le frain, et pait
night to-lie in the forest and removed from-his horse the bridle and it-grazes
toute nuit l'erbe, et la rousee qui molt estoit bele et drue,
all night the-grass and the dew which very was fair and thick
et Perceval le gaita toute le nuit qu'onques ne dormi. Au
and Perceval it watched all the night so-that-ever not he-slept At-the

matin, quant l'aube fu crevée, si se leva, et restrainst son
morning when the-dawn was broken so himself rose and girthed-again his
ceval, et ratira ses armes, et monta, et cevauça tot le jor.
horse and arranged-again his arms and mounted and rode all the day
Molt li plot la matinée, car la forès estoit grande et
Much him pleased the morning for the forest was great and
parcreüe, et oï la matinée les oiseaus esbaudir, qui molt
full-grown and heard the morning the birds rejoice who very
durement li plorent. Ensi com il cevauçoit si regarda par
greatly him pleased Thus as he rode so looked by
devant lui, et vit .j. chevalier venir sor .j. ceval, et une
before him and saw a knight come upon a horse and a
demisele dejoste lui, qui estoit de le plus mervelleuse faiture
damsel beside him who was of the most marvelous make
qu'onques nus hom veïst, car saciés qu'ele avoit le col, et le
that-ever any man saw for know that-she had the neck and the
viaire, et les mains plus noires que fers, et si avoit toutes
face and the hands more black than iron and so had all
les jambes tortes, et si ouel estoient plus rouge que feus,
the legs twisted and her eyes were more red than fire
et si avoit par vreté entre .ij. uels plainne paume. Et por
and so had by truth between two eyes full palm And for
voir vous puis je bien dire qu'il n'en paroit sor l'arçon
true to-you can I well say that-it not-thereof appeared upon the-saddle-bow
plus de plain pié, et avoit les piés et les jambes si croçues
more than full foot and had the feet and the legs so crooked
qu'ele ne les pooit tenir es estriers, et estoit trecie a une
that-she not them could hold in-the stirrups and was braided in one
trece, et saciés que le trece estoit corte et noire, et miels
braid and know that the braid was short and black and better
resambloit a estre li keue d'un rat qu'autre cose ne fist, et
resembled to be the tail of-a rat than-other thing — did and

cevauçoit molt orguelleusement, et tenoit se corgie en se
rode very proudly and held her whip in her
main, et avoit mise par noblece sa jambe sor le col de son
hand and had put through nobleness her leg upon the neck of her
palefroi, et ensi cevauçoit encoste le chevalier, et l'acoloit
palfrey and thus rode beside the knight and him-embraced
et baisoit de fois a autre molt doucement, et il li autresi.
and kissed from time to other very sweetly and he her likewise
Quant Percevaus le vit si s'aresta et se segna a
When Perceval her saw so himself-stopped and himself crossed at
mervelles, et commença a rire molt durement; et quant li
marvels and began to laugh very hard and when the
chevaliers le vit rire de s'amie, si en ot molt grant duel,
knight him saw laugh at his-friend so thereof had very great grief
et vint a Perceval et li demanda qu'il avoit a rire, et
and came to Perceval and of-him asked what-he had to laugh and
por quoi il s'estoit ensi segniés .iij. fois. Et Percevaus li
for what he himself-was thus crossed three times And Perceval to-him
respondi: 'Je le vous dirai. Quant je vis cel diable cevauçier
answered I it to-you shall-tell When I saw that devil ride
avuec vous, saciés que je en euc paor, et por çou me
with you know that I thereof had fear and for this myself
segnai. Et quant je vi qu'ele vous acoloit et baisoit, si en
crossed And when I saw that-she you embraced and kissed so thereof
commençai a rire por le maleürte acomplir. Mais or me
I-began to laugh for the misfortune to-fulfill But now to-me
dites par amors, et sans corous, dont ele vous vint, et si
tell by love and without anger whence she to-you came and if
çou est diables u feme? Car saciés, qui me donroit tot le
this is devil or woman For know who to-me would-give all the
roiaume de Logres n'en le lairoie jou en ma compagnie
kingdom of Logres not-for-it her would-leave I in my company

.iij. jors, car je me douteroie qu'ele ne m'estranlast u
three days for I myself would-fear that-she — me-would-strangle or
ocesist.' Quant li chevaliers l'entendi si en ot molt grant
kill When the knight it-heard so thereof had very great
ire qu'il en devint tous vermaus, et respondi par molt
wrath that-he thereof became all red and answered with very
grant aïr: 'Chevaliers, or saciés que vous ne me peüssiés
great fury Knight now know that you not me could
avoir plus coureçié quant vous avés de celi gabé et ris
have more angered when you have of her mocked and laughed
que jou aim autant comme mon cuer, et qui tant me
whom I love as-much as my heart and who so-much to-me
samble bele qu'il n'est dame ne demisele en cest siecle qui
seems fair that-it not-is lady nor damsel in this world who
de biauté se puist a li aparellier. Or saciés que je jamais
in beauty herself might to her compare Now know that I ever-more
ne mangerai si l'arai vengié de vostre cors, et si croi
not shall-eat until it-I-shall-have avenged on your body and so I-believe
bien que se vous en aviés autant dit en son oiant qu'ele
well that if you thereof had as-much said in her hearing that-she
en avroit si grant honte qu'ele en morroit, tant est
thereof would-have so great shame that-she thereof would-die so-much is
ele honteuse; et s'ele moroit saciés que por l'amor de li
she modest and if-she died know that for the-love of her
m'ociroie, et je vos desfi de ci en droit.' Et Percevaus
myself-I-would-kill and I you defy from here in right And Perceval
respondi: 'Se Diu plait, de vous me cuic je bien garder.'
answered If-it to-God pleases from you myself think I well to-guard
Lors s'entrelongierent .ij. arpens, et prisent les escus
Then each-other-distanced two acres and took the shields
as enarmes, et drecierent lor lances encontre mont, et
by-the straps and raised their lances toward up and

laissierent cevaus aler, et s'entreferirent si durement que andui
let horses go and each-other-struck so hard that both
s'entreabatirent des cevaus. Mais a plus tost qu'il porent
each-other-struck-down from-the horses But at most soon that-they could
releverent, et corut li uns l'autre sus molt ruistement, et
they-rose-again and ran the one the-other upon very fiercely and
se cherquierent molt ruistement as espées et feroient
each-other searched very fiercely with-the swords and struck
a maintas parmi lor hiaumes, et saciés que lor escu furent
at many through their helms and know that their shields were
molt malement atirié, et se feroient si durement des
very badly arrayed and each-other struck so hard with-the
espées que çou estoit grans mervelle qu'il ne s'entrocioient,
swords that this was great marvel that-they not each-other-killed
et si fesissent il se il fussent ausi novel com il furent
and so would-have-done they if they were as fresh as they were
au commencier, mais il estoient si lassé que li colp
at-the beginning but they were so weary that the blows
qu'il dounoient estoient molt afoibloié. Lors si resvertua
that-they gave were very weakened Then so himself-exerted
Percevaus, et ot honte de çou qu'il duroit tant contre
Perceval and had shame of this that-he lasted so-long against
lui, et si li recouroit sus molt durement, et le lassa
him and so at-him ran-again upon very hard and him wearied
tant que tout le recreï, et le fist chaïr en mi le pré,
so-much that all him exhausted and him made fall in mid the meadow
et li esraça li hiaume de le teste, et li eüst
and from-him tore the helm from the head and from-him would-have
le teste colpée, mais li cevaliers li escria merci, et
the head cut but the knight to-him cried mercy and
que por Diu le laissast vivre. Et quant Perceval a oï
that for God him he-should-let live And when Perceval has heard

que merci li requeroit si ne le dagna plus toucier, et
that mercy of-him he-required so not him deigned more touch and
rebouta l'espée el fuerre, et li demanda son nom, et
thrust-back the-sword in-the sheath and of-him asked his name and
li chevaliers respondi qu'il avoit non li Biaus Mauvais, et
the knight answered that-he had-as name the Fair Wicked and
Perceval respondi: 'Par mon cief, dans chevaliers, en votre
Perceval answered By my head sir knight in your
non a voir et si i a mençogne, car Biaus Mauvais
name there-is truth and so there is lie for Fair Wicked
n'estes vous mie mais Biens et Biaus, se Dex m'aït.' Et lors
not-are you at-all but Good and Fair so God me-help And then
regarda Percevaus le demisele, si ne se pot tenir qu'il
looked-at Perceval the damsel so not himself could hold that-he
ne risist et demanda au chevalier comment ele avoit non,
— laughed and asked of-the knight how she had-as name
et li chevaliers respondi qu'ele avoit non Rosete li bloie.
and the knight answered that-she had-as name Rosette the fair
'Et saciés que çou est la plus cortoise demisele que nus
And know that this is the most courteous damsel that any
hom sace, car avuec çou que li biautés est en li, si a ele
man knows for with this that the beauty is in her so has she
debuenaireté encontre, et saciés que jou ameroie miels qu'on
graciousness besides and know that I would-love better that-one
me desevrast de l'un de mes uels que de li, tant l'aim
me should-sever from the-one of my eyes than from her so-much her-love
je de buene amor!' 'Par ma foi, cevaliers, dont ne seroit
I with good love By my faith knight then not would-be
il mie bien cortois qui vos departiroit, mais il vos covient
he at-all well courteous who you would-part but it you behooves
que vous me fienciés par foi que vous irés a le cort le
that you me pledge by faith that you will-go to the court (of-)the

rice roi Artu, et vous rendrés prison de par moi, et
rich king Arthur and yourself will-render prisoner from by me and
si menrés cele demisele avuec vous, et le presenterés a le
so will-lead that damsel with you and her will-present to the
roïne.' Et li chevaliers respont: 'Sire, ce ferai je volentiers,
queen And the knight answers Lord this shall-do I gladly
car il n'a buene cort el monde que je ne li oseroie
for it not-there-is good court in-the world that I not her would-dare
bien mener, comme por cortoise et por vaillant; mais dites
well lead as for courteous and for worthy but tell
moi de par cui je me rendrai prison?' Et il respont: 'De
me from by whom I myself shall-render prisoner And he answers From
par Perceval le Galois.' Et cil respont: 'Sire volentiers,
by Perceval the Welshman And that-one answers Lord gladly
saciés que je ferai de vostre volenté de moi et de li.'
know that I shall-do of your will with me and with her

Atant se departi li chevaliers de Perceval, et ala tant
At-that himself departed the knight from Perceval and went so-long
qu'il vint a Carduel en Gales, et ci i avoit molt granment
that-he came to Carduel in Wales and here there was very greatly
de chevaliers et de barons, et de dames et de demiseles
of knights and of barons and of ladies and of damsels
qu'estoient avuec le roïne qui bien les savoit onerer, et
who-were with the queen who well them knew-how honor and
avoit li rois oï le messe, et avuec lui se baron, et le roïne
had the king heard the mass and with him his barons and the queen
erent entré en le sale, et Kex le senescaus avuec le roïne,
were entered into the hall and Kay the seneschal with the queen
et le roïne estoit entrée en sa cambre et Kex s'apoia
and the queen was entered into her chamber and Kay himself-leaned

a une fenestre, et vit le chevalier venir qui s'amie amenoit
at a window and saw the knight come who his-friend brought
a le cort et s'en venoient molt orguelleusement.
to the court and themselves-thence came very proudly
Quant Kex le senescaus vit le demisele venir si en ot
When Kay the seneschal saw the damsel come so thereof had
molt grant joie en son cuer, et sali jus de le fenestre, et
very great joy in his heart and leapt down from the window and
vint a courant en le cambre la u li roïne estoit, et li
came at running into the chamber there where the queen was and to-her
dist, 'Dame, venés veoir, saciés que ci vient uns chevaliers
said Lady come see know that here comes a knight
qui amainne le plus bele demisele avuecques lui qu'onques
who brings the most fair damsel with him that-ever
veïst nus hom, car tout celes de le vostre cort n'ont nient
saw any man for all those of the your court not-have anything
de biauté envers le soie, mais por Diu or penser de li
of beauty toward the hers but for God now think of her
onerer, et de faire tant qu'ele demourast avuec vous; et
honoring and of doing so-much that-she should-remain with you and
ausi m'aït Dex que jou volroie en buene foi que toutes
so me-may-help God that I would-wish in good faith that all
celes del roiaume de Logres fussent de se biauté.' Et
those of-the kingdom of Logres were of her beauty And
la roïne respond: 'Biaus Sire Kex, ce ne volroie je mie,
the queen answers Fair Lord Kay this not would-wish I at-all
car saciés que vous m'ariés mise en grant painne et en
for know that you me-would-have put in great pain and in
grant malaventure, que vous et li autre chevalier de çaiens
great misadventure for you and the other knights of herein
les me volriés toutes tolir!' Lors dist a ses demiseles:
them from-me would-wish all to-take Then she-said to her damsels

‘Alons la fors por veïr se cele demisele a si grant biauté
Let-us-go there out for to-see if that damsel has so great beauty
com Kex li senescaus nos fait entendant.’ Lors s’en
as Kay the seneschal us makes understanding Then themselves-thence
vinrent as fenestres de le sale, et quant eles virent venir
came to-the windows of the hall and when they saw come
le chevalier et le demisele si s’en esmervellierent
the knight and the damsel so themselves-thereof marveled
molt, et se segnierent forment, et commencierent a
much and themselves crossed greatly and began to
rire, et li roïne huça ses puceles et lor dist, tot riant:
laugh and the queen called her maidens and to-them said all laughing
‘Demiseles, or poés vous bien savoir que Kex li senescaus
Damsels now can you well know that Kay the seneschal
nous aimme durement, car grant onor vous a hui sohaidié.’
us loves greatly for great honor for-you has today wished
Et Kex vint au roi et as barons et lor dist qu’il
And Kay came to-the king and to-the barons and to-them said that-they
venissent veoir, et li rois et li baron s’en vinrent
should-come see and the king and the barons themselves-thence came
as fenestres, et avuec la roïne, et commencierent a gaber,
to-the windows and with the queen and began to jest
et li roïne aconta le roi et les barons le souhait Keu, et
and the queen told the king and the barons the wish (of-)Kay and
il en commencierent tot a rire et en faire grant joie.
they thereof began all to laugh and thereof make great joy
Atant vint li cevaliers, et descendi devant le sale, et
At-that came the knight and dismounted before the hall and
prist se demisele entre ses bras, et le mist molt doucement
took his damsel between his arms and her put very sweetly
jus del palefroi, et s’en vinrent andui en le sale
down from-the palfrey and themselves-thence came both into the hall

main a main, et vinrent andoi devant le roi Artu, et
hand in hand and came both before the king Arthur and
li cevaliers s'aresta enmi le sale et salua le roi et tous
the knight himself-stopped amid the hall and greeted the king and all
les barons de par Perceval le Galois, et si dist qu'il se
the barons from by Perceval the Welshman and so said that-he himself
metoit en sa prison de par lui. 'Et me demisele Rozain, qui
put in his prison from by him And my damsel Rosette who
tant a le vis cler, que jou aim autant et plus que mon
so-much has the face bright whom I love as-much and more than my
cuer, a il envoiée a la roïne por metre en ses cambres.'
heart has he sent to the queen for to-put in her chambers
Et quant Kex li senescaus l'a oï si ne se pot tenir
And when Kay the seneschal it-has heard so not himself could hold
qu'il ne parlast, et dist a le roïne: 'Dame merciés l'ent,
that-he — spoke and said to the queen Lady thank him-thereof
et si vous proi que vous l'en alés au pié car tel
and so you I-pray that you him-thereof go to-the foot for such
present vous a hui doné que jamais n'iert eure que vous
present to-you has today given that ever-more not-will-be hour that you
n'en soiés onerée, et les puceles de vos cambres; et
not-thereby be honored and the maidens of your chambers and
nonporquant se vous le reteniés jou aroie paor que li
nevertheless if you her retained I would-have fear that the
rois ne l'amast dejoste vous.' Et lors pria le roi que
king — her-should-love beside you And then he-prayed the king that
par cele foi qu'il li devoit qu'il demandast le chevalier
by that faith that-he to-him owed that-he should-ask the knight
u il le prist, et se il en i avoit plus, et se il
where he her took and if it thereof there was more and if he
en poroit recovrer se il i aloit. Quant li rois oï Keu
thereof could recover if he there went When the king heard Kay

li senescaus si s'en coureça et li dist: 'Keu, par
the seneschal so himself-thereof angered and to-him said Kay by
la foi que vous devés Diu, laissiés vous ester, car çou est
the faith that you owe God let yourself be for this is
grans vilenie de gaber .j. estrange chevalier, et vous n'i
great villainy of mocking a strange knight and you not-there
gaagniés nule rien, et si vous en faites haïr.' Et Kex li
gain any thing and so yourself thereby make hate And Kay to-him
respondi: 'Sire, saciés que je ne le di por nule mal, ains
answered Lord know that I not it say for any ill rather
le di por le preu au chevalier, car saciés que se je l'avoie
it say for the profit of-the knight for know that if I her-had
menée en une estrange cort, que je aroie paor qu'on
led into a strange court that I would-have fear that-one
ne le me tolsist.' Et quant le rois l'oï si s'en
— her from-me should-take And when the king it-heard so himself-thereof
coureça, et li dist: 'Keu, ausi soiés vous aidiés que vous
angered and to-him said Kay so be you helped as you
ne savés miels que vous dites, et je vous commant que vous
not know better what you say and I you command that you
n'en parlés plus.' Lors vint au chevalier et l'acola,
not-thereof speak more Then he-came to-the knight and him-embraced
et li clama se prison cüite, et li dist qu'il voloit
and to-him declared his prison quit and to-him said that-he wished
qu'il fust de se maisnie d'illuec en avant, et la damoisele
that-he were of his household from-there in forward and the damsel
seroit en ses cambres avuec la roïne. Et Keu le senescaus
would-be in her chambers with the queen And Kay the seneschal
ne se pot tenir, et dist: 'Sire, dont est il buen que
not himself could hold and said Lord then is it good that
vous li donés treves des barons de çaiens, car vous ne
you to-him give truce from-the barons of herein for you not

garderés l'eure qu'il l'en aront portée por se biauté, et
will-watch the-hour that-they her-thence will-have carried for her beauty and
je counois tant le cevalier qui la est que se il l'en
I know so-much the knight who there is that if it to-him-thereof
estoit mescheü qu'il vous en apeleroit; et jou aie mal
were ill-befallen that-he you thereof would-appeal and I may-have ill
dehé se jou vous en desfendoie!' Et quant Artus l'entendi
curse if I you thereof defended And when Arthur it-heard
si s'en coureça molt, et dist: 'Keu, saciés que trop
so himself-thereof angered much and said Kay know that too
estes cruels de parole et pognans, et, par la foi que je
you-are cruel of speech and stinging and by the faith that I
doi Diu et l'ame Uter-pandragon mon pere, que se ne fust
owe God and the-soul (of-)Uther-Pendragon my father that if not were
por la fiance que je fis Entor le vostre pere, que vous
for the pledge that I made (to-)Antor the your father that you
jamais ne seriés senescaus.' Et puis embronça son viaire,
ever-more not would-be seneschal And then he-bowed his face
et dist a soi meïsme: 'Je l'en devroie bien soufrir, car
and said to him self I him-thereof ought well suffer for
toutes ces teces a il par le feme qui le nouri quant
all these traits has he through the woman who him nursed when
il fu sevrés de se mere por moi.' Et lors vint Keu et
he was weaned from his mother for me And then came Kay and
fist samblant qu'il fu coureçiés, et dist: 'Au jor aie
made show that-he was angered and said On-the day may-have
je dehé que je de li garder enterrai en soing, mais bien
I curse that I of her keeping shall-enter into care but well
vous en couviegne des ore mais.' Ensi com vous avés oï
to-you thereof may-it-befit from now more Thus as you have heard

demoura le demisele a le cort le rice roi Artu, et bien
remained the damsel at the court (of-)the rich king Arthur and well
saciés que le demisele fu puis la plus bele qu'on seüst.
know that the damsel was since the most fair that-one knew

X · THE PERILOUS FORD

At a ford Perceval defeats Urbain, son of the Queen of the Black Thorn, who guards it from a pavilion for his fairy lady, whose castle beside it no one else can see. When Perceval makes him give up the ford, her castle breaks with a great noise, and her voice curses Perceval and calls Urbain away. She and her damsels attack Perceval as black birds, and Urbain joins them; Perceval strikes one, which falls as a dead woman and is carried off. Released, Urbain vanishes with the birds and his horse.

Or dist li livres que quant Perceval se fu partis del
Now says the book that when Perceval himself was parted from-the
chevalier si erra grant partie del tans et de le saison,
knight so wandered great part of-the time and of the season
et parmi landes et parmi castiaus, qu'onques ne pot trover
and through heaths and through castles so-that-ever not could find
le maison son taion, et molt i trova d'aventures, et
the house (of-)his grandfather and many there he-found of-adventures and
tant qu'il cevauça .j. jor parmi une grant forest et garda
until that-he rode one day through a great forest and looked
devant lui, et vit .j. des plus biaus prés del monde, et
before him and saw one of-the most fair meadows of-the world and
dejoste cel pré si avoit .j. molt bel gués, et outre le
beside that meadow so there-was a very fair ford and beyond the
gué si avoit .j. pavellon tendu, et Percevaus cevauça cele
ford so there-was a pavilion pitched and Perceval rode that
part grant aleüre, et vint au gué, et volt entrer ens,
way great pace and came to-the ford and wished to-enter within

et si com il volt abevrer son ceval, si sali uns chevaliers
and so as he wished to-water his horse so leapt a knight
del pavellon molt ricement armés, et vint grant aleüre
from-the pavilion very richly armed and came great pace
a Perceval et li escria: 'Por Diu, dans cevaliers, sacés
to Perceval and to-him cried For God sir knight know
que vous mar i estes entrés, et le gué vous covenra
that you in-ill-hour there are entered and the ford you will-behoove
il comperer.' Atant s'eslaissa a lui, et le volt ferir
it to-pay-for At-that himself-launched at him and him wished to-strike
de le lance, quant il s'apensa, et vit que li chevaliers
with the lance when he himself-bethought and saw that the knight
n'avoit lance ne escu, car Percevaus s'estoit combatus a
not-had lance nor shield for Perceval himself-was fought with
un chevalier qui tout son escu li avoit depecié. Lors
a knight who all his shield for-him had broken Then
retorna arriere, et vint a une demisele qui estoit a l'uis
he-turned back and came to a damsel who was at the-door
del tref, et li dist qu'ele aportast au chevalier une
of-the tent and to-her said that-she should-bring to-the knight a
lance et .j. escu qu'ens el tref pendoit, car ce li
lance and a shield which-within in-the tent hung for this to-him
sambleroit hontes se il jostoit a lui sans escu; et ensi
would-seem shame if he jousted with him without shield and thus
com il ot commandé li demisele le fist, et le bailla a
as he had commanded the damsel it did and it gave to
Perceval, qui molt en fu liés en son cuer. Et li chevaliers
Perceval who very thereof was glad in his heart And the knight
li escria qu'il se gardast de lui car mar i
to-him cried that-he himself should-guard from him for in-ill-hour there
avoit entré el gués sans congié, et bien se gart,
he-had entered in-the ford without leave and well himself let-him-guard

car il li fera comperer se il puet. Lors s'entrecorurent
for he him will-make pay-for if he can Then each-other-ran
sus molt ruistement, et se ferirent molt ruistement, et
upon very fiercely and each-other struck very fiercely and
bien saciés que les lances volérent en piéces, et Percevaus
well know that the lances flew in pieces and Perceval
le hurta si angoisseusement qu'il le porta jus del ceval
him struck so violently that-he him bore down from-the horse
tout estendu en mi le pré, et au chaïr li vola li
all stretched-out in mid the meadow and at-the falling from-him flew the
hiaumes fors de le teste par les las qui furent rompu.
helm off of the head through the laces which were broken
Lors mist Percevaus pié a terre et descendi jus del ceval,
Then put Perceval foot to earth and got down from-the horse
car çou samblast honte de ferir hom a pié. Lors li
for this would-seem shame of striking man on foot Then at-him
courut sus a l'espée et li douna tant de cols qu'il le
he-ran upon with the-sword and to-him gave so-many of blows that-he him
conquist, et li pria merci, et se rendi a lui prison;
conquered and of-him he-prayed mercy and himself rendered to him prisoner
et Percevaus li dist qu'il n'aura ja de lui nule merci
and Perceval to-him said that-he not-will-have ever from him any mercy
se il ne li dist ançois por quoi il desfent a abevrer
if he not to-him tells first for what he forbids to watering
el gué, et por quoi il joste as chevaliers ne laidoie
in-the ford and for what he jousts with-the knights nor mistreats
por tel afaire, et il li respont: 'Sire, je le vous dirai.
for such affair and he to-him answers Lord I it to-you shall-tell
'Sire, saciés que jou ai non Urbains, et sui fius a
Lord know that I have-as name Urbain and am son of
le roïne de le Noire Espine, et si me fist chevalier le
the queen of the Black Thorn and so me made knight the

rois Artus en se sale a Carduel, et puis qu'il m'ot fait
king Arthur in his hall at Carduel and since that-he me-had made
chevalier jou errai par le païs et trovai mains chevalier,
knight I wandered through the country and found many knights
et me combati a aus, et bien vous di que je onques
and myself fought with them and well to-you I-say that I ever
ne trovai chevalier que je n'outrasse d'armes. Et tant que
not found knight that I not-overcame in-arms And until that
je cevauçai une nuit ensi comme aventure me menoit, et
I rode one night thus as adventure me led and
saciés que le nuit plut si bien que Dex l'avoit molt bien
know that the night it-rained so well that God it-had very well
u prendre; et tounoit et espartissoit li airs et esclairoit
where take and thundered and flashed the air and lightened
si angoisseusement que je ne savoie que je peüsse devenir,
so anguishedly that I not knew what I might become
et m'en aloie si angoissement tost que ce sambloit
and myself-thence went so anguishedly fast that it seemed
que li diables m'enportassent, et mes cevaus avoit si grant
that the devils me-were-carrying-off and my horse had so great
paor que je ne li pooie retenir, si m'emportoit maugré mi.
fear that I not it could hold-back so me-carried-off despite me
Et saciés que derriere moi venoit uns esfrois si grans que
And know that behind me came a din so great that
ce sambloit que li arbre esraçassent derriere moi, et en
it seemed that the trees were-uprooting behind me and in
cele dolor u jou estoie si vi venir une demisele devant
that sorrow where I was so I-saw come a damsel before
moi, sor .j. mul, le mellor que je onques veïsse, et ensi
me upon a mule the best that I ever saw and thus
cevauçoit grant aleüre, et si tost com je le vi si m'aroutai
she-rode great pace and so soon as I her saw so myself-set-out

aprés li, et me penai molt de li ataindre mais il faisoit si
after her and myself strove much to her overtake but it made so
noire nuit que jamais ne le coneüsse, ne fust par le
black night that ever-more not her I-would-have-known not were-it through the
ciel qui espartissoit, et tant le sivi qu'ele entra en .j.
sky which flashed and so-long her I-followed that-she entered into one
des plus biaus castiaus del monde, et je me ferai après
of-the most fair castles of-the world and I myself thrust after
li, et si tost com ele entra en le sale si fui jou avuec li.
her and so soon as she entered into the hall so was I with her
Et quant ele me vit el chastel si vint encontre moi, et
And when she me saw in-the castle so came toward me and
m'acola, et me fist jus metre mes armes, et me fist
me-embraced and me made down put my arms and for-me made
le nuit molt rice ostel, et je m'eshardi tant le nuit
the night very rich lodging and I myself-emboldened so-much the night
que je l'amai, et li requis s'amor, et ele me dist qu'ele
that I her-loved and of-her asked her-love and she to-me said that-she
m'ameroit volentiers par .j. covent qu'ele i metroit, et je
me-would-love gladly by a covenant that-she thereto would-put and I
li dis que je feroie del tout a se volenté, ja cele cose
to-her said that I would-do in-the all at her will ever that thing
ne me diroit; et ele me dist que se je voloie illuec
not to-me she-would-say and she to-me said that if I wished there
demourer avuec li, et que je n'alaisse par le païs, qu'ele
to-remain with her and that I not-went through the country that-she
seroit m'amie. Et je dis que je feroie se volenté, mais
would-be my-friend And I said that I would-do her will but
molt me seroit grief se je laissoie le chevalerie ester. Et
very to-me would-be grievous if I left the chivalry be And
ele dist: 'Biaus amis, veés illuec .j. gué, et vous tendrés
she said Fair friend see there a ford and you shall-pitch

illuec .j. pavellon, et nus chevalier qui voist par le païs,
there a pavilion and any knight who may-go through the country
ne verra cest castel fors le pavellon, et josterés as
not will-see this castle except the pavilion and you-shall-joust with-the
chevaliers qui volront abevrer el gué, et ensi porés
knights who will-wish to-water in-the ford and thus you-will-be-able
avoir le deduit de moi et maintenrés chevalerie.' Et je
have the delight of me and will-maintain chivalry And I
li otroiai ensi, et ai mes près d'un an a cest gué
to-her granted thus and have dwelt near of-a year at this ford
avuec m'amie, et ai puis ce di eü quanque je voloie. Et
with my-friend and have since this day had whatever I wished And
li castiaus siet illuec dejoste le pavellon que tu pues veïr,
the castle sits there beside the pavilion which thou canst see
mais le castel ne poroit nus veïr fors moi seulement et
but the castle not could anyone see except me only and
m'amie, et les demiseles qui avuec li sont. Et bien saciés
my-friend and the damsels who with her are And well know
qu'il n'a que .viii. jors desci a mon an, et se cist .viii.
that-it not-there-is but eight days until to my year and if these eight
jors fussent passé jou eüsse esté li mieldres chevaliers
days were passed I would-have been the best knight
del monde, mais Dex ne l'a m'a mie consenti. Or saces
of-the world but God not it-has to-me at-all consented Now know
que je sui a ton commandement d'ocire u de laier vivre, et
that I am at thy command of-killing or of letting live and
tu demoerras ici se tu vuels, et garderas le gué, desci a
thou shalt-remain here if thou wishest and shalt-guard the ford until to
un an, et se tu vuels demourer .j. an tu auras le pris
one year and if thou wishest to-remain one year thou wilt-have the prize
del siecle, porouec que tu ne soies conquis de chevalier.'
of-the world provided that thou not be conquered by knight

Quant Percevaus l'entendi si li respondi: 'Amis, saciés
When Perceval it-heard so to-him answered Friend know
que je n'i demouerroie mie en nule maniere, mais je vuel
that I not-there would-remain at-all in any manner but I wish
que vous laiez le gué ester, et que jamais cevalier qui ci
that you leave the ford be and that ever-more knight who here
endroit viegne ne destorbés.' Et li cevaliers respont: 'Sire,
right may-come not you-disturb And the knight answers Lord
je ferai, quel gré que je en aie, vostre plaisir, car je
I shall-do what will that I thereof may-have your pleasure for I
vois bien que vous estes au desus de moi.' Tot ensi com
see well that you are at-the above of me All thus as
Perceval parloit au chevalier et il li desfendoit le Gué
Perceval spoke to-the knight and he him forbade the Ford
Perellos a garder, si oï une si grant tumulte qu'il li
Perilous to guard so heard a so great tumult that-it to-him
sambla que toute le forès fondist en abisme, et de cele
seemed that all the forest sank into abyss and from that
noise, qui si grans estoit, issi une fumée et une si grans
noise which so great was came-out a smoke and a so great
tenebrors que li uns ne pot veïr l'autre, si fust on alé près
darkness that the one not could see the-other so were one gone near
de demie liue. De cele tenebrors si issi une vois molt
of half league From that darkness so came-out a voice very
grans et molt dolerouse, et dist itant: 'Perceval li Galois
great and very grievous and said this-much Perceval the Welshman
maléois soies tu de quanques nos poons faire entre nous
cursed be thou by whatever we can do among us
dames, car tu nous fais hui la forçor dolor avoir qu'onques
ladies for thou us makest today the greatest sorrow have that-ever
mais eüssiemes, et bien saces qu'il t'en venra molt
before we-had and well know that-it to-thee-thereof will-come very

grant painne.' Et quant il ot ce dit, si s'escria li vois au
great pain And when it had this said so itself-cried the voice to-the
chevalier qu'illuec estoit dejoste Perceval tost qu'il n'i
knight who-there was beside Perceval quick that-he not-there
arrestast, et li dist: 'Se vous plus i demourés vous me
should-stop and to-him said If you more there remain you me
perdrés.' Et quant li chevaliers oï le vois si fu tos esmaris,
will-lose And when the knight heard the voice so was all dismayed
et vint a Perceval et li escria por Diu merci plus de
and came to Perceval and to-him cried for God mercy more than
.c. fois. Et quant Percevaus le vit ensi merci crier si
a-hundred times And when Perceval him saw thus mercy cry so
s'en esmervella molt, et li demanda por quoi il li
himself-thereof marveled much and of-him asked for what he to-him
crioit merci si durement. Et li chevaliers respondi: 'Ha, sire
cried mercy so hard And the knight answered Ah sir
cevaliers, por Diu laissiés m'ent aler, et me donnés congié!'
knight for God let me-thence go and me give leave
Et Perceval se teut, et se mervella molt de la vois,
And Perceval himself silenced and himself marveled much at the voice
et li chevaliers corut a son ceval, et voloit monter, mais
and the knight ran to his horse and wished to-mount but
Percevaus le saisi au pan de son hauberc, et li dist:
Perceval him seized by-the skirt of his hauberk and to-him said
'Chevaliers, par mon cief, tot ensi ne m'escaperés vous mie!'
Knight by my head all thus not me-shall-escape you at-all
Quant li cevaliers l'oï si en fu molt espoentés, et
When the knight it-heard so thereof was very frightened and
s'en retorna par devers lui, et li escria plus de
himself-thence turned by toward him and to-him cried more than
.c. fois merci, et que por Diu ne l'arestast, et se il
a-hundred times mercy and that for God not him-be-should-stop and if he

plus demouroit il s'ociroit. Et lors r'a oïe la vois qui
more remained he himself-would-kill And then again-has heard the voice which
li dist: 'Urbains, haste toi, u tu m'aras perdue des or
to-him said Urbain hasten thee or thou me-wilt-have lost from now
mais!' Et quant li chevaliers a oï le vois si se pasma,
more And when the knight has heard the voice so himself swooned
et Perceval fu tous esbahis, et le regarda a mervelles, et
and Perceval was all astonished and him looked-at at marvels and
lors vit entor lui si grant plenté d'oisiaus que tous li airs
then saw around him so great plenty of-birds that all the air
entor lui en fu couvers, et estoient plus noir qu'onques
around him thereof was covered and were more black than-ever
rien qu'eüst veüe, et li voloient parmi le hiaume les
thing that-he-had seen and from-him wished through the helm the
uels esracier de le teste. Et quant Percevaus les vit si en
eyes to-tear from the head And when Perceval them saw so thereof
fu molt durement esbahis, et lors revint li chevalier de
was very greatly astonished and then came-back the knight from
pasmison, et regarda entor Perceval, si vit les oisiaus, et lors
swoon and looked around Perceval so saw the birds and then
sali sus si commença molt grant joie a faire, et a rire molt
leapt up so began very great joy to make and to laugh very
durement, et dist: 'Dehait aie jou se je ne vous aïe!' Lors
hard and said Curse may-have I if I not you help Then
prist l'escu as enarmes et l'espée en le main, et recourut
took the-shield by-the straps and the-sword in the hand and ran-again
Perceval sus, et quant Perceval vit çou si en ot molt
Perceval upon and when Perceval saw this so thereof had very
grant engagne, et li escria: 'Dans chevaliers, revuels
great vexation and to-him cried Sir knight wishest-again
tu donques mellée commencier?' Et dist li chevaliers: 'Je
thou then fray to-begin And said the knight I

vos desfi!' Lors s'entrecorurent sus as espées nues molt
you defy Then each-other-ran upon with-the swords naked very
ruistement, mais a Perceval en estoit le pis, car li oisel le
fiercely but to Perceval thereof was the worse for the birds him
tenoient si cort qu'a poi qu'il ne l'abatoient a le terre. Et
held so short that-by little that-they — him-struck-down to the earth And
quant Percevaus le vit, si en ot molt grant iror, et tint
when Perceval it saw so thereof had very great anger and held
l'espée el puing destre, et fiert .j. oisel, qui plus cort le
the-sword in-the fist right and strikes a bird which most short him
tenoit, tres parmi liu del cors, si qu'il li fist salir le
held right through middle of-the body so that-he from-it made spring the
bouelee, et caï a le terre, et au caïr qu'il fist si devint
bowels and it-fell to the earth and at-the falling that-it made so became
une feme morte, et ert de le plus bele faiture qu'il onques
a woman dead and was of the most fair make that-he ever
mais veïst. Et quant Percevaus le vit si en ot molt grant
before saw And when Perceval her saw so thereof had very great
duel de çou qu'il le vit morte, et li oisel qui entor lui
grief of this that-he her saw dead and the birds which around him
estoient se traisent arriere, et corurent vers le cors et
were themselves drew back and ran toward the body and
l'enporterent en air. Et quant Percevaus vit qu'il en fut
it-carried-off into air And when Perceval saw that-he thereof was
delivrés si corut vers le chevalier, et li chevaliers li pria
delivered so ran toward the knight and the knight of-him prayed
por Diu merci, et qu'il ne l'ocesist, et Percevaus li
for God mercy and that-he not him-should-kill and Perceval to-him
respondi: 'Dont me di quele mervelle çou est que jou ai
answered Then to-me tell what marvel this is that I have
veüe?' Et cil respondi: 'Sire, je le vos dirai volentiers.
seen And that-one answered Lord I it to-you shall-tell gladly

‘Or saces que li noïse que tu oïs, et la tumulte si
Now know that the noise that thou heardest and the tumult so
grans, saces que ce fu li castiaus a me demisele qu’ele
great know that this was the castle of my damsel which-she
depeça por l’amor de moi, et li vois que tu oïs ce
broke for the-love of me and the voice that thou heardest this
fu ele qui me huça, et quant ele vit que je ne me pooie
was she who me called and when she saw that I not myself could
de toi escaper si mist li et ses demiseles en samblances
from thee escape so put herself and her damsels in likenesses
d’oisiaus, et vinrent ci por toi damagier, et por moi secorre;
of-birds and came here for thee to-harm and for me to-succor
et quant je les vi si me peuc tenir que je ne lor alaisse
and when I them saw so myself I-could hold that I not them should-go
aidier, et t’eüssiemes mort, mais je voi bien que nus ne
help and thee-we-would-have dead but I see well that anyone not
te puet empirer, et sai certainement que tu es preudom
thee can impair and I-know certainly that thou art worthy-man
envers Diu, et uns des mellors chevaliers del monde, et
toward God and one of-the best knights of-the world and
cele que tu navras, ele fu suer a m’amie, mais ele n’aura
she whom thou woundedst she was sister of my-friend but she not-will-have
garde car or ces eures est ele en Avalon. Mais por Diu te
harm for now these hours is she in Avalon But for God thee
vuel je proier que tu m’en laisses aler a me demisele qui
wish I to-pray that thou me-thence let go to my damsel who
encor m’atant.’ Et quant Perceval l’a oï si en commença
still me-awaits And when Perceval it-has heard so thereof began
a rire, et l’en a doné buenement le congié, et quant li
to laugh and him-thereof has given gladly the leave and when the
chevaliers l’oï si en ot molt grant joie, et s’en torna
knight it-heard so thereof had very great joy and himself-thence turned

tot a pié grant aleüre, car si grant joie a de çou qu'il
all on foot great pace for so great joy he-has of this that-he
li a doné congié qu'onques de ceval ne li souvint. Et
to-him has given leave so-that-ever of horse not to-him it-remembered And
n'ot mie eslongié Perceval .ij. arpens quant Percevaus se
not-he-had at-all distanced Perceval two acres when Perceval himself
regarda, et vit qu'on l'emportoit a la forçor joie del monde,
looked and saw that-one him-carried-off with the greatest joy of-the world
et vint a son ceval, et monta qu'il les cuida ataindre, mais
and came to his horse and mounted for-he them thought to-overtake but
a paine fu il montés quant il ne vit ne les demiseles
with pain was he mounted when he not saw neither the damsels
ne lui ne le ceval meïsme que joste lui estoit, et quant
nor him nor the horse itself which beside him was and when
Percevaus le vit si le tint a grant mervelle, et s'en
Perceval it saw so it held for great marvel and himself-thence
retorna arriere, et dist que folie li feroit porsivir.
turned back and said that folly to-him it-would-be to-pursue

Two naked children in a tree at a crossroads tell Perceval to take the right-hand road, and Merlin's voice confirms it. Perceval meets the Fisher King fishing in a boat, who invites him to his castle; at first Perceval cannot find it and curses him, then reaches it. Bron, too old and sick to move, is carried into the hall, and they sit down to eat.

Atant s'en torna d'illuec, et tint se voie molt pensis de
At-that himself-thence turned from-there and held his way very pensive of
son afaire, et molt souvent le resouvenoit de le mervelle qui
his affair and very often him it-remembered of the marvel which
lui estoit avenue. Ensi cevauça tot le jor qu'onques ne but
to-him was happened Thus rode all the day so-that-ever not drank
ne ne manga, et li recovint le nuit gesir en le forest,
nor not ate and him it-behooved-again the night lie in the forest
ausi com il avoit fait le nuit devant. Et au matin s'en
just as he had done the night before And at-the morning himself-thence
torna et tint son cemin si com aventure le menoit. Ensi
turned and held his road so as adventure him led Thus
cevauça tot le jor qu'onques aventure ne trova, ne ostel u
rode all the day so-that-ever adventure not he-found nor lodging where
il se peüst herbregier, et saciés qu'il li anuia molt, car il
he himself could lodge and know that-it him irked much for he
ne trovoit se haies non et buissons et boschages; si en
not found except hedges not and bushes and thickets so thereof
avoit molt grant duel en son cuer. Et ensi com il cevauçoit
had very great grief in his heart And thus as he rode
molt dolans et molt pensis, et estoit bien none passée, et
very grieved and very pensive and it-was well nones passed and
si regarda par devant lui, si vit .j. des plus biaus arbres
so looked by before him so saw one of-the most fair trees

qu'il eüst onques mais veü, et estoit sor le forc de .iiij.
that-he had ever before seen and it-was upon the fork of four
voies par dejouste une molt bele crois, et quant Percevaus
ways by beside a very fair cross and when Perceval
le vit si se torna cele part, et ci aresta molt longement,
it saw so himself turned that way and here stopped very long
et ensi com il le regardoit si volentiers si vit par desus aler
and thus as he it looked-at so gladly so saw by above go
.ij. enfans de brance en brance tos nus, et estoient bien
two children from branch to branch all naked and were well
cascuns, ce li sambla, de l'age de .vi. ans, et acoloit li
each-one it to-him seemed of the-age of six years and embraced the
uns l'autre, et juoient ensamble. Et quant il les ot assés
one the-other and played together And when he them had enough
regardés si les apela, et les conjura del Pere et del Fil
looked-at so them called and them conjured by-the Father and by-the Son
et del Saint Esperit que, se il estoient de par Diu, qu'il
and by-the Holy Spirit that if they were from by God that-they
parlassent a lui, et li uns des .ij. enfans s'aresta, et
should-speak to him and the one of-the two children himself-stopped and
s'asist, et li dist: 'Chevaliers qui nous a conjurés, saces
himself-sat and to-him said Knight who us has conjured know
que de par Diu vivons nous, et saces que de cel Paradis
that from by God live we and know that from that Paradise
terrestre dont Adans fu jetés venimes nous por parler a
earthly whence Adam was cast came we for to-speak to
toi, par le congié del Saint Esperit. Tu es entrés en le
thee by the leave of-the Holy Spirit Thou art entered into the
queste del Graal, que Bron tes taion a en garde, qu'on
quest of-the Grail which Bron thy grandfather has in keeping whom-one
apele en mainte contrée le Roi Pescheor, et tu t'en
calls in many-a country the King Fisher and thou thyself-thence

iras ceste voie a destre par devant toi, et saces qu'ançois
shalt-go this way to right by before thee and know that-before
que tu en isses verras tel cose par quoi tu afineras
that thou thence go-out thou-shalt-see such thing through which thou wilt-end
ton travail se tu es teus que venir i doies.' Et quant
thy toil if thou art such that come there thou-must And when
Perceval a oïe si faite merveille si pensa un poi, et garda
Perceval has heard so made marvel so thought a little and looked
aval, et quant il se regarda si ne vit ne l'arbre, ne les
down and when he himself looked so not saw neither the-tree nor the
.ij. enfans, ne le crois qu'il avoit devant veüe; si li vint
two children nor the cross that-he had before seen so to-him came
a le gregnor merveille del monde, et si pensa molt en son
to the greatest marvel of-the world and so thought much in his
cuer, et se pensa et douta que ce ne fust fanthosmes.
heart and himself bethought and feared that this — were phantom

Ensi com il estoit en cele pensée qu'il ne savoit que faire,
Thus as he was in that thought that-he not knew what to-do
se il iroit le voie que li doi enfant li avoient ensagnie,
if he would-go the way that the two children to-him had shown
si vit .j. molt grant ombre par devant lui aler et venir, et
so saw a very great shadow by before him go and come and
passa plus de .iiij. fois en .j. tenant, et li cevaus sor quoi
passed more than four times in one holding and the horse upon which
Percevaus seoit s'en commença molt durement a esmaier,
Perceval sat itself-thence began very greatly to take-fright
et fronçoit, et tressaloit. Et quant Perceval le vit si en fu
and snorted and started And when Perceval it saw so thereof was
en grant dotance, et fist le signe de le vraie crois sor lui
in great doubt and made the sign of the true cross upon himself
et sor son ceval, et lors issi de l'ombre une vois, et li
and upon his horse and then came-out of the-shadow a voice and to-him

dist: 'Perceval, Merlins dont tu as tant oï parler te
said Perceval Merlin of-whom thou hast so-much heard speak thee
fait savoir que tu n'aies mie en despit çou que li doi
makes know that thou not-may-have at-all in contempt this that the two
enfant t'ont ensagnié, car saces que cil ensagnemens vient
children thee-have shown for know that this showing comes
de par Jesus Christ, Nostre Sauveor, et se tu es preudom
from by Jesus Christ Our Savior and if thou art worthy-man
saces qu'ançois que tu isses del cemin a destre, que par le
know that-before that thou go-out of-the road to right which by the
volenté Nostre Segnor t'est ensagniés, aras tu acomplie
will (of-)Our Lord to-thee-is shown wilt-have thou fulfilled
la prophesie que Nostre Sire commanda a Joseph.' Quant
the prophecy that Our Lord commanded to Joseph When
Percevaus a oïe ceste vois si en fu molt liés, et l'apela
Perceval has heard this voice so thereof was very glad and it-he-called
par .iij. fois por çou qu'il voloit encore parler a lui, mais il ne
by three times for this that-he wished still to-speak to it but it not
li respondi mie. Et quant Percevaus vit qu'il ne parleroit a
to-him answered at-all And when Perceval saw that-it not would-speak to
lui, si s'en torna la voie que li doi enfant li avoient
him so himself-thence turned the way that the two children to-him had
ensagnié, et ala le plainne voie, et saciés que tant que li
shown and went the plain way and know that so-long as the
plainne voie li dura, si erra molt a mesaise, car il amoit
plain way to-him lasted so he-wandered much in hardship for he loved
miels a aler parmi le forest qu'il ne fesist a le plainne voie.
better to go through the forest than-he — did by the plain way

Ensi com il cevauçoit si s'enbati sor une molt bele praerie,
Thus as he rode so himself-came upon a very fair meadow
et au cief de cel pré si avoit une molt bele riviere,
and at-the head of that meadow so there-was a very fair river

et molt rices moulins, et cevauça cele part, et vit enmi le
and very rich mills and he-rode that way and saw amid the
riviere .iij. homes en une nef. Lors les aproisma Percevaus,
river three men in a ship Then them approached Perceval
et vit enmi le batel .j. molt viel home gisant sor molt rices
and saw amid the boat a very old man lying upon very rich
dras, et icil preudom estoit li Rois Peschiere ses taions, et
cloths and that worthy-man was the King Fisher his grandfather and
huça Perceval et li pria qu'il demorast le nuit od lui, et
called Perceval and him prayed that-he should-remain the night with him and
Percevaus l'en mercia molt, et li Rois Peschiere li dist:
Perceval him-thereof thanked much and the King Fisher to-him said
'Biaus sire chevaliers, vous en irés contremont le riviere, et
Fair lord knight you thence will-go up the river and
verrés mon castel la amont aparoir, et je m'en tornerai,
will-see my castle there up appear and I myself-thence shall-turn
ja si m'en irai, car je volrai estre encontre vous.'
now so myself-thence shall-go for I shall-wish to-be toward you

Atant s'en torna Perceval et cevauça selonc le riviere,
At-that himself-thence turned Perceval and rode along the river
et regarda amont et aval, ne onques de le maison del Roi
and looked up and down nor ever of the house of-the King
Pescheor voi ensagne; et quant il vit qu'il ne le trover
Fisher he-sees token and when he saw that-he not it found
si en ot molt grant duel, et mar dist le pescheor qui
so thereof had very great grief and ill spoke-of the fisher who
la l'avoit ensagnié et dist: 'Preudom qui peschoies, maleois
there him-had directed and said Worthy-man who fishedst cursed
soies tu qui m'as gabé, ne fait a entendant cose qui
be thou who me-hast mocked nor made to understanding thing which
voire ne soit.' Adont cevauça molt dolans et molt pensis,
true not be Then he-rode very grieved and very pensive

et tant qu'il vit le pumele d'une tor aparoir entre .ij.
and until that-he saw the pommel of-a tower appear between two
mons par dejoste le forest u il avoit hui matin passé,
mountains by beside the forest where he had today morning passed
et quant il le vit si en ot molt grant joie, et cevauça
and when he it saw so thereof had very great joy and rode
cele part, et dont se repenti molt durement de çou qu'il
that way and then himself repented very greatly of this that-he
avoit le roi maldit, et ne porquant ne savoit il qui il
had the king cursed and not for-all-that not knew he who he
estoit. Ensi cevauça tant qu'il vint a le forteresce, et vit
was Thus he-rode so-long that-he came to the fortress and saw
le riviere qui entour le castel couroit, si riche et si bele
the river which around the castle ran so rich and so fair
com a devise, et les loges de le sale molt bien assises,
as at wish and the galleries of the hall very well set
et quant il le vit si pensa que preudom i conversoit,
and when he it saw so thought that worthy-man there dwelt
et miels li sambla estre castiaus a roi qu'a pescheor,
and better to-him it-seemed to-be castle of king than-of fisher
et que plus l'aprocha miels li sist, et vint a le
and that more it-he-approached better to-him it-suited and came to the
porte, si le trova desfermée et le pont abaissié, et vint
gate so it found unlocked and the bridge lowered and came
ens, et descendi au perron devant le sale, et si tost
within and dismounted at-the block before the hall and so soon
com li vallet de le cort l'aperçurent si s'en corurent
as the youths of the court him-perceived so themselves-thence ran
encontre lui, et le prisent par son estrier et l'aidierent a
toward him and him took by his stirrup and him-helped to
desarmer, et enporterent ses armes en mi le sale, et doi
disarm and carried his arms into mid the hall and two

vallet en menerent son ceval et l'establerent molt ricement.
youths thence led his horse and it-stabled very richly
Et Perceval en monta a mont en le sale, et uns vallès
And Perceval thence climbed to up into the hall and a youth
li aporta .j. mantel d'escharlate, et li afubla, et
to-him brought a mantle of-scarlet and on-him put-it and
puis l'enmena seoir en mi le sale en .j. molt rice lit, et
then him-led sit in mid the hall on a very rich bed and
lors s'entornerent .iiij. serjant, et s'en vinrent en le
then themselves-turned four sergeants and themselves-thence came into the
cambre la u li Rois Pesciere estoit qui avoit le Graal
chamber there where the King Fisher was who had the Grail
en garde, et saciés que li Rois Pesciere estoit si viels
in keeping and know that the King Fisher was so old
et frailles et plains de tres grand maladie qu'il ne pooit
and frail and full of very great sickness that-he not could
remuer ne piés ne mains; et lors demanda as serjans
move neither feet nor hands and then asked of-the sergeants
si li cevaliers estoit venus, et il li respondirent: 'Sire,
if the knight was come and they to-him answered Lord
oïl' et dist Bron: 'Je i vuel aler.' Lors li prisent li
yes and said Bron I there wish to-go Then him took the
.iiij. serjans entre lor bras, et l'enporterent en le sale la
four sergeants between their arms and him-carried into the hall there
u Perceval ses niés estoit, et quant il le vit venir si
where Perceval his grandson was and when he him saw come so
se dreça encontre lui, et li dist: 'Sire, molt me poise
himself rose toward him and to-him said Lord much me it-grieves
que vous estes si grevés de ça venir por moi.' Et li rois
that you are so burdened of here coming for me And the king
respont: 'Je vous volroie molt onerer se estre pooit.' Lors
answers I you would-wish much to-honor if be it-could Then

se rasisent sor le lit et parlerent entre aus de plusors
themselves sat-again upon the bed and spoke among them of several
coses, et li sire li demanda dont il estoit hui venus et
things and the lord of-him asked whence he was today come and
u il avoit geü; et Perceval li dist: 'Sire, si m'ait
where he had lain and Perceval to-him said Lord so me-may-help
Dex je juc anuit en le forest la u jou oi molt pesme
God I lay last-night in the forest there where I had very wretched
ostel, car jou i fui molt a mesaise, et plus me pesa de
lodging for I there was very at hardship and more me it-grieved of
mon ceval que de moi.' Et li sire respont: 'Vous n'eüstes
my horse than of me And the lord answers You not-had
pas, ce m'est avis, quanques mestier vous fust;' et lors
at-all it to-me-is opinion whatever need to-you were and then
apela .ij. serjans et lor demanda se il pooient mangier,
called two sergeants and of-them asked if they could eat
et il respondirent: 'Oïl, par tans,' Atant fisent les tables
and they answered Yes by time At-that made the tables
metre et s'asisent au mangier li sires et Percevaus.
put and themselves-sat at-the eating the lord and Perceval

During the meal a damsel with silver platters, a youth with a bleeding lance, and a youth bearing the Grail pass before Perceval, and all bow to the Grail; remembering his mother's warning against asking too much, and worn out, he asks nothing. In the morning the castle is empty. A weeping damsel tells him that by his silence he has lost the king's healing and the Grail. Perceval vows to find the castle again, recovers the stag's head, and fights the knight who stole his hound.

Ensi com il seoient et on lor aportoit le premier mes, si
Thus as they sat and one to-them brought the first dish so
virent d'une cambre issir une demisele molt ricement atirée,
they-saw from-a chamber come-out a damsel very richly arrayed
et avoit une touaile entor son col, et portoit en ses mains
and had a towel around her neck and carried in her hands
.ij. petis tailleors d'argent. Après vint uns vallès qui aporta
two little platters of-silver After came a youth who brought
une lance, et sainoit par le fer .iij. gouttes de sanc, et
a lance and bled by the iron three drops of blood and
entroient en une cambre par devant Perceval, et après si vint
they-entered into a chamber by before Perceval and after so came
uns vallès et portoit entre ses mains le vaissel que Nostre
a youth and carried between his hands the vessel which Our
Sire donna a Joseph en le prison, et le porta molt hautement
Lord gave to Joseph in the prison and it carried very loftily
entre ses mains; et quant li sire le vit si l'enclina et rendi
between his hands and when the lord it saw so it-bowed-to and rendered
se cope, et tot cil de l'ostel autresi. Et quant Percevaus
his guilt and all those of the-house likewise And when Perceval
le vit si le tint a molt grant mervelle et l'eüst molt
it saw so it held for very great marvel and it-he-would-have very
volentiers demandé se il ne cremist son oste anoier, et molt
gladly asked if he not feared his host to-annoy and much

i pensa toute le nuit, mais il li sovint de se mere
thereon thought all the night but it to-him remembered of his mother
qui li dist qu'il ne fust mie trop parlans, ne trop
who to-him said that-he not should-be at-all too talkative nor too
demandans des coses, et por tant si s'en tint qu'il
asking of-the things and for so-much so himself-thence held that-he
ne le demanda, et li sire le metoit en maintes manieres
not it asked and the lord him put in many manners
de paroles por çou qu'il l'en demandast, mais il n'en
of words for this that-he him-thereof should-ask but he not-thereof
fist rien car il estoit si anoiés des .ij., nuis devant qu'il
did anything for he was so wearied by-the two nights before that-he
avoit vellié que por un poi qu'il ne chaoit sor la table.
had watched that by a little that-he — fell upon the table

Atant revint le vallet qui portoit le Graal et rentra dans
At-that came-back the youth who carried the Grail and re-entered into
le cambre u il avoit esté dont il estoit issus, et li vallès
the chamber where he had been whence he was come-out and the youth
qui portoit le lance autresi, et la damoisele les sivi, ne
who carried the lance likewise and the damsel them followed nor
onques Percevaus n'en demanda rien. Quant Brons, li Rois
ever Perceval not-thereof asked anything When Bron the King
Pesciere vit qu'il n'en demanderoit rien si en fu molt
Fisher saw that-he not-thereof would-ask anything so thereof was very
dolans, et ensi les faisoit porter a tous les chevaliers qu'il
grieved and thus them made carry to all the knights whom-he
herbergoit por çou que Nostre Sire Jesus Christ li avoit
lodged for this that Our Lord Jesus Christ to-him had
mandé qu'il ne seroit ja garis devant qu'uns chevaliers aroit
sent-word that-he not would-be ever healed before that-a knight should-have
demandé qui on en servoit, et cel chevalier convenoit
asked whom one thereby served and that knight it-behooved

estre le mellor del monde, et Perceval meïsme le devoit
to-be the best of-the world and Perceval himself it was-to
achever, et se il en eüst demandé si fust li rois garis.
achieve and if he thereof had asked so would-be the king healed
Quant li Rois Pesciere vit que Perceval voloit dormir,
When the King Fisher saw that Perceval wished to-sleep
si fist le table oster, et fist faire a Perceval .j. molt rice
so made the table remove and made make for Perceval a very rich
lit, et puis apela .iiij. serjans et dist qu'il s'en iroit
bed and then called four sergeants and said that-he himself-thence would-go
dormir et reposer en se cambre, et prist congié a Perceval,
sleep and rest in his chamber and took leave of Perceval
et li dist molt qu'il ne li anoiast, car il estoit viels
and to-him said much that-it not him should-annoy for he was old
hom, si ne pooit seïr longement, et Perceval respondi que
man so not could sit long and Perceval answered that
si ne faisoit il, et le commanda a Diu, et lors s'en
so not did it and him commended to God and then himself-thence
ala en se cambre, et Percevaus remest en le sale et pensa
went into his chamber and Perceval remained in the hall and thought
molt au vaissel qu'il avoit veü porter si dignement, et
much on-the vessel that-he had seen carry so worthily and
que li sire l'avoit si parfont encliné, et tot cil de l'ostel
that the lord it-had so deep bowed-to and all those of the-house
autresi. Et plus se mervella de le lance qui sannoit par
likewise And more himself he-marveled at the lance which bled by
le fer .iij. goutes de sanc, et pensa qu'il le demanderoit le
the iron three drops of blood and thought that-he it would-ask the
matinée as vallès de le cort ançois qu'il s'en voist.
morning of-the youths of the court before that-he himself-thence go
Et quant il ot çou pensé molt longement si vinrent .iij.
And when he had this thought very long so came three

serjant qui li aidierent a descaucier, et le coucierent molt
sergeants who him helped to unshoe and him laid very
ricement, et quant il fu couciés si estoit molt travelliés, et
richly and when he was laid so was very wearied and
si dormi dusqu'a la matinée, et quant ce vint a la matinée
so slept until-to the morning and when it came to the morning
si se leva, et quant il se fu vestus et atornés si
so himself rose and when he himself was clothed and dressed so
s'en ala aval le maison et aval le cort, mais il n'i
himself-thence went down the house and down the court but he not-there
vit home ne feme, et revint arriere en le maison et n'i
saw man nor woman and came-back back into the house and not-there
trova nului, et quant il vit çou si en fu molt dolans, et
found anyone and when he saw this so thereof was very grieved and
garda par devant lui, si vit ses armes et s'arma, et puis
looked by before him so saw his arms and himself-armed and then
vint al estable, si le trova desfermée, et vit son ceval tot
came to-the stable so it found unlocked and saw his horse all
novelement torkiet, et li avoit on mis le frein et le sele,
newly rubbed-down and to-it had one put the bridle and the saddle
et quant Perceval le vit si s'en mervella molt et lors
and when Perceval it saw so himself-thereof marveled much and then
monta isnelement et issi de l'estable, et garda et vit le
mounted swiftly and went-out of the-stable and looked and saw the
porte desfermée, et lors se pensa que le vallet estoient
gate unlocked and then himself bethought that the youths were
alé el bos por cuellir erbe et autre cose dont il eüssent
gone into-the wood for to-gather grass and other thing whereof they might-have
mestiers. Et lors se pensa qu'il ira après, et se il
need And then himself bethought that-he will-go after and if he
en treuve nul il li demandera que cil vaissiaus senefie
thereof finds any he of-him will-ask what that vessel signifies

qu'il vit porter, et por quoi on l'enclinoit si parfondement,
that-he saw carry and for what one it-bowed-to so deeply
et par quel mervelle la lance segnoit par le pointe del fer.
and by what marvel the lance bled by the point of-the iron
Atant s'en torna et cevauça parmi le forest molt
At-that himself-thence turned and rode through the forest very
longement et desi a prime, qu'il ne trova hom ne feme
long and until at prime so-that-he not found man nor woman
a cui il peüst parler. Si en fu molt dolans, et ensi
to whom he could speak So thereof was very grieved and thus
cevauça molt longement et pensa si forment qu'a poi qu'il
rode very long and thought so greatly that-by little that-he
ne caoit jus del ceval; et tant cevauça qu'il vit une
— fell down from-the horse and so-long rode that-he saw a
demisele enmi le forest et estoit la plus bele feme qu'on
damsel amid the forest and was the most fair woman that-one
peüst mie trover, et ploroit molt tenrement et faisoit molt
could at-all find and wept very tenderly and made very
grant duel; et si tost com ele vit Perceval si s'escria au
great grief and so soon as she saw Perceval so herself-cried at-the
plus haut qu'ele pot, et dist: 'Perceval li caitis, maléois
most loud that-she could and said Perceval the wretch cursed
soies tu quant tu es si maleüreus que biens ne te doit
be thou since thou art so ill-fated that good not to-thee must
jamais venir, quant tu as esté a le maison le rice Roi
ever-more come since thou hast been at the house (of-)the rich King
Pescheor ton taion, et as veü le vaissel passer par devant
Fisher thy grandfather and hast seen the vessel pass by before
toi, la u li sans Nostre Segnor est, et l'apele on Graal,
thee there where the blood (of-)Our Lord is and it-calls one Grail
et as veü par devant toi passer .iij. fois ne onques ne fu
and hast seen by before thee pass three times nor ever not it-was

teus que tu en demandas. Or saces que Dex te het, et
such that thou thereof askedst Now know that God thee hates and
mervelle est que Dex ne te fait morir de le male mort.'
marvel it-is that God not thee makes die of the evil death
Et quant Perceval l'oï si s'en vint cevauçant cele
And when Perceval it-heard so himself-thence came riding that
part, et li pria por Diu qu'ele li desist le voir de çou
way and her prayed for God that-she to-him should-tell the truth of this
qu'il avoit veü. Et ele li dist: 'Dont ne jeüs tu anuit
that-he had seen And she to-him said Then not lay thou last-night
a le maison Brons ton taion, qui tant est de grant
at the house (of-)Bron thy grandfather who so-much is of great
ancisserie, et veïs passer le Graal devant toi, et les autres
ancestry and sawest pass the Grail before thee and the other
reliques? Or saces,' fait li demisele, 'que se tu eüsses
relics Now know says the damsel that if thou hadst
demandé qu'on en servoit, li rois tes taions fust
asked whom-one thereby served the king thy grandfather would-be
garis de l'enfermeté qu'il a, et fust revenus en sa santé,
healed of the-infirmity that-he has and would-be returned into his health
et fust acomplie la prophetie que Nostre Sire commanda
and would-be fulfilled the prophecy that Our Lord commanded
a Joseph, et eüsses eüe la grasse ton taion, et
to Joseph and thou-wouldst-have had the grace (of-)thy grandfather and
acomplissement de ton cuer, et eüsses en garde le sanc
fulfillment of thy heart and wouldst-have in keeping the blood
Jesus Christ. Après te mort fusses en la compagnie de
(of-)Jesus Christ After thy death thou-wouldst-be in the company of
çaus qui ont eü le commandement Jesus Christ; et fussent
those who have had the commandment (of-)Jesus Christ and would-be

desfait li encantement et li malice qui or sont en le
undone the enchantments and the evils which now are in the
terre de Bretagne, mais je sais bien por quoi tu l'as perdu.
land of Britain but I know well for what thou it-hast lost
Saces que tu l'as perdu por çou que tu n'es mie
Know that thou it-hast lost for this that thou not-art at-all
si sages, ne si preus, ne n'as tant fait d'armes, ne de
so wise nor so worthy nor not-hast so-much done of-arms nor of
proeces, ne de biens, que tu aies en garde le precieus
prowesses nor of good-deeds that thou may-have in keeping the precious
vaissel.' Et quant Perceval a oï çou que li damisele
vessel And when Perceval has heard this that the damsel
li avoit conté si s'en esmervella molt, et en ot
to-him had told so himself-thereof marveled much and thereof had
si grant duel qu'il en commença a larmier, et dist bien
so great grief that-he thereof began to shed-tears and said well
que jamais n'arestera si ara trovée le maison son
that ever-more not-he-will-stop until he-will-have found the house (of-)his
taion, et si ara demandé tout çou que li demisele li
grandfather and so will-have asked all this that the damsel to-him
avoit amenteü. Atant se departi de le demisele, et le
had mentioned At-that himself departed from the damsel and her
commanda a Diu, et ele lui tot plorant, et Perceval cevauça
commended to God and she him all weeping and Perceval rode
le voie qu'il cuida que mener le deüst a le maison son
the way that-he thought that lead him should to the house (of-)his
taion le Roi Pescheor, mais il s'en estoit malement
grandfather the King Fisher but he himself-thence was badly
eslongiés. Et ensi cevauça molt pensis, et cevauça .ij. nuis
distanced And thus rode very pensive and rode two nights
et .ij. jors qu'onques ne manga se ce ne furent pummes
and two days so-that-ever not he-ate if this not were apples

et fruits qu'il trova aval le forest, et pria a Nostre
and fruits that-he found down the forest and prayed to Our
Segnor qu'il le consellast. Et ensi cevauça .j. jor toute jor
Lord that-he him should-counsel And thus rode one day all day
qu'onques aventure ne trova, et garda devant lui et vit
so-that-ever adventure not he-found and looked before him and saw
une des plus beles demiseles del monde, et ert dejoste li
one of-the most fair damsels of-the world and was beside her
ataciés uns des plus biaus palefrois del monde, et par desor
tied one of-the most fair palfreys of-the world and by above
le palefrois vit atacie a le brance d'un arbre le teste de son
the palfrey saw tied to the branch of-a tree the head of his
cerf qu'il avoit colpée. Et quant Perceval le vit si en ot
stag which-he had cut And when Perceval it saw so thereof had
molt grant joie, et vint cele part grant aleüre, et le prist,
very great joy and came that way great pace and it took
et l'esraça de l'arbre, qu'onques a le demisele n'en parla.
and it-tore from the-tree so-that-ever to the damsel not-thereof he-spoke
Et quant li demisele le voit si l'escria molt ireement,
And when the damsel it sees so to-him-cried very angrily
et li dist: 'Chevaliers, metés jus le teste mon segnor,
and to-him said Knight put down the head (of-)my lord
car saciés se vous l'enportés il vous en avenra hontes.'
for know if you it-carry-off it to-you thereof will-come shame
Quant Perceval l'oï si commenca a rire, et li dist:
When Perceval it-heard so began to laugh and to-her said
'Demisele, je ne le metrai mie jus por cose que je voie
Damsel I not it shall-put at-all down for thing that I may-see
encore, ançois le rendrai a celi cui je l'ai en couvent.'
yet rather it shall-render to her to-whom I it-have in covenant

Ensi com il parloit a celi, si vit venir une bisse molt
Thus as he spoke to her so saw come a hind very
esfreée, et son braket après qui le sivi molt vistement
frightened and his hound after which her followed very quickly
et le tenoit parmi les cuisses, et le bisse avoit tel paor
and her held by the thighs and the hind had such fear
qu'ele vint a Perceval et a le demisele a merci. Et quant
that-she came to Perceval and to the damsel for mercy And when
Percevaus vit son braket si en fu molt liés, et le prist
Perceval saw his hound so thereof was very glad and it took
desor son ceval, et l'aplanoia molt debuenairement; et ensi
upon his horse and it-stroked very graciously and thus
com il le tenoit si vit venir le chevalier qui tolu li
as he it held so saw come the knight who taken from-him
avoit, et si tost com il vit Perceval si en ot molt
it-had and so soon as he saw Perceval so thereof had very
grant duel, et s'escria hautement: 'Par Diu! falis chevaliers
great grief and himself-cried loudly By God failed knight
mar i avés mon braket retenu.' Et quant Perceval
in-ill-hour there you-have my hound retained And when Perceval
l'a oï si li tint a grant folie, et li dit: 'Vous
it-has heard so to-him it-held for great folly and to-him says You
estes fols qui a vous le traiés, car vous le m'emblastes
are mad who to you it draw for you it from-me-stole
mauvaisement.' Quant li cevaliers l'oï si le desfia, et
wickedly When the knight it-heard so him defied and
Percevaus lui ensement. Lors s'eslonga li uns de l'autre,
Perceval him likewise Then himself-distanced the one from the-other
et esporonoient par tel aïr que tos li boschages en
and they-spurred with such fury that all the thicket thereof
resona, et s'entreferirent si durement qu'il ni ot celui
resounded and each-other-struck so hard that-it not-there was that-one

ne covenist voler a le terre. Lors resalirent sus molt
not it-behooved to-fly to the earth Then they-leapt-again up very
vistement, et sacierent les espées par molt grant aïr, et
quickly and drew the swords with very great fury and
caplerent molt longement des le midi dusqu'a none; et
hewed very long from the noon until-to nones and
saciés que Perceval fu molt atains, et li chevaliers autresi,
know that Perceval was very hard-pressed and the knight likewise
et tant que Perceval se resvertua et ot honte en lui
and until that Perceval himself exerted and had shame in him
meïsme de çou que li chevaliers duroit si longement, et
self of this that the knight lasted so long and
hauça l'espée, et feri le chevalier parmi l'escu, si qu'il li
raised the-sword and struck the knight through the-shield so that-he for-him
fendi parmi le boucle en .ij. moitiés, et li cols fu molt
split through the boss into two halves and the blow was very
ruistes et grans, et li espée avala sor le hiaume, et
fierce and great and the sword came-down upon the helm and
ne pot entamer l'acier, et vint avalant de grant vertu qu'il
not could cut the-steel and came descending with great force that-it
li trença plus de .c. mailles del hauberc, et li
for-him cut more than a-hundred links of-the hauberk and for-him
trença l'esporon par mi, et feri l'espée .ij. piés en terre.
cut the-spur by middle and struck the-sword two feet into earth

The defeated knight explains that the knight of the tomb is his brother, held by a fairy, and that the old woman is the fairy herself. Perceval brings the hound back to the damsel of the chessboard castle but will not stay, bound by his vow to lie only one night in any house. For seven years he wanders, sending more than a hundred prisoners to Arthur, so maddened at not finding the Fisher King's house that he forgets God; on Good Friday penitents shame him, and he repents and does penance with his hermit uncle.

Quant li chevaliers vit le colp que Perceval avoit doné si
When the knight saw the blow that Perceval had given so
grant si en ot grant paor, et vit bien que si il l'en
great so thereof had great fear and saw well that if he him-therewith
donoit .j. autre colp qu'il l'ociroit, si se traist arriere,
gave an other blow that-he him-would-kill so himself drew back
et li cria por Diu merci, qu'il ne l'ocesist por cose
and to-him cried for God mercy that-he not him-should-kill for thing
qu'il eüst faite. Et Perceval li dist: 'Dont me di por
that-he had done And Perceval to-him said Then to-me tell for
quoi tu enportas mon braket, et qui li chevaliers estoit a
what thou carriedst-off my hound and who the knight was with
cui je me combatoie quant tu le me tolsis, et se tu
whom I myself fought when thou it from-me tookest and if thou
counois le vielle qui le tombel m'ensagna.' Et li chevaliers
knowest the old-woman who the tomb me-showed And the knight
respont: 'Tout ce te dirai je bien.' Et Perceval li
answers All this to-thee shall-tell I well And Perceval to-him
respont: 'Se tu le me dis tu n'auras garde de mort.'
answers If thou it to-me tellest thou not-wilt-have fear of death

Lors li respondi li chevaliers: ‘Saces que cil qui issi
Then to-him answered the knight Know that he who came-out
del tombel que ce estoit mes frere germains, et estoit uns
of-the tomb that this was my brother german and was one
des mellors chevaliers qu’on pooit trover, et tant qu’une fée
of-the best knights that-one could find and until that-a fairy
qui molt estoit bele l’enama por le proece qu’ele vit en lui,
who very was fair him-loved for the prowess that-she saw in him
et si tost comme mes frere l’ot veüe si fu si sospris de
and so soon as my brother her-had seen so was so seized with
s’amor qu’a poi qu’il n’issi del sens toutes les fois qu’il
her-love that-by little that-he went-out of-the sense all the times that-he
estoit avuec li; et tant que li demisele li dist qu’il avuec
was with her and until that the damsel to-him said that-he with
li s’en alast la u ele le volroit mener; et il dist
her himself-thence should-go there where she him would-wish to-lead and he said
qu’il iroit tot la u ele le volroit mener par couvens
that-he would-go all there where she him would-wish to-lead by covenant
qu’ele le menast en tel liu qu’il ne perdist sa cevalerie.
that-she him should-lead into such place that-he not should-lose his chivalry
Et ele li dist qu’ele le menroit en tel liu u il poroit
And she to-him said that-she him would-lead into such place where he could
tant faire d’armes que nus plus, car tout li cevalier de
so-much do of-arms as anyone more for all the knights of
le cort Artu repairoient la ou ele le menroit. Lors
the court (of-)Arthur resorted there where she him would-lead Then
l’enmena en cele forest, et quant il i furent venu si
him-led into that forest and when they there were come so
troverent joste le cemin que tu veïs quant tu trespassas
found beside the road which thou sawest when thou passedst
au tombel une des plus beles praeries del monde, si
at-the tomb one of-the most fair meadows of-the world so

i descendirent entre aus .ij., et misent lor napes, et
there dismounted between them two and set their cloths and
mangierent par molt grant delit, et quant il orent mangié
ate with very great delight and when they had eaten
mes frere se couça dormir, et quant il ot dormi tant
my brother himself lay-down to-sleep and when he had slept so-much
com lui plot si s'esvella, et quant il se fu esvelliés si
as him pleased so himself-awoke and when he himself was awakened so
se trova en .j. des plus biaus castiaus del monde, et vit
himself found in one of-the most fair castles of-the world and saw
dedens chevaliers et dames et demiseles tout aparelliés de
within knights and ladies and damsels all ready of
lui servir; et cil castiaus seeit dejoste le tombel mais nus
him serving and that castle sat beside the tomb but anyone
ne le puet veïr, et de laiens issi le chevaliers quant il
not it can see and from therein came-out the knight when he
vint combatre a toi. Et li vielle qui le tombel t'ensagna
came to-fight with thee And the old-woman who the tomb thee-showed
saces qu'ele est, quant ele vuelt, li plus bele demisele que
know that-she is when she wishes the most fair damsel that
tu onques veïs, et si est cele meïsme qui le tombel estora,
thou ever sawest and so is she herself who the tomb established
et qui mon frere amena en le forest. Or saces que je ai
and who my brother brought into the forest Now know that I have
voir dit de çou que je t'ai conté.' Quant Perceval l'oï
true said of this that I to-thee-have told When Perceval it-heard
si en fu molt liés, et li dist: 'Par Diu, tu m'as
so thereof was very glad and to-him said By God thou me-hast
contée la forçor mervelle qu'onques mais oïsse!' Et lors li
told the greatest marvel that-ever before I-heard And then of-him
demanda Perceval se il li sauroit ensagnier le maison
asked Perceval if he to-him would-know-how show the house

au rice Roi Pescheor, et li cevaliers li respont: 'Par Diu
of-the rich King Fisher and the knight to-him answers By God
je n'en sai mie, ne onques n'oï parler de chevalier qui
I not-thereof know at-all nor ever not-I-heard speak of knight who
le trovast, et si ai molt veü de çaus qui le querroient.'
it found and so I-have many seen of those who it sought
Dont li demanda Perceval se il li saroit a dire qui
Then of-him asked Perceval if he him would-know to tell who
li demisele estoit qui son braket li avoit baillié, et li
the damsel was who his hound to-him had given and the
chevaliers respont qu'il le counissoit molt bien: 'Saces qu'ele
knight answers that-he her knew very well Know that-she
est suers a le demisele qui mes frere aimme, et por çou te
is sister to the damsel whom my brother loves and for this to-thee
carja ele son braket qu'ele sot bien que se suer t'enmenroit
entrusted she her hound for-she knew well that her sister thee-would-lead
a son ami por combatre, et saces que li demisele qui le
to her friend for to-fight and know that the damsel who the
braket te carja het molt durement se seror, por son ami,
hound to-thee entrusted hates very hard her sister for her friend
por çou qu'il ne soloit passer cevaliers a cui il ne fesist
for this that-he not was-wont to-pass knights to whom he not did
honte, et li demisele qui le braket te carja seut bien que
shame and the damsel who the hound to-thee entrusted knew well that
teus chevaliers i venroit qui en vengeroit tous les autres.'
such knight there would-come who thereof would-avenge all the others
Lors li demanda Perceval s'il avoit loing desci au
Then of-him asked Perceval if-it was far until to-the
castel a le demisele, et cil li dist: 'Se tu tiens
castle of the damsel and that-one to-him said If thou holdest
cest cemin qui si s'en va a senestre tu i venras
this road which so itself-thence goes to left thou there wilt-come

ains le nuit.' Et quant Perceval l'oï si en fu molt liés,
before the night And when Perceval it-heard so thereof was very glad
et s'en torna atant, mais il li fist ançois fiencier
and himself-thence turned at-that but he him made first pledge
qu'il se metroit en le prison le rice roi Artu, et
that-he himself would-put in the prison (of-)the rich king Arthur and
cil li otroia a faire se volenté. Ensi s'en torna
that-one to-him granted to do his will Thus himself-thence turned
li chevaliers, et vint en le cort au roi Artu, et se
the knight and came into the court of-the king Arthur and himself
rendi en se prison de par Perceval le Galois, et li
rendered into his prison from by Perceval the Welshman and the
rois le retint volentiers, et li clama se prison cuite.
king him retained gladly and to-him declared his prison quit
Et Percevaus, puis qu'il se fu partis del chevalier,
And Perceval since that-he himself was parted from-the knight
si cevauça grant aleüre tant qu'il vint au castel u li
so rode great pace until that-he came to-the castle where the
demisele manoit qui son braket li avoit cargié. Et si
damsel dwelt who her hound to-him had entrusted And so
tost com li demisele qui estoit as fenestres de le tor
soon as the damsel who was at-the windows of the tower
le vit venir, si descendi encontre lui, et bien vegna molt,
him saw come so came-down toward him and well welcomed much
et le reçut molt liement, et l'apela, et li dist: 'Dans
and him received very gladly and him-called and to-him said Sir
chevaliers, saciés que por un poi que je ne me sui molt
knight know that by a little that I — myself am much
coreciés a vous, et saciés que por grant cose n'en
angered with you and know that for great thing not-thereof
eüsse jo tant esté senuec se je le peüsse avoir esmieldré.'
would-have I so-long been without-it if I it could have bettered

Et Perceval li respondi: 'Demisele, saciés que je n'en
And Perceval to-her answered Damsel know that I not-thereof
peuc mais, et saciés qu'el demorer ot molt grant
could more and know that-in-the delaying there-was very great
oqoison.' Lors li conta s'aventure de cief en cief si com
cause Then to-her he-told his-adventure from head to head so as
ele fu alée, de le vielle qui son braket li avoit tolu,
it was gone of the old-woman who her hound from-him had taken
et del tombel com ele li ensagna, et comment li
and of-the tomb how she to-him showed and how the
chevaliers se combati a lui, et comment il le mata, et
knight himself fought with him and how he him overcame and
comment il se referi en son arcuel desos le tombel,
how he himself thrust-again into his coffin beneath the tomb
et comment li chevaliers en avoit porté son braket,
and how the knight thence had carried her hound
et comment il l'avoit quis car il ne voloit mie revenir
and how he it-had sought for he not wished at-all to-come-back
senuec. Et li conta comment il l'avoit trové el bos, et
without-it And to-her told how he it-had found in-the wood and
comment il le conquist par armes, et li conta de cief
how he it conquered by arms and to-her told from head
en cief si com il li estoit avenu, et toute le painne
to head so as it to-him was happened and all the pain
qu'il avoit eüe puis qu'il se fu departis de li. Et quant
that-he had had since that-he himself was departed from her And when
li demisele l'oï si en fu molt lie, et li pardouna molt
the damsel it-heard so thereof was very glad and him pardoned very
buenement. Lors le fist le demisele desarmer, et l'enmena
gladly Then him made the damsel disarm and him-led
avuec li, et li fist le plus bel samblant qu'ele pot, et
with her and to-him made the most fair show that-she could and

li dist: 'Puis que vous avés celui conquis que je molt
to-him said Since that you have him conquered whom I much
haoie qui ert amis a me seror, je vuel des or mais estre
hated who was friend to my sister I wish from now more to-be
a vostre commandement, et serés sire de cest castel, et
at your command and you-shall-be lord of this castle and
vuel que vous demourés tos jors avuec moi.' Mais quant
I-wish that you remain all days with me But when
Perceval l'oï si en fu molt dolans, et s'en escusa
Perceval it-heard so thereof was very grieved and himself-thereof excused
au plus bel qu'il pot, car il n'i avoit talent de demorer.
at-the most fair that-he could for he not-there had desire of remaining
Si li dist: 'Demisele, saciés que de le vostre volenté
So to-her said Damsel know that from the your will
ne me vuel je pas partir, que je ne face del tout a
not myself wish I at-all to-part that I not do in-the all at
vostre volenté de quanques vous me demanderés par raison,
your will of whatever you of-me shall-ask by reason
mais saciés que jou ai .j. afaire en le cort le rice roi
but know that I have an affair in the court (of-)the rich king
Artu que je jamais ne girai qu'une nuit en .j. ostel desci
Arthur that I ever-more not shall-lie except-one night in one lodging until
a tant que jou arai asomé, et sor vous le metrai
to so-much that I shall-have accomplished and upon you it shall-put
tout.' A cel tans estoit costume que qui enfragnoit son veu
all At that time it-was custom that who broke his vow
qu'il amast miels qu'on li trençast le teste. Et quant
that-he would-love better that-one from-him should-cut the head And when
li demisele l'oï si respondi: 'Sire qui de vostre veu vous
the damsel it-heard so answered Lord who from your vow you
feroit partir saciés qu'il ne vous ameroit gaires, ne sor
would-make part know that-he not you would-love much nor upon

çou que vous m'avés dit ne vous oseroie jou esforcier ne
this that you me-have said not you would-dare I force nor
proiere faire; mais tant vuel jou, se Dex vous lait esploitier
prayer make but so-much wish I if God you lets accomplish
le vostre besogne, que vous revenés proçainnement a moi.'
the your business that you come-back soon to me
Et Perceval respondi: 'Demisele, saciés que a çou ne couvient
And Perceval answered Damsel know that to this not behooves
il mie proiere, que je ne desir tant rien, se Dex me laist
it at-all prayer for I not desire so-much anything if God me lets
esploitier me besogne, que d'estre avuec vous a loisir.' Atant
accomplish my business as of-being with you at leisure At-that
prist congié Perceval a le demisele, et demanda ses armes,
took leave Perceval of the damsel and asked his arms
et quant li demisele l'oï si li demanda: 'Sire, por Diu
and when the damsel it-heard so of-him asked Lord for God
qu'est çou que volés faire, dont ne demoerrés vous anuit
what-is this that you-wish to-do then not will-remain you tonight
avuec moi?' Et il li respont: 'Dame ce ne poroit estre,
with me And he to-her answers Lady this not could be
car mon veu aroie trespassé, car jou i ai autre fois
for my vow I-would-have transgressed for I there have other time
jeü.' Quant li demisele l'oï si en fu molt dolante, et
lain When the damsel it-heard so thereof was very grieved and
vit bien qu'ele n'en poroit el faire, si le commanda a
saw well that-she not-thereof could else do so him commended to
Diu tot plorant, car molt ama miels se demourée que son
God all weeping for much she-loved better his remaining than his
aler. Mais Perceval n'avoit cure de faire pecié, et Nostre Sire
going But Perceval not-had care of doing sin and Our Lord
ne li voloit soufrir a faire. Atant s'en parti de li,
not him wished to-suffer to do At-that himself-thence parted from her

et puis qu'il fu mis a la voie si cevauça grant aleüre, et
and since that-he was put to the way so rode great pace and
jut le nuit en le forest, et saciés qu'il cevauça puis .vij.
lay the night in the forest and know that-he rode afterward seven
ans par les païs et par les forès, querant aventures,
years through the countries and through the forests seeking adventures
et saciés qu'il onques aventure ne cevalerie ne mervelle ne
and know that-he ever adventure nor chivalry nor marvel not
trova qu'il n'akievast. Et en ces .vij. ans envoia plus de
found that-he not-achieved And in these seven years he-sent more than
.c. prisons a le cort le rice roi Artu, et saciés que
a-hundred prisoners to the court (of-)the rich king Arthur and know that
ces mervelles qu'il trova, et de çou qu'il vit, et qu'il ne
these marvels that-he found and of this that-he saw and that-he not
pot trover le maison son taion le rice Roi Pescheor,
could find the house (of-)his grandfather the rich King Fisher
devint il si dervés et si fors del sens, et si en perdi
became he so crazed and so out of-the sense and so thereof lost
son memoire, que en ces .vij. ans ne li sovint onques
his memory that in these seven years not to-him it-remembered ever
de Diu, n'en Sainte Yglise ne en mostier, n'entra. Et tant
of God nor-in Holy Church nor in minster not-he-entered And until
qu'il cevauçoit le jor de le Crois aorée que, Nostre Sire
that-he rode the day of the Cross adored that Our Lord
sofri mort por peçeors, et estoit tos armés si com por
suffered death for sinners and was all armed so as for
soi desfendre et por autrui damagier se il l'encontrast,
himself to-defend and for another to-harm if he him-should-meet
lors encontra dames et chevaliers tos embronciés en lor
then he-met ladies and knights all hooded in their
capes et en lor caperons, et aloient par orisons por lor
capes and in their hoods and went by orisons for their

peciés acorder vers Jesus Christ. Lors s'aresterent et li
sins to-reconcile toward Jesus Christ Then themselves-stopped and of-him
demanderent quel fors eürs le demenoit que, le jor que
asked what strange fortune him drove that the day that
Nostre Sire estoit travelliés en le crois, s'estoit armés por
Our Lord was tormented on the cross himself-was armed for
hom ocire, ne por aventure trover? Et quant Perceval les oï
man to-kill nor for adventure to-find And when Perceval them heard
de Diu parler et ramembrer, si se reconut, et revint en
of God speak and remember so himself recognized and came-back into
son sens par le volenté Jesus Christ, et se repenti molt
his sense by the will (of-)Jesus Christ and himself repented much
de sa folie qu'il avoit si longement menée, et se desarma
of his folly that-he had so long led and himself disarmed
errant, et se dist li contes qu'ensi com Dex volt asena a
straightway and so says the tale that-thus as God wished he-came to
le maison le sien oncle l'ermite, la u se suer l'avoit
the house (of-)the his uncle the-hermit there where his sister him-had
mené confesser, et se confessa a lui, et prist penitance
led confess and himself confessed to him and took penance
tele com il li encarja et demoura avuec lui .ij. mois.
such as he to-him charged and remained with him two months

The tale sets itself apart from Chrétien's. Perceval learns from the hermit that his sister is dead, mourns at her tomb, and rides on. Squires tell him of a tournament at the White Castle for the hand of its lady's daughter, to which the Round Table is coming, and of Kay's boast that he will win her. Perceval lodges with a vavasor, who wonders whether so fair a knight has any prowess; he agrees to ride to the tournament with his host but not to arm.

Mais de çou ne parole pas Crestiens de Troies, ne li autre
But of this not speaks at-all Chrétien of Troyes nor the other
trovéor qui en ont trové por faire lor rimes plaisans,
poets who thereof have composed for to-make their rhymes pleasing
mais nous n'en disons fors tant com au conte en
but we not-thereof say except so-much as to-the tale thereof
monte, et que Merlins en fist escrire a Blayse son maistre
amounts and what Merlin thereof made write to Blaise his master
qui en Nortumbellande manoit, et estoit si viels que a poi
who in Northumberland dwelt and was so old that by little
qu'il se pooit soutenir, et veoit et savoit les aventures que
that-he himself could sustain and saw and knew the adventures that
a Perceval avenoient cascun jor, et les faisoit escrire Blayse,
to Perceval happened each day and them made write Blaise
por ramembrer as preudommes qui volentiers l'oroient. Or
for to-recall to-the worthy-men who gladly it-would-hear Now
saciés que nous trovons en l'escrit que Blayses nous raconte,
know that we find in the-writing that Blaise to-us relates
si com Merlins li fist escrire et metre en auctorité, que
so as Merlin to-him made write and put in authority that
Perceval demoura a le maison son oncle .ij. mois, et saciés
Perceval remained at the house (of-)his uncle two months and know
que a cel point que Perceval i vint que se suer estoit
that at that point that Perceval there came that his sister was

morte et trespassée de cest siecle, et dist Perceval: 'Sire,
dead and passed from this world and said Perceval Lord
jou irai veoir me seror car je l'aim molt de buene amor.'
I shall-go see my sister for I her-love much with good love
Et quant li ermite l'oï si commença a plorer, et li
And when the hermit it-heard so began to weep and to-him
dist, 'Biaus niés, vous ne le verrés jamais, car saciés qu'ele
said Fair nephew you not her will-see ever-more for know that-she
est morte passé a un an et demi, et quant je seuc qu'ele
is dead passed has a year and half and when I knew that-she
estoit morte si en fui molt dolans, et i alai, et l'en
was dead so thereof I-was very grieved and there went and her-thence
fis aporter en mon edefi et l'enfoï la defors me maison.'
made bring into my building and her-buried there outside my house

Quant Percevaus entendi que se suer estoit trespassée de
When Perceval heard that his sister was passed from
cest siecle si en fu molt dolans, et qui li dounast
this world so thereof was very grieved and who to-him should-give
tot l'or del monde ne se tenist il qu'il se larmiast
all the-gold of-the world not himself would-hold he that-be himself should-weep
des uels, et dist a son oncle: 'Sire, por Diu menés me
from-the eyes and said to his uncle Lord for God lead me
veoir le tombe me seror qui tant m'amoit.' Et li preudom
see the tomb (of-)my sister who so-much me-loved And the worthy-man
respondi: 'Volentiers.' Lors le mena tot droit a le tombe la
answered Gladly Then him led all straight to the tomb there
u la damoisele estoit enfoïe, et quant Perceval le vit si
where the damsel was buried and when Perceval it saw so
commença a plorer, et lors disent orisons por l'ame de li, et
began to weep and then they-said orisons for the-soul of her and
quant il orent proié Nostre Segnor por l'ame, si li dist
when they had prayed Our Lord for the-soul so to-him said

l'ermites: 'Biaus niés, dont n'irés vous veoir le vostre repair,
the-hermit Fair nephew then not-will-go you see the your dwelling
qui fu Alain le Gros vostre pere et le mien frere? Saciés
which was (of-)Alain the Fat your father and the my brother Know
qu'il seroit tot a vostre commandement.' Quant Perceval l'oï,
that-it would-be all at your command When Perceval it-heard
si li dist: 'Sire, si m'aït Dex je n'iroie pas, qui me
so to-him said Lord so me-may-help God I not-would-go at-all who to-me
donroit le roiaume au rice roi Artu, car trop aroie
would-give the kingdom of-the rich king Arthur for too-much I-would-have
grant duel se je veoie le maison mon pere si vuidie de mes
great grief if I saw the house (of-)my father so emptied of my
amis, que je n'i trouveroie ame qui m'apartenist.' Et li
friends that I not-there would-find soul who to-me-belonged And the
preudom li dist: 'Biaus niés, ce ne feriés mon.' Lors
worthy-man to-him said Fair nephew this not you-would-do indeed Then
li dist Percevaus: 'Biaus oncles, je m'en irai a vostre
to-him said Perceval Fair uncle I myself-thence shall-go by your
congié, et saciés que je jamais n'aresterai si arai trovée
leave and know that I ever-more not-shall-stop until I-shall-have found
le maison mon taion le vostre pere.' Quant li ermites l'oï
the house (of-)my grandfather the your father When the hermit it-heard
si li dist: 'Biaus niés, Damediu Jesus Christ vous i laist
so to-him said Fair nephew Lord-God Jesus Christ you there let
assener; et saciés que jou en proierai molt Nostre Segnor.'
arrive and know that I thereof shall-pray much Our Lord
Atant s'en departi, et prist congié, et cevauça tant
At-that himself-thence departed and took leave and rode so-long
parmi le forest que ce vint al vuitime jor de le Pentecoste,
through the forest that it came to-the eighth day of the Pentecost
et lors cevauça tot .j. jor desci a none, qu'il onques
and then rode all one day until at nones so-that-he ever

aventure ne trova, et tant cevauça qu'il garda devant lui,
adventure not found and so-long rode that-he looked before him
et vit vallès cevaucier desci a .iiij. et portoit cascuns .j.
and saw youths ride up to four and carried each-one a
escu a son col, et menoient somiers et cevaus en destre,
shield at his neck and led sumpters and horses at right-hand
et faisoient après aus traire une caretée de lances. Et si
and made after them draw a cartload of lances And so
tost com Percevaus les vit si hurta des esporons après
soon as Perceval them saw so struck with-the spurs after
aus, et lor demanda quel part il menroient cel harnas,
them and of-them asked which way they would-lead that harness
et a cui il estoient? Et cil li respondirent: 'Biaus sire,
and to whom they were And those to-him answered Fair lord
nous somes a Melian de Lis, et alons au tornoi qui doit
we are to Meliant of Lis and go to-the tourney which must
seïr au Blanc castel, a une des plus beles demiseles del
sit at-the White castle at one of-the most fair damsels of-the
monde; si dient bien tot cil qui l'ont veüe que se toutes
world so say well all those who her-have seen that if all
les biautés de celes del monde estoient toutes assamblées a
the beauties of those of-the world were all assembled in
une, si n'ataindroient rien a cele demisele. Et avuec çou
one so not-would-reach anything to that damsel And with this
qu'ele a grant biauté si a ele grant riquoise, et si l'ont
that-she has great beauty so has she great wealth and so her-have
plusor chevalier demandée, et conte, et duc, et autre
many knights asked and counts and dukes and other
segnor, mais ele n'en volt onques a nul entendre. Or si
lords but she not-thereof wished ever to any to-attend Now so
saciés que li dame del Blanc castel fait crier .j. tornoi par
know that the lady of-the White castle makes cry a tourney by

devant se fille, qui molt est cortoise, par .j. tel covent
before her daughter who very is courteous by a such covenant
qui mis i est, que cil qui le tornoi pora vaincre
which put thereto is that he who the tourney shall-be-able win
ara le demisele, ja si povres bacelers ne sera, car ele
will-have the damsel ever so poor bachelor not he-will-be for she
le fera rice home, et metra a son commandement li
him will-make rich man and will-put at his command herself
et quanqu'ele a. Or si saciés que qui Dex otroiera l'eür
and whatever-she has Now so know that whom God will-grant the-fortune
que ce sera li plus rices hom del monde, et li plus
that this will-be the most rich man of-the world and the most
aaisiés qui or soit en le terre de Bretagne, fors seulement
eased who now be in the land of Britain except only
le roi Artu; et por çou i va mesire Meliandelis car
the king Arthur and for this there goes my-lord Meliant-de-Lis for
il l'a molt lonc tans amée, et volroit si esploitier, se
he her-has very long time loved and would-wish so to-accomplish if
il venoit au desus del tornoi, qu'il eüst le demisele a
he came to-the upper-hand of-the tourney that-he had the damsel as
feme.' Et lors lor demanda Percevaus quant il cuidoient
wife And then of-them asked Perceval when they thought
que le tornois deüst estre. Et il respondent: 'Biaus sire,
that the tourney should be And they answer Fair lord
il sera, d'ui en .iij. jors.' Et lors lor demanda Perceval
it will-be from-today in three days And then of-them asked Perceval
s'il i aroit plenté de chevaliers? Et quant li vallès l'oï
if-it there would-be plenty of knights And when the youth it-heard
si s'en rist et dist: 'Sire cevaliers, ce ne fist mie a
so himself-thereof laughed and said Sir knight this not did at-all to
demander, car li tornois fu criés a le cort le rice roi
ask for the tourney was cried at the court (of-)the rich king

Artu, si sai bien qu'il i venront tot le chevalier de le
Arthur so I-know well that-it there will-come all the knights of the
table reonde, car il sont revenu a ceste Pentecoste de le
table round for they are come-back at this Pentecost from the
queste del Graal, u il n'ont rien esploitié, et li rois
quest of-the Grail where they not-have anything achieved and the king
Artus si tint a ceste Pentecoste la forçor feste qu'il onques
Arthur so held at this Pentecost the greatest feast that-he ever
mais tenist; a cele feste fu criés li tornois, et bien saciés
before held at that feast was cried the tourney and well know
qu'il en i venront de se cort plus de .v.m., et bien
that-it thereof there will-come from his court more than five-thousand and well
sai que Mesire Gavains i venra, et Lanselos del Lac,
I-know that My-lord Gawain there will-come and Lancelot of-the Lake
et Kex li senescaus et Bedivers, et Mordrès, et Guirrès,
and Kay the seneschal and Bedivere and Mordred and Guerrebet
et cil .iij. sont frere mon segneur Gavains. Et saciés
and those three are brothers (of-)my lord Gawain And know
que Kex li senescaus se vanta, voiant tous les barons,
that Kay the seneschal himself boasted in-the-sight-of all the barons
qu'il l'en amenroit a le cort Artu, et le conqueroit
that-he her-thence would-bring to the court (of-)Arthur and her would-conquer
d'armes; si en risent molt li chevalier et li atornerent
by-arms so thereof laughed much the knights and to-him counted-it
a grant folie et meïsme li rois Artus l'en blasma molt
for great folly and even the king Arthur him-thereof blamed very
forment, et l'en gaba plusors fois, et dist bien li rois
greatly and him-thereof mocked several times and said well the king
Artus que, se Perceval ooit noveles del tornoi qu'il i
Arthur that if Perceval heard news of-the tourney that-he there
fust, il ne troveroit ja home qui peüst durer contre lui,
were he not would-find ever man who could last against him

car il a envoiés plus de .c. et .l. chevaliers prisons
for he has sent more than a-hundred and fifty knights prisoners
a le cort Artu. Or si est li rois molt dolans de çou
to the court (of-)Arthur Now so is the king very grieved of this
qu'il n'a esté a se cort, et cuide bien qu'il soit mors.
that-he not-has been at his court and thinks well that-he be dead
'Or saciés que nous vous avons dit verité de çou que tu
Now know that we to-you have told truth of this that thou
nous as demandé, mais or nous dites se vous i venrés
us hast asked but now to-us tell if you there will-come
avuec nous?' Et quant Perceval l'oï si lor dist qu'il
with us And when Perceval it-heard so to-them said that-he
n'iroit ore mie; et cil li respondi: 'Ausi m'aït
not-would-go now at-all and that-one to-him answered So me-may-help
Dex, vous avés droit, que vous i esploiteriés molt petit
God you have right for you there would-accomplish very little
de le vostre besogne.' Atant se departirent li vallet de
of the your business At-that themselves departed the youths from
Perceval, et cevaucierent lor cemin, et Percevaus s'arouta
Perceval and rode their road and Perceval himself-set-out
de l'autre part, et pensa qu'il se trairai vers le tornoi,
on the-other side and thought that-he himself would-draw toward the tourney
et cevauça toute s'ambleüre petite desci au vespre, et garda
and rode all his-amble small until to-the evening and looked
devant lui sor le cemin, et vit le maison a .j. vavassor, et
before him upon the road and saw the house of a vavasor and
estoit entor fermée de mur. Et quant Percevaus le vit si
was around closed with wall And when Perceval it saw so
en fu molt liés, et cevauça grant aleüre desci au castel,
thereof was very glad and rode great pace until to-the castle
et trova le segnor seant sor le pont, et .vj. vallès avuec lui,
and found the lord sitting upon the bridge and six youths with him

et regardoient çaus qui la passoient qui aloient au tornoi.
and they-watched those who there passed who went to-the tourney
Et si tost come li sire vit venir Perceval si sali encontre
And so soon as the lord saw come Perceval so leapt toward
lui, et le bien vegna molt liement, et li presenta molt
him and him well welcomed very gladly and to-him offered very
volentiers son ostel. Et Perceval qui molt en fu liés l'en
gladly his lodging And Perceval who very thereof was glad him-thereof
mercia molt, et descendi maintenant, et li vallet au segnor
thanked much and dismounted at-once and the youths of-the lord
s'atent, et li aidierent a desarmer, et emmena li uns
themselves-attend and him helped to disarm and led the one
son ceval en l'estable et l'aaisa au miels qu'il pot, et li
his horse into the-stable and it-eased at-the best that-he could and the
autre enporterent ses armes en une cambre, et il demoura
others carried his arms into a chamber and he remained
em pur le cors, et saciés que li sire le regarda molt
in pure the body and know that the lord him looked-at very
volentiers, car il estoit li plus biaus chevaliers del monde,
gladly for he was the most fair knight of-the world
et dist entre ses dens, que Perceval ne l'entendi mie: 'Molt
and said between his teeth so-that Perceval not it-heard at-all Very
est grans damages se si biaus chevaliers n'a proece en lui!'
is great harm if so fair knight not-has prowess in him
Atant vinrent .ij. vallet qui li afublerent .j. mantel, et
At-that came two youths who on-him put a mantle and
il s'asist joste le segnor, et regardoient les chevaliers, et
he himself-sat beside the lord and they-watched the knights and
le harnas qu'illuec passoit. Et Perceval demanda le segnor
the harness which-there passed And Perceval asked the lord
se il avoit lonc desci au Blanc castel? Et li sire respont:
if it was long until to-the White castle And the lord answers

‘Saciés que vous i venrés le matin ains prime.’ Et lors
Know that you there will-come the morning before prime And then
dist Perceval: ‘A i auques passés de chevaliers hui por
said Perceval Has there somewhat passed of knights today for
aler au tornoi?’ Et li sire respont: ‘Un poi ançois que
to-go to-the tourney And the lord answers A little before that
vous venissiés estoient passé cil de la cort Artu, et
you came were passed those of the court (of-)Arthur and
saciés qu’en le route avoit plus de .v.c. chevaliers; et
know that-in the troop there-was more than five-hundred knights and
si vous di qu’il amenoient le plus rice harnas que nus
so to-you I-say that-they brought the most rich harness that any
hom peüst veïr.’ Et quant Perceval l’oï si en fu molt
man could see And when Perceval it-heard so thereof was very
liés, et sisent la dusqu’a le nuit, et li sire demanda as
glad and they-sat there until-to the night and the lord asked of-the
serjans se on poroit a piece mangier, et il respondirent:
sergeants if one could in a-while eat and they answered
‘Oïl, par tans.’ Atant s’en monta li sire en le sale,
Yes by time At-that himself-thence climbed the lord into the hall
et tint Perceval par le main, et l’onera molt durement,
and held Perceval by the hand and him-honored very greatly
et commanda que les tables fussent mises, et on si fist
and commanded that the tables were set and one so did
puis qu’il l’ot commandé. Et quant la table fu mise si
since that-he it-had commanded And when the table was set so
issi le feme au seigneur de le cambre, et amena
came-out the wife of-the lord from the chamber and brought
avuec li ses .ij. filles, qui molt erent beles demiseles, et
with her her two daughters who very were fair damsels and
sages, et cortoises; et quant eles virent Perceval si l’onorent
wise and courteous and when they saw Perceval so him-honor

molt, et les fist seïr a le table joste Perceval, et saciés
much and them he-made sit at the table beside Perceval and know
que Perceval fu molt regardés le nuit de le dame et de
that Perceval was much looked-at the night by the lady and by
ses filles, et dient bien qu'onques mais si bel chevalier
her daughters and they-say well that-ever before so fair knight
n'avoient veü. Après mangier fist on le table oster, et li
not-they-had seen After eating made one the table remove and the
sire demanda Perceval se il estoit venus por aler au tornoi,
lord asked Perceval if he was come for to-go to-the tourney
et Perceval dit: 'Je le seuc yer primes, par les vallès
and Perceval says I it knew yesterday first through the youths
Meliandelis.' Et li sire respont: 'Çou est il meïsme qui a
(of-)Meliant-de-Lis And the lord answers This is he himself who has
pris le tornoi, et demain en doivent les vespres seoir, et
taken the tourney and tomorrow thereof must the vespers sit and
se jou osoie je vous en prieroie que vous i venissiés
if I dared I you thereof would-pray that you there should-come
od moi.' Et Perceval li a respondu et li dist: 'Biaus
with me And Perceval to-him has answered and to-him said Fair
ostes, saciés que jou irai molt volentiers por amor de vous,
host know that I shall-go very gladly for love of you
mais je ne m'i armeroie demain a nul fuer.' Et li sire
but I not myself-there would-arm tomorrow at any price And the lord
respont: 'Contre votre volenté ne vous en proieroi je mie.'
answers Against your will not you thereof would-pray I at-all

The vavasor and Perceval watch the first day, where Meliant de Lis, with his lion shield, and Gawain do best. Perceval vows to joust the next day, wearing the elder daughter's sleeve and borrowed arms so as not to be known. He unhorses Meliant de Lis, breaking his arm, and then Kay.

Atant furent li lit aparellié, et .iiij. vallet enmenerent
At-that were the beds prepared and four youths led
Perceval molt ricement coucier desci a lendemain au jor
Perceval very richly to-lie-down until to next-day at-the day
que li vallet se leverent par le cort. Et quant Perceval
that the youths themselves rose through the court And when Perceval
vit le jor si se leva, et li sire de l'ostel estoit ja
saw the day so himself rose and the lord of the-house was already
levés, et alerent oïr messe a une capele molt rice. Et quant
risen and they-went hear mass at a chapel very rich And when
le messe fu cantée si revinrent en le sale, et mangierent
the mass was sung so they-came-back into the hall and ate
par grant delit. Et quant il orent mangié si s'en vint
with great delight And when they had eaten so himself-thence came
le sire aval en le cort et commanda que li ceval fussent
the lord down into the court and commanded that the horses were
aparellié, et fist metre en un somier les armes Perceval, et
prepared and made put on a sumpter the arms (of-)Perceval and
montérent tantost, et alerent veïr le tornoi, qui molt estoit
they-mounted at-once and went see the tourney which much was
pris par grant aramie, ne il ne porent onques si tost venir
taken with great challenge nor they not could ever so soon come
que les ensagnes ne fussent fors issues as cans, et la
that the ensigns not were out issued to-the fields and there

peüssiés veoir tant bel escu, et tant bel ceval, et tante
you-could see so-many fair shield and so-many fair horse and so-many
rice armeüre, et tante rice ensagne de soie, ne onques
rich armor and so-many rich ensign of silk nor ever
puis le tans Artu ne fu tornois pris u il eüst tante
since the time (of-)Arthur not was tourney taken where there were so-many
rice armeüre, ne tant buen[s] chevaliers. Et saciés que
rich armor nor so-many good knights And know that
Meliandelis estoit issus as cans molt ricement armés, et
Meliant-de-Lis was gone-out to-the fields very richly armed and
avoit .j. escu d'or a .ij. lions, molt ricement painturé, et
had a shield of-gold with two lions very richly painted and
avoit entor son brac le mance a le demisele del castel, et
had around his arm the sleeve of the damsel of-the castle and
cevauçoit molt orguelleusement, et avoit en se compagne .l.
rode very proudly and had in his company fifty
chevaliers molt ricement aparelliés, et li hiralt s'escrierent:
knights very richly equipped and the heralds themselves-cried
'As hiaumes,' car il i ot molt grant aatie faite, et
To-the helms for it there was very great challenge made and
trambloient li cuer as coars, et saciés que vous onques
trembled the hearts of-the cowards and know that you ever
ne veïstes tornoi assambler par si grant aramie, car saciés
not saw tourney assemble with so great challenge for know
que Meliandelis s'eslaissa tos premiers en mi le campagne
that Meliant-de-Lis himself-launched all first into mid the field
devant tos ses compagnons, plus qu'uns ars ne traisist,
before all his companions more than-a bow — would-shoot
car il volroit faire cevalerie qu'a s'amie pleüst. Et tant
for he would-wish to-do chivalry which-to his-friend should-please And so
tost com mesire Gavains le vit, si adreça encontre
soon as my-lord Gawain him saw so directed-himself toward

lui, et s'entrevinrent plus tost qu'esmerellons ne aronde ne
him and each-other-came more swiftly than-merlin nor swallow —
volast; et s'entreferirent des lances es escus a or molt
would-fly and each-other-struck with-the lances on-the shields of gold very
aigrement, si que li escus froissierent et quasserent, et
fiercely so that the shields shattered and broke and
lor lances aresterent as haubers, et volerent li tronçon
their lances stopped at-the hauberks and flew the stumps
encontre mont, et s'entrepasserent outre molt orguelleusement
toward up and each-other-passed beyond very proudly
qu'onques li uns ne li autres n'i perdi estrier.
so-that-ever the one nor the other not-there lost stirrup

Atant s'asamblerent les compagnes molt vistement, et
At-that themselves-assembled the companies very quickly and
s'entrealerent ferir parmi escus et parmi haubers, et quant
each-other-went strike through shields and through hauberks and when
les lances furent froissies si salirent as espées, et la
the lances were shattered so they-leapt to-the swords and there
veïssiés le plus aigre tornoi qu'onques nus hom ne
you-would-have-seen the most fierce tourney that-ever any man —
peüst veïr, et la veïssiés en plus de .v.c. lius les
could see and there you-would-have-seen in more than five-hundred places the
banieres corre l'une desor l'autre, et saciés que Meliandelis
banners run the-one upon the-other and know that Meliant-de-Lis
i josta molt sovent, et gagna cevaus, et les envoia en
there jousted very often and won horses and them sent into
le ville a le demisele qui molt en ot grant joie. Et saciés
the town to the damsel who very thereof had great joy And know
que au mur del blanc castel avoit plus de .ccc.
that at-the wall of-the white castle there-were more than three-hundred
dames et demiseles qui les regardoient, et mostroient li
ladies and damsels who them watched and showed the

une a l'autre les plus proisiés d'armes, et cil del tornoi
one to the-other the most prized in-arms and those of-the tourney
s'en esforçoient molt durement, et saciés que Mesire
themselves-thereof strove very hard and know that My-lord
Gavains, et Lanselos, et cil de le table reonde faisoient
Gawain and Lancelot and those of the table round made
tos les rens ploier, et n'encontroient qu'il ne portassent
all the ranks bend and not-they-met that-they not bore
a terre; et Meliandelis de l'autre part et si chevaliers i
to earth and Meliant-de-Lis on the-other side and his knights there
faisoient mervelles d'armes, et dura li tornois dus'qu'a le
did marvels of-arms and lasted the tourney until-to the
nuit qu'il se departi, et saciés que Mesire Gavains, et
night that-it itself parted and know that My-lord Gawain and
Yvains, et Lanselos, et Kex li senescaus l'avoient tout molt
Yvain and Lancelot and Kay the seneschal it-had all very
bien fait, et Meliandelis de l'autre part, si que celes del
well done and Meliant-de-Lis on the-other side so that those of-the
castel n'en savoient auquels doner le prix, et disent qu'il
castle not-thereof knew to-which to-give the prize and said that-they
l'avoient tout si bien fait qu'eles non savoient a eslire le
it-had all so well done that-they not knew to choose the
mellor. Mais li demisele dist que Meliandelis l'avoit le miels
best But the damsel said that Meliant-de-Lis it-had the best
fait. Et saciés que le dame del Blanc castel, qui mere estoit
done And know that the lady of-the White castle who mother was
a le demisele, ne s'i acordoit mie, ains s'en
to the damsel not herself-thereto agreed at-all rather themselves-thereof
atornerent li plus d'eles a Gavain, si en demenoient molt
turned the most of-them to Gawain so thereof made very

grant estrif, et li demisele respondi: 'Demain porons
great strife and the damsel answered Tomorrow we-shall-be-able
savoir li quels est mieldres, et li quels en ara le pis.'
know the which is best and the which thereof will-have the worse
Tot ensi remest la parole, et Meliandelis s'en entra
All thus remained the word and Meliant-de-Lis himself-thence entered
el castel, et Mesire Gavains autresi, et Lanselos, et
into-the castle and My-lord Gawain likewise and Lancelot and
Kex li senescaus, et cil de le table reonde, et bien saciés
Kay the seneschal and those of the table round and well know
qu'onques mais au tornoi ne vit on tant bel ostel. Et
that-ever before at-the tourney not saw one so-much fair lodging And
quant li tornois del vespre si departi si s'en torna li
when the tourney of-the evening so parted so themselves-thence turned the
vavassere et Percevaus, et s'en revinrent au castel qui
vavasor and Perceval and themselves-thence came-back to-the castle which
n'estoit mie lonc d'illuec, et si tost com il furent descendu
not-was at-all far from-there and so soon as they were dismounted
si issirent li vallet contre aus, et menerent lor cevaus es
so came-out the youths toward them and led their horses into-the
estables, et les establerent molt ricement. Et li sire et
stables and them stabled very richly And the lord and
Perceval s'entreprisent par les mains, et en monterent en
Perceval each-other-took by the hands and thence climbed into
le sale, et commanda li sire le table a metre, et il si
the hall and commanded the lord the table to put and they so
firent, et s'asisent au mangier, et lors commença li sire a
did and themselves-sat at-the eating and then began the lord to
parler del tornoi, et si demanda li sires a Perceval li quels
speak of-the tourney and so asked the lord of Perceval the which
avoit miels fait a son essiant, et lors respondi Perceval que
had best done to his knowledge and then answered Perceval that

cil a l'escu d'or et as .ij. lions s'i avoit molt
he with the-shield of-gold and with-the two lions himself-there had very
bien contenu com chevaliers, et cil a l'escu blanc ravoit
well conducted as knight and he with the-shield white again-had
le miels fait, et li sire respont et dist: 'Saciés que cil a
the best done and the lord answers and said Know that he with
l'escu d'or et as .ij. lions estoit Meliandelis, et cil a
the-shield of-gold and with-the two lions was Meliant-de-Lis and he with
l'escu blanc, çou estoit li niés le roi Artu, et avoit
the-shield white this was the nephew (of-)the king Arthur and had
nom Gavains.' Et Perceval li respont et dist: 'Saciés que
name Gawain And Perceval to-him answers and said Know that
por autretant d'or comme cis castiaus est grans ne lairoie
for as-much of-gold as this castle is great not would-leave
jou que je n'i soie demain armés, et josterai a mon pooir,
I that I there be tomorrow armed and shall-joust to my power
et si volroie, si m'ait Dex, que Gavains et Meliandelis
and so would-wish so me-may-help God that Gawain and Meliant-de-Lis
se tornassent d'une part, et si josteroie contre aus.'
themselves turned on-one side and so would-joust against them
Quant li sire et ses filles l'oïrent si fisent molt grant
When the lord and his daughters it-heard so made very great
joie, et li dist li sire: 'Saciés que por l'amor de vous
joy and to-him said the lord Know that for the-love of you
m'armerai, et serai demain avuec vous.' Quant Perceval
myself-I-shall-arm and shall-be tomorrow with you When Perceval
l'entent si en fu molt liés, et l'en mercia molt. Ensi
it-hears so thereof was very glad and him-thereof thanked much Thus
le laissierent, et tant que li eure vint qu'il fu tans d'aler
it they-left and until that the hour came that-it was time of-going
gesir, et dormirent desi a le matinée, que Perceval et li
to-lie and slept until to the morning that Perceval and the

sire se leva, et oïrent le messe a le capele, et quant
lord himself rose and heard the mass at the chapel and when
il orent le messe oïe si vinrent en le sale, et se
they had the mass heard so came into the hall and themselves
desjunerent de pain et de vin, et lors vint l'ainsnée des
breakfasted on bread and on wine and then came the-eldest of-the
filles al segnor et li dist que por l'amor de li
daughters of-the lord and to-him said that for the-love of her
portast se mance avuec lui au tornoi; et quant Perceval
he-should-carry her sleeve with him to-the tourney and when Perceval
le vit si en fu molt liés, et dist que por amor de li
it saw so thereof was very glad and said that for love of her
volra faire plus d'armes qu'il onques fesist a nul jor,
he-will-wish to-do more of-arms than-he ever did on any day
et quant li sire l'a oï si en a molt grant joie. Atant
and when the lord it-has heard so thereof has very great joy At-that
monterent li vallet et menerent le harnas devant aus, et
mounted the youths and led the harness before them and
atant monterent li sires et Perceval, et cevauçerent desci
at-that mounted the lord and Perceval and rode until
au castel; et saciés que quant il vinrent as osteus si
to-the castle and know that when they came to-the lodgings so
s'armoient li chevaliers par le castel, et estoient monté li
themselves-armed the knights through the castle and were mounted the
chevaliers plusor sor lor cevaus, et garderent li chevaliers,
knights many upon their horses and looked the knights
si virent ja les dames et les demiseles montées as
so saw already the ladies and the damsels climbed to-the
murs, et quant Perceval vit qu'il s'armoient ja tuit,
walls and when Perceval saw that-they themselves-armed already all
si demanda ses armes, et s'arma molt ricement d'unes
so asked his arms and himself-armed very richly in-some

molt rices armes que li vavassere li avoit prestées, car
very rich arms which the vavasor to-him had lent for
il ne se voloit pas des soies armer por çou qu'on ne
he not himself wished at-all with-the his-own to-arm for this that-one not
le recouneüst, et saciés que Meliandelis avoit esté le nuit
him should-recognize and know that Meliant-de-Lis had been the night
a l'ostel monsignor Gavains, et s'estoient molt malement
at the-lodging (of-)my-lord Gawain and themselves-were very wickedly
ahati de foler çaus defors, si que les damoiseles del
vowed of trampling those outside so that the damsels of-the
castel l'en blasmoient molt durement por çou qu'il avoit
castle him-thereof blamed very hard for this that-he had
le nuit esté contre mon segnor Gavain. Mais saciés que le
the night been against my lord Gawain But know that the
demisele del castel les escusa au miels qu'ele pot, car ele
damsel of-the castle them excused at-the best that-she could for she
dist qu'a çaus defors estoient creües .iij. banieres, puis ce
said that-to those outside were grown three banners then this
dist si en au[r]oient cil dedens le pior, se Meliandelis ne
said so thereof would-have those within the worse if Meliant-de-Lis not
lor aidoit. Et quant cil defors l'oïrent si en orent molt
them aided And when those outside it-heard so thereof had very
grant duel, mais Saigremors dist que ja por çou ne laira
great grief but Sagremor said that ever for this not he-will-leave
a assambler. Et quant Perceval en oï le novele si en
to assemble And when Perceval thereof heard the news so thereof
fu molt liés, et dist a vavassor: 'miels lor venist
was very glad and said to vavasor better to-them it-would-come
qu'il se fussent tenu par defors.' Atant issirent li
that-they themselves were held by outside At-that went-out the
tornoi fors de le vile, et s'arengiérent molt belement li un
tourney out of the town and themselves-ranged very fairly the one

d'encoste l'autre, et li garçon, et li hiralt si tost com il
beside the-other and the boys and the heralds so soon as they
fusent ordené escrierent 'As hiaumes!' Et si tost com il
were ordered cried To-the helms And so soon as they
se furent escrié si veïssiés destendre d'une part et
themselves were cried so you-would-have-seen unleash on-one side and
d'autre, et saciés qu'il fu molt liés qui le plus isnel ceval
on-other and know that-he was very glad who the most swift horse
i ot. Et Meliandelis vint devant tous les autres eslaissiés,
there had And Meliant-de-Lis came before all the others launched
et si tost com Perceval le vit si en ot molt grant joie
and so soon as Perceval him saw so thereof had very great joy
et laissa corre encontre lui par grant aïr, et avoit entor son
and let run toward him with great fury and had around his
brac le mance a le demisele. Et quant les demiseles del
arm the sleeve of the damsel And when the damsels of-the
mur le virent si dirent toutes ensamble: 'Or poés veïr le
wall him saw so said all together Now you-can see the
plus bel chevalier que vous onques mais veïstes.' Or saciés
most fair knight that you ever before saw Now know
qu'il vinrent de la forçor aleüre qu'onques ceval porent
that-they came at the greatest pace that-ever horses could
rendre, et froissierent lor lances parmi lor escus, si que
render and shattered their lances through their shields so that
li tronçon en volerent encontre mont. Et Perceval, qui
the stumps thereof flew toward up And Perceval who
molt ot pooir et hardement, l'encontra si angoisseusement
much had power and boldness him-met so anguishedly
del pis et del cors et del hiaume, qu'il le fist
with-the chest and with-the body and with-the helm that-he him made
voler si malasivement a le terre qu'a poi que li cols ne
fly so painfully to the earth that-by little that the neck —

li fu rompus, et li froissa le brac destre en .ij.
to-him was broken and for-him shattered the arm right into two
moitiés, et il se pasma de l'angoisse plus de .xiiij.
halves and he himself swooned from the-anguish more than fourteen
fois, et saciés que de cel poindre que Perceval fist quant
times and know that in that charge that Perceval made when
il l'ot outré encontra Keu le senescal, et le hurta si
he him-had overcome he-met Kay the seneschal and him struck so
angoisseusement qu'il ne sot se il fu jors u nuis, et le
anguishedly that-he not knew if it was day or night and him
porta de ceval tot estendu a le terre.
bore from horse all stretched-out to the earth

XVI · MERLIN THE MOWER; THE QUESTION ASKED

Perceval unhorses Gawain, killing his horse, and the castle's side is routed. An old mower who is Merlin stops him, rebukes him for breaking his vow, and sets him on the road to the Fisher King's house. There, when the lance and the Grail pass, Perceval asks whom they serve. Bron is healed, explains the lance and the Grail, teaches him the secret words at the Holy Spirit's command, gives him the vessel, and dies three days later. The enchantments fall, the split stone at the Round Table is joined again, and Merlin brings Blaise to the Grail.

Quant cil defors virent le cevalerie si bele que Perceval
When those outside saw the chivalry so fair that Perceval
avoit faite si hurterent tot ensamble après lui des esporons,
had done so struck all together after him with-the spurs
et mesire Gavains et Lanselos revinrent encontre aus, et
and my-lord Gawain and Lancelot came-again toward them and
s'entrecontrerent les banieres si angoisseusement qu'il fisent
each-other-met the banners so anguishedly that-they made

toute le terre hocier, et saciés que Saigremor li desreés, qui
all the earth shake and know that Sagremor the unruly who
avuec çaus defors se tenoit, i josta molt durement, et i
with those outside himself held there jousted very hard and there
fist le jor tant d'armes que cil qui le virent le loerent, et
did the day so-much of-arms that those who him saw him praised and
li atornerent a grant bien. Et Lanselos et Mesire Gavains,
to-him counted-it for great good And Lancelot and My-lord Gawain
i referoient molt ruistement et faisoient molt forment les
there struck-again very fiercely and made very greatly the
rens ploier devant aus, mais saciés que sor tous autres chevaliers
ranks bend before them but know that over all other knights
le fist bien Perceval, car il n'encontra chevalier qu'il ne portast
it did well Perceval for he not-met knight that-he not bore
et lui et le ceval a terre, et si que celes qui estoient au mur
both him and the horse to earth and so that those who were at-the wall
disoient que molt avoit cele bien emploiée se mance qui cargie
said that very had she well employed her sleeve who entrusted
li avoit, car molt devroit grant joie avoir cui il devroit
to-him had for very ought great joy have whom he should
amer car il n'encontra chevalier qu'il n'envoit a terre tot plat.
love for he not-met knight that-he not-sent to earth all flat

Ensi disoient les demiseles de le tor u eles estoient,
Thus said the damsels of the tower where they were
et quant Mesire Gavains vit Perceval si en fu molt dolans
and when My-lord Gawain saw Perceval so thereof was very grieved
qu'ensi si grant li damagoit, et prist une lance qu'uns
that-thus so greatly him harmed and took a lance which-a
siens vallès li bailla, et s'en vint vers Perceval
his-own youth to-him gave and himself-thence came toward Perceval
grant aleüre. Et quant Perceval le vit si le douta molt
great pace And when Perceval him saw so him feared very

petit au samblant qu'il en fist, et neporquant se savoit
little by-the seeming that-he thereof made and nevertheless so knew
il monsegnor Gavains a molt preudome, et s'entreferirent
he my-lord Gawain for very worthy-man and each-other-struck
molt ruistement es escus que les lances peçoierent et
very fiercely on-the shields that the lances shattered and
volerent encontre mont li tronçon, et s'entrehurterent au
flew toward up the stumps and each-other-collided at-the
passer molt malasivement. Au passer que mesire Gavains
passing very painfully At-the passing that my-lord Gawain
fist si l'en avint molt malement car ses cevaus et il
made so to-him-thereof it-happened very badly for his horse and he
vola en mi le pré, et au ceval rompi li cols et morut.
flew into mid the meadow and to-the horse broke the neck and it-died
Adont se desconfirent cil dedens et tornerent les
Then themselves discomfited those within and turned the
dos, et quant Mesire Gavains vit que ses gens s'en
backs and when My-lord Gawain saw that his folk themselves-thence
fuioient si en fu molt dolans, et sali en piés, et
fled so thereof was very grieved and leapt on feet and
traist l'espée. Atant es .j. chevaliers qui li escria: 'Por
drew the-sword At-that behold a knight who to-him cried For
Diu dans chevaliers vous demourés devers nous:' Atant
God sir knight you remain toward us At-that
s'eslaissa a lui, et li volt le hiaume esracier de le
himself-launched at him and from-him wished the helm to-tear from the
teste. Quant Gavains le vit si en ot molt grant engagne
head When Gawain him saw so thereof had very great vexation
et s'aproça de lui, et hauça l'espée, et le feri si
and himself-approached of him and raised the-sword and him struck so
durement qu'il le fendi desci es dens, et l'abati
hard that-he him split down-to in-the teeth and him-struck-down

a terre, et prist le ceval et i monta, et poinst après
to earth and took the horse and thereon mounted and spurred after
ses gens, et ainçois qu'il i venist abati .iiij. cevaliers
his folk and before that-he there came struck-down four knights
devant lui, et ses gens se flatirent en le vile, et cil
before him and his folk themselves flung into the town and those
defors les encaucierent desci as portes, et prisent assés
outside them chased until to-the gates and took plenty
harnas, et gaagnierent cevaus, et prisent prisons; et si tost
harness and won horses and took prisoners and so soon
com li descomfiture fu faite, Perceval vint a son oste, et
as the discomfiture was made Perceval came to his host and
li presenta .iij. des mellors cevaus qu'il avoit gaagniés, et
to-him presented three of-the best horses that-he had won and
voloit que se fille les eüst por se mance qu'il avoit portée,
wished that his daughter them had for her sleeve that-he had carried
et li sire l'en merçia molt. Atant dist Perceval: 'Sire
and the lord him-thereof thanked much At-that said Perceval Lord
alons ent, car je volrai encor a nuit gesir a votre ostel.' Si
let-us-go thence for I shall-wish still at night to-lie at your lodging So
com il s'estoient arouté li sires et Perceval et li vallet,
as they themselves-were set-out the lord and Perceval and the youths
si virent devant lui .j. home venir viel et barbu, et estoit
so they-saw before him a man come old and bearded and was
bien vestus, et portoit une fauc a son col, et bien sambloit
well clothed and carried a scythe at his neck and well seemed
faucheors, et vint encontre aus, et prist Perceval par le
mower and came toward them and took Perceval by the
frain, et li dist: 'Musart, tu es fols, et pas ne deüsses
bridle and to-him said Fool thou art mad and at-all not shouldst

aler a tornoi.' Et quant Perceval l'oï si s'en mervella
go to tourney And when Perceval it-heard so himself-thereof marveled
molt, et li demanda: 'Viellars, qu'en gist il sor vous?'
much and of-him asked Old-man what-thereof lies it upon you
Et li preudom respondi: 'Si fait, et a moi, et a
And the worthy-man answered So it-does and to me and to
autrui en monte il, car saces qu'il en monte sor toi
others thereof amounts it for know that-it thereof amounts upon thee
et sor moi, et bien te di que sor moi en monte
and upon me and well to-thee I-say that upon me thereof amounts
plus que sor autrui.' Et quant Perceval l'oï si s'en
more than upon others And when Perceval it-heard so himself-thereof
mervella molt durement, et li demanda: 'Qui es tu?' Et
marveled very greatly and of-him asked Who art thou And
li hom respondi: 'Je sui fius a .j. home que tu counois
the man answered I am son to a man whom thou knowest
mauvaisement, et il te counoist miels que tu lui, et saces
badly and he thee knows better than thou him and know
que de sa counissance ne puet a nului biens venir, et
that from his acquaintance not can to anyone good come and
dolans puet estre qu'il counoist.' Quant Perceval entendi
grieved can be whom-he knows When Perceval heard
çou que cil li disoit si s'en mervella molt, et
this that that-one to-him said so himself-thereof marveled much and
dist: 'Diroies tu me rien de ton afaire se je descendoie?'
said Wouldst-tell thou me anything of thy affair if I dismounted
Et li preudom respont: 'Je te diroie tel cose que je
And the worthy-man answers I to-thee would-tell such thing that I
ne diroie mie devant le gent.' Quant Perceval l'oï si
not would-tell at-all before the folk When Perceval it-heard so
en fu molt liés, et dist a son oste: 'Biaus sire, alés
thereof was very glad and said to his host Fair lord go

vous ent, et m'atendés al ostel, et je parlerai a cest
yourself thence and me-await at-the lodging and I shall-speak to this
preudome, et puis vous sivrai.' Et li ostes respondi: 'Sire,
worthy-man and then you shall-follow And the host answered Lord
volentiers.' Atant s'en torna li vavasseres, et Perceval
gladly At-that himself-thence turned the vavasor and Perceval
demoura, et s'en vint au preudom, et li demanda
remained and himself-thence came to-the worthy-man and of-him asked
qu'il estoit, et cil li respondi: 'Je suis uns faukiere,
what-he was and that-one to-him answered I am a mower
ce poés veoir.' Et Perceval li respondi: 'Qui t'a dont
this you-can see And Perceval to-him answered Who thee-has then
dit tant de mon afaire?' Et li preudom li a respondu:
told so-much of my affair And the worthy-man to-him has answered
'Ançois que tu fusses nés seuc je ton nom.' Et quant
Before that thou wert born knew I thy name And when
Perceval l'oï si s'en mervella molt, et li dist:
Perceval it-heard so himself-thereof marveled much and to-him said
'Je conjur de par Diu que tu me dies de mon estre et
I conjure from by God that thou to-me tell of my being and
de ton affaire, et si t'en conjur de par Diu que tu
of thy affair and so thee-thereof I-conjure from by God that thou
le me dies.' Et cil li a respondu: 'Je ne t'en
it to-me tell And that-one to-him has answered I not to-thee-thereof
mentirai ja. Saces que je suis apelés Merlins, et sui venus
shall-lie ever Know that I am called Merlin and am come
de Nortumbellande por parler a toi.' Et quant Perceval
from Northumberland for to-speak to thee And when Perceval
l'oï si s'en mervella molt, et li dist, 'Por Diu,
it-heard so himself-thereof marveled much and to-him said For God
Merlin, jou ai molt oï parler de toi, et que tu es molt
Merlin I have much heard speak of thee and that thou art very

buens devins, mais por Diu di moi comment je porai
good seer but for God tell me how I shall-be-able
trover le maison le rice Roi Pescheor?' Et Merlins li
find the house (of-)the rich King Fisher And Merlin to-him
a respondu, 'Je t'en dirai buenes ensagnes, saces que
has answered I to-thee-thereof shall-tell good tokens know that
Dex t'a nuisi par ton voe que tu as trespassé, et
God thee-has harmed through thy vow that thou hast transgressed and
saces que tu avoies voé que tu ne giroies en .j. ostel
know that thou hadst vowed that thou not wouldst-lie in one lodging
qu'une nuit, et tu a geü .ij. nuis a le maison le
but-one night and thou hast lain two nights at the house (of-)the
vavasseur, la u tu voloies ore aler encore gesir.' Et
vavasor there where thou wishedst now to-go still to-lie And
Perceval li a respondu: 'Je ne m'en estoie garde
Perceval to-him has answered I not myself-thereof was heed
donée.' Et Merlins li dist: 'Dont t'est il plus legier a
given And Merlin to-him said Then to-thee-is it more light to
pardouner. Or t'avoiera[i] a le maison ton taion,
pardon Now thee-I-shall-set-on-the-way to the house (of-)thy grandfather
si que tu i venras ains un an.' Et quant Perceval
so that thou there wilt-come before a year And when Perceval
l'oï si li dist: 'Por Diu, Merlin, ensagne le moi plus
it-heard so to-him said For God Merlin show it me more
proçainnement.' Et Merlins li a respondu: 'Il i a
soon And Merlin to-him has answered It there is
molt de poins, car encor anuit i poroies tu venir, mais
many of points for still tonight there couldst thou come but
tu i venras ains un an. Mais gardes, quant tu i es
thou there wilt-come before a year But take-care when thou there art
venus, que tu ne soies mie sos, mais demande de quanque
come that thou not be at-all fool but ask of whatever

tu vois.' Et Perceval li a respondu: 'Sire, si ferai jou,
thou seest And Perceval to-him has answered Lord so shall-do I
se Dex me laist venir.' Lors li dist Merlin: 'Je m'en
if God me lets come Then to-him said Merlin I myself-thence
irai, je ne parlerai mais a toi, si sera molt esmieldrés
shall-go I not shall-speak more to thee so it-will-be much bettered
de ta creance, et de quele eure que tu aies le vaissel
of thy belief and from what hour that thou may-have the vessel
a Jesus Christ en garde, je t'amenrai mon maistre qui
of Jesus Christ in keeping I to-thee-shall-bring my master who
a escrit tes oeuvres et les moies, partie non totes, et je
has written thy works and the mine part not all and I
m'en vois.' Atant s'en torna, et Perceval esgarde, et
myself-thence go At-that himself-thence turned and Perceval looks and
n'en vit mie. Atant leva se main et se segna, et vint
not-thereof saw at-all At-that raised his hand and himself crossed and came
a son ceval et i monta, et s'en torna le cemin
to his horse and thereon mounted and himself-thence turned the road
que Merlins li avoit mostré, et cevauça tant par le
that Merlin to-him had shown and rode so-long by the
volenté Nostre Segnor qu'il vit meïsme le jor que Merlins
will (of-)Our Lord that-he saw same the day that Merlin
li avoit ensagnié le maison son taion, et cevauça
to-him had shown the house (of-)his grandfather and rode
tant qu'il vint a le porte, et descendi devant le sale.
so-long that-he came to the gate and dismounted before the hall

Atant vinrent doi serjant encontre lui, et le bien vegnierent
At-that came two sergeants toward him and him well welcomed
molt, et li aidierent a desarmer, et li establerent son
much and him helped to disarm and for-him stabled his
ceval molt ricement, et l'enmenerent en le sale la u li rois
horse very richly and him-led into the hall there where the king

ses taions estoit, et si tost com il vit Perceval si se dreça
his grandfather was and so soon as he saw Perceval so himself raised
tant com il pot contre lui, et fu molt liés de se venue. Et
so-much as he could toward him and was very glad of his coming And
Perceval s'assist joste lui et parlerent ensamble de plusors coses,
Perceval himself-sat beside him and they-spoke together of several things
et tant que li sire commanda que la table fust mise, et on
and until that the lord commanded that the table were set and one
si fist puis qu'il [l'] ot commandé, et s'asisent au mangier.
so did since that-he it had commanded and themselves-sat at-the eating
Si com on ot le premier mes aporté si issi li lance
So as one had the first dish brought so came-out the lance
d'une cambre, qui sannoit par le fer, et après vint le
from-a chamber which bled by the iron and after came the
Graaus, et li demisele qui portoit les petis tailleors d'argent;
Grail and the damsel who carried the little platters of-silver
et Perceval, qui molt fu desireus del demander, si dist au
and Perceval who very was desirous of-the asking so said to-the
segnor: 'Sire, par le foi que vous me devés, et que vous
lord Lord by the faith that you to-me owe and that you
devés a tous homes, dites moi qui on sert de ces coses
owe to all men tell me whom one serves with these things
que je voi illuec porter?' Et tant tost com il ot çou dit si
that I see there carry And so soon as he had this said so
se regarda et vit que li Rois Peschiere estoit mués de se
himself looked and saw that the King Fisher was changed from his
nature, et estoit garis de se maladie, et estoit sains comme
nature and was healed of his sickness and was sound as
pissons. Et quant Percevaus le vit si s'en mervella molt,
fish And when Perceval it saw so himself-thereof marveled much
et li sire sali sus et prist Perceval par le pié, et li volt
and the lord leapt up and took Perceval by the foot and it wished

baisier, mais Perceval ne li volt soufrir. Atant salirent li
to-kiss but Perceval not to-him wished to-suffer At-that leapt the
vallet par le maison et fisent de Perceval molt grant joie,
youths through the house and made of Perceval very great joy
et lors vint Perceval a lui, et li dist: 'Sire, saciés qu'Alains
and then came Perceval to him and to-him said Lord know that-Alain
le Gros qui fu vostre fius, sire, saciés que cil fu mes pere.'
the Fat who was your son lord know that he was my father
Et quant li Rois Peschiere l'a oï si recommença la joie
And when the King Fisher it-has heard so began-again the joy
grans, et li dist: 'Biaus niés, je sui molt liés de le vostre
great and to-him said Fair grandson I am very glad of the your
venue.' Atant s'agenella, et rendi sa grace a Nostre Segnor,
coming At-that himself-knelt and rendered his thanks to Our Lord
et atant prist Perceval par le main, et l'enmena devant son
and at-that took Perceval by the hand and him-led before his
vaissel, et li dist: 'Biaus niés, saciés que ce est ci li
vessel and to-him said Fair grandson know that this is here the
lance dont Longis feri Jesus Christ en le crois, et cil
lance wherewith Longinus struck Jesus Christ on the cross and that
vaissiaus qu'on apele Graal saciés que çou est li sans que
vessel which-one calls Grail know that this is the blood which
Joseph recueli de ses plaies qui decouroient a le terre, et
Joseph gathered from his wounds which flowed to the earth and
por çou l'apelons nous Graal qu'il agrée a tous preudomes,
for this it-call we Grail for-it is-pleasing to all worthy-men
et a tous çaus qui en sa compagnie pueent durer, ne il
and to all those who in its company can last nor it
ne poroit en sa compagnie soufrir pecié. Et je proierai a
not could in its company suffer sin And I shall-pray to
Nostre Segnor qu'il m'avoit que je porai faire de toi.'
Our Lord that-he me-may-show what I shall-be-able do with thee

Lors s'agenella Bron devant son vaissel, et dist: 'Biaus
Then himself-knelt Bron before his vessel and said Fair
Sire Dex, si voirement com çou est ci vostre beneois sans,
Lord God so truly as this is here your blessed blood
et que vous sofristes qu'il me fu dounés après le mort
and that you suffered that-it to-me was given after the death
Joseph, et que je l'ai gardé des puis en ça, si me faites
(of-)Joseph and that I it-have kept from since to here so to-me make
voire demostrance que jou en ferai en avant.'
true showing what I therewith shall-do in forward
Lors descendi li vois del Saint Esperit et li dist:
Then descended the voice of-the Holy Spirit and to-him said
'Bron, or saces tu que li prophetie sera acomplie que
Bron now know thou that the prophecy will-be fulfilled that
Nostre Sire commanda a Joseph. Nostre Sire te mande
Our Lord commanded to Joseph Our Lord thee sends-word
qu'iceles sacrées paroles qu'il aprist a Joseph en le prison
that-those sacred words which-he taught to Joseph in the prison
quant il te bailla le Graal, apren a cestui, et met en garde
when he thee gave the Grail teach to this-one and put in keeping
de par Nostre Segnor, et d'ui en tierç jor departirés
from by Our Lord and from-today in third day you-will-depart
de cest siecle, et venras en la compagnie des Apostles.'
from this world and wilt-come into the company of-the Apostles
Atant s'en parti le vois, et Bron le fist ensi com il
At-that itself-thence parted the voice and Bron it did thus as it
l'ot ensagnié, et li aprist les sacrées paroles que Joseph
him-had taught and to-him taught the sacred words that Joseph
li avoit aprises, que je ne vous puis dire ne ne doi,
to-him had taught which I not to-you can tell nor not ought
et li aprist tote la creance Nostre Segnor, et comment
and to-him taught all the belief (of-)Our Lord and how

il l'avoit veü petit enfant, et comment il l'avoit veü el
he him-had seen small child and how he him-had seen in-the
temple, la u il avoit les maistres conclus, et si com li
temple there where he had the masters confounded and so as the
haut home de le terre de Judée l'acuelloient a haine, et
high men of the land of Judea him-took in hatred and
si com il avoit .j. faus deciple qui le vendi as Juis, et
so as he had a false disciple who him sold to-the Jews and
si com il le vit en crois drecier, et si com ses serorges
so as he him saw on cross raise and so as his brother-in-law
qui avoit nom Joseph l'avoit rové, et comment Pilate li
who had name Joseph him-had requested and how Pilate to-him
avoit douné, et comment il l'osta de le crois, et si
had given and how he him-took-down from the cross and so
com il l'ot coucié a terre qu'il vit corre son sanc a le
as he him-had laid to earth that-he saw run his blood to the
terre, et comment il en ot pitié, et comment il le reçut
earth and how he thereof had pity and how he it received
en .j. vaissel, 'en celui meïsme que vous veés illuec; ne en
in a vessel in that same that you see there nor in
se compagnie ne puet veïr peceor.' Et li aconta toute le
its company not can see sinner And to-him told all the
vie que ses buens ancestres avoit menée, et Perceval l'a
life that his good ancestors had led and Perceval it-has
oïe molt volentiers, et tant tost fu raplenis de la grasse
heard very gladly and so soon was refilled with the grace
del Saint Esperit. Et Bron li viels bailla Perceval le vaissel
of-the Holy Spirit And Bron the old gave Perceval the vessel
entre ses mains, et del vaissel issi une melodie, et
between his hands and from-the vessel came-out a melody and
une flairors issi precieuse qu'il lor sambla qu'il fussent
a fragrance so precious that-it to-them seemed that-they were

en Paradis o les angles, et Bron fu tous les .iij. jors
in Paradise with the angels and Bron was all the three days
avuec Perceval, qui auques estoit de jors, et au tierç jor
with Perceval who somewhat was of days and on-the third day
vint devant son vaissel et la se couça en crois, et rendi
came before his vessel and there himself lay in cross and rendered
grasses a Nostre Segnor, et illuec devia. Et quant il devioit
thanks to Our Lord and there died And when he died
Perceval i vint, et garda, et vit David od sa harpe,
Perceval there came and looked and saw David with his harp
et angles a plenté od encensiers u il atendoient l'ame
and angels in plenty with censers where they awaited the-soul
Bron, et l'enporterent en le maïsté avuec son pere qu'il
(of-)Bron and it-carried-off into the majesty with his father whom-he
avoit lonc tans servi. Et Percevaus demoura illuec, qui molt
had long time served And Perceval remained there who very
fu preudom, et chaïrent li encantement, et derompirent
was worthy-man and fell the enchantments and broke
par tot le mont, et estoit a cel jor meïsme li roi Artus
through all the world and was on that day same the king Arthur
a le table reonde, que Merlins fonda, et oïrent .j. escrois
at the table round which Merlin founded and they-heard a crash
issi grant qu'il s'en esfreerent molt durement, et
so great that-they themselves-thereof frightened very greatly and
li piere rasolda qui fendi desos Perceval quant il s'asist
the stone rejoined which split beneath Perceval when he himself-sat
el liu vuit. Si lor vint a grant mervelle, car il ne
in-the place empty So to-them it-came to great marvel for they not
savoient que ce senefioit, et lors vint Merlins a Blayse,
knew what this signified and then came Merlin to Blaise
et li conta ces coses et quant Blayses l'oï si li
and to-him told these things and when Blaise it-heard so to-him

dist: 'Merlin, tu me desis que quant cis afaires seroit
said Merlin thou to-me saidst that when this affair would-be
akievés que tu me metroies en la compagnie del Graal.'
achieved that thou me wouldst-put into the company of-the Grail
Et Merlins li respondi: 'Blayses, saces que tu i seras
And Merlin to-him answered Blaise know that thou there shalt-be
ains le jor de demain'; et atant prist Blayses Merlin et
before the day of tomorrow and at-that took Blaise Merlin and
l'en aporta ciés le maison le rice Roi Pescheor, qui
him-thence brought to the house (of-)the rich King Fisher who
avoit nom Perceval, et demoura en la compagnie del Graal.
had name Perceval and remained in the company of-the Grail

XVII · ARTHUR CROSSES TO FRANCE

Merlin tells Arthur that the prophecy is fulfilled and that Perceval, lord of the Grail, has left chivalry. With the adventures ended, the knights mean to seek them abroad, and Kay urges Arthur to conquer France instead. Arthur gathers a great host, leaves Mordred his land and his queen, crosses to Normandy, and receives the duke's homage. King Floire of France offers to settle the war in single combat, and the two kings meet on an isle below Paris.

Quant Merlins ot ceste cose afinée si s'en vint a le cort
When Merlin had this thing ended so himself-thence came to the court
Artu a Carduel, et quant Artus le vit si en fist molt
(of-)Arthur at Carduel and when Arthur him saw so thereof made very
grant joie, et si home li disent qu'il demande Merlin
great joy and his men to-him said that-he should-ask Merlin
quele senefiance ce fu de le piere qui rasolda a le table
what signification this was of the stone which rejoined at the table
reonde, et li rois dist: 'Je l'en pris molt, et qu'il le me
round and the king said I him-thereof pray much and that-he it to-me

die se lui plaist.' Et Merlins respondi: 'Artu, saces qu'a ton
tell if him it-pleases And Merlin answered Arthur know that-in thy
tans est acomplie li plus haute prophetie qu'onques avenist,
time is fulfilled the most high prophecy that-ever happened
car li Rois Pesciere est garis, et sont cheü li encantement
for the King Fisher is healed and are fallen the enchantments
de le terre de Bretagne, et Percevaus est sire del Graal par
of the land of Britain and Perceval is lord of-the Grail by
l'avenement de Nostre Segnor, et or poés veoir que molt
the-coming of Our Lord and now you-can see that very
est preudon quant Nostre Sire li a baillié son digne
he-is worthy-man since Our Lord to-him has given his worthy
sanc a garder, et por çou solda li piere qui fendue estoit
blood to keep and for this rejoined the stone which split was
desos lui, et bien sace Gavains et Kex li senescaus
beneath him and well may-know Gawain and Kay the seneschal
que ce fu Perceval meïsme qui le tornoi del Blanc castel
that this was Perceval himself who the tourney of-the White castle
venqui et vos abati a le terre tous estendus, mais tant
won and you struck-down to the earth all stretched-out but so-much
vous puis je bien dire qu'il a pris a le cevalerie congié,
to-you can I well say that-he has taken from the chivalry leave
et se volra desormais tenir a le grasse de son Creator.'
and himself will-wish henceforth to-hold to the grace of his Creator

Quant li rois et li baron l'oïrent si en pleurent tot
When the king and the barons it-heard so thereof wept all
ensamble, et proierent a Nostre Segnor qu'il le menast a
together and prayed to Our Lord that-he him should-lead to
buene fin. Dont prist Merlins congié au roi, et s'en
good end Then took Merlin leave of-the king and himself-thence
revint a Blayse et a Perceval et li fist tot metre en escrit.
came-back to Blaise and to Perceval and to-him made all put in writing

Et li baron qui a le cort Artu estoient, quant il oïrent
And the barons who at the court (of-)Arthur were when they heard
que li encantement estoient remés et les aventures, si en fu
that the enchantments were ended and the adventures so thereof was
molt dolant, et li joune home, et li baceler, et cil de le
very grieved and the young men and the bachelors and those of the
table reonde disent qu'il n'avoient cure de sejorner avuec le
table round said that-they not-had care of sojourning with the
roi Artu, et disent qu'il passeroient mer por cevalerie querre.
king Arthur and said that-they would-cross sea for chivalry to-seek

Quant Kex li senescaus l'oï si en fu molt dolans, et
When Kay the seneschal it-heard so thereof was very grieved and
s'en vint au roi, si li dist: 'Sire, saciés que tot li
himself-thence came to-the king so to-him said Lord know that all the
vostre baron vos vuelent guerpir por aler en estrange terre
your barons you wish to-abandon for to-go into strange land
querre aventure, et vous estes li plus proisiés rois qu'onques
seek adventure and you are the most prized king that-ever
fust en le terre de Bretagne, et avés le mellor cevalerie
was in the land of Britain and have the best chivalry
qu'onques nus hom eüst. Soviegne vous qu'il a eü .iij.
that-ever any man had Remember you that-there has been three
rois en Bretagne qui ont esté roi de France, et empereor
kings in Britain who have been king of France and emperor
de Rome, et Merlins dist que vous en seriés encore
of Rome and Merlin said that you thereof would-be still
rois, et vous savés bien que Merlins est li plus sages
king and you know well that Merlin is the most wise
hom del monde, ne onques a nule mençogne ne fu pris,
man of-the world nor ever in any lie not was caught
et bien saciés que se vostre cevalerie vous depart, et va
and well know that if your chivalry from-you departs and goes

en estrange contrée por querre aventure, saciés que jamais
into strange country for to-seek adventure know that ever-more
tous ensamble ne les rarés. Or gardés rois, que ne
all together not them you-will-regain Now take-care king that not
soiés pereceus, ne si ne perdés pas le buen los que avés
you-be slothful nor so not lose at-all the good praise that you-have
eü lonc tans, mais passés le mer, et conquerés France,
had long time but cross the sea and conquer France
et Normendie, et le departé[s] as barons qui vos ont
and Normandy and it divide to-the barons who you have
longement servi, et nous vous en aiderons a nos pooirs.'
long served and we you therein shall-aid to our powers
Quant Artus a oï ceste parole, si en a molt grant joie,
When Arthur has heard this word so thereof has very great joy
et s'en vint a ses barons, et s'en consella de tel
and himself-thence came to his barons and himself-thereof counseled of such
cose, et cascuns li loa endroit soi et disent qu'il li
thing and each-one him advised for himself and said that-they him
aideront volentiers; et quant Artus oï que li plus rice home
will-aid gladly and when Arthur heard that the most rich men
de se terre li looient si tressali de joie et fist ses letres
of his land him advised so leapt of joy and made his letters
enseeler, et les fist a .j. messages porter par tot son païs,
seal and them made by a messengers carry through all his country
et mist es letres que nus hom qui aidier se peüst ne
and put in-the letters that any man who help himself could not
remansist qu'il ne venist, car il donroit tant a cascuns qu'il
should-remain that-he not came for he would-give so-much to each-one that-he
le feroit rice home. Et li message s'en tornerent et
him would-make rich man And the messengers themselves-thence turned and
assamblerent si grant ost qu'il furent plus de .c. mile
assembled so great host that-they were more than a-hundred thousand

ançois que li mois passast. Et quant li rois les vit si en
before that the month passed And when the king them saw so thereof
fu molt liés et les ala veïr, o lui mon segnor Gavains, et
was very glad and them went see with him my lord Gawain and
Keu li senescal, et le roi Lot d'Orchanie, et vint a cascune
Kay the seneschal and the king Lot of-Orkney and came to each
tente, et lors fist si grant joie de cascun haut home, et
tent and then made so great joy of each high man and
traist a s'amor lor cuers, et lor douna molt rices dons,
drew to his-love their hearts and to-them gave very rich gifts
et tant qu'il s'escrierent: 'Roi Artus saces que tu pers tout
and until that-they themselves-cried King Arthur know that thou losest all
le mont par te perece, car saciés se vous aviés le cuer que
the world through thy sloth for know if you had the heart that
nous avons nous vous conqueriemes France, et Normendie,
we have we for-you would-conquer France and Normandy
et Rome, et toute Lombardie, neis a Jerusalem te ferions
and Rome and all Lombardy even at Jerusalem thee would-make
nous porter corone, et seroies sire de tot le mont.'
we bear crown and thou-wouldst-be lord of all the world

Ensi disoient li Breton a lor segnor Artu, et quant li
Thus said the Bretons to their lord Arthur and when the
rois l'entendi si en fu molt liés et jura son cief que jamais
king it-heard so thereof was very glad and swore his head that ever-more
ne cessera si ara conquis France que que soit de
not he-will-cease until he-will-have conquered France whatever that be of
plus. Lors fist mander tous les carpentiers de son païs et
more Then he-made summon all the carpenters of his country and
fist carpenter le plus rice estoire qu'onques oïst on parler,
made build the most rich fleet that-ever heard one speak
et quant les nés et les galyes furent atornées si s'en
and when the ships and the galleys were arrayed so themselves-thence

vinrent au havne et misent ens pain et vin, et car, et
came to-the haven and put within bread and wine and meat and
sel, et armes, et dras, et entrerent les chevaliers es nés,
salt and arms and cloths and entered the knights into-the ships
et misent molt rices cevaus. Et li rois Artus commanda
and put very rich horses And the king Arthur entrusted
Mordret se terre et son païs a garder, et se feme le roïne,
(to-)Mordred his land and his country to keep and his wife the queen
et cil Mordrés estoit frere mon segnor Gavains et fius
and that Mordred was brother (of-)my lord Gawain and son
le roi Lot d'Orchanie, et estoit de molt mal pensé. Atant
(of-)the king Lot of-Orkney and was of very ill thought At-that
prist Artus congié et s'en vint au port, et siglerent
took Arthur leave and himself-thence came to-the port and they-sailed
au vent et as estoiles, et tant alerent par mer que
by-the wind and by-the stars and so-long went by sea that
lor estoires ariva en Normendie, et si tost com il furent
their fleet arrived in Normandy and so soon as they were
issu des nés si corurent par le terre et prisent homes
gone-out of-the ships so ran through the land and took men
et femes et proies, et escillierent molt durement le païs,
and women and booty and ravaged very hard the country
et saciés qu'onques terre ne fu a si grant dolor atornée.
and know that-ever land not was to so great sorrow turned

Quant li dus le seut si manda au roi trives tant qu'il
When the duke it knew so asked of-the king truce until that-he
eüst parlé a lui, et li rois Artus li otroia, et vint
had spoken to him and the king Arthur to-him granted and he-came
en l'ost Artu, et devint ses hom, et dist qu'il tenroit
into the-host (of-)Arthur and became his man and said that-he would-hold
se terre de lui par treü rendant, et li rois le reçut molt
his land from him by tribute rendering and the king him received very

liement; et li dus avoit une molt bele fille, et li rois
gladly and the duke had a very fair daughter and the king
le douna a Keu son senescal et toute le terre au duc
her gave to Kay his seneschal and all the land of-the duke
ensement. Atant s'en departi li rois, et trespassa le
likewise At-that himself-thence departed the king and passed the
terre au duc, et entra en le terre le roi de France. A
land of-the duke and entered into the land (of-)the king of France At
cel tans avoit .j. roi en France qui avoit non Floires, et
that time there-was a king in France who had-as name Floire and
quant il sot qu'Artus venoit sor lui si en fu molt dolans,
when he knew that-Arthur came upon him so thereof was very grieved
et semonst ses os par tote se terre, et assamblerent
and summoned his hosts through all his land and they-assembled
a Paris, et quant il furent assamblé si i ot molt grant
at Paris and when they were assembled so there was very great
cevalerie, et la dist li roi Floires qu'il atendroit Artu. Et
chivalry and there said the king Floire that-he would-await Arthur And
Artus qui cest afaire sot cevauça la u il le cuida trover
Arthur who this affair knew rode there where he him thought to-find
et vint droitement a .ij. liues de l'ost des François. Et
and came straight to two leagues from the-host of-the French And
quant li rois Floires sot sa venue, si prist .ij. mesages, et
when the king Floire knew his coming so took two messengers and
les envoia en l'ost Artu, et lor dist: 'Segnor mesage,
them sent into the-host (of-)Arthur and to-them said Lords messengers
vous m'en irés droitement as Bretons, et dites le
you for-me-thence will-go straight to-the Bretons and tell the
roi Artu que ja mar por le terre conquerre fera
king Arthur that ever in-ill-hour for the land to-conquer he-will-make
chevalier ocire, mais dites lui se il est tant preus qu'il ost
knight kill but tell him if he is so-much valiant that-he dare

desrannier l'onor de France seul a seul, moi e lui, saciés
contest the-honor of France alone to alone me and him know
que je sui tos près d'entrer en le bataille, u il ait
that I am all ready of-entering into the battle either he may-have
France, u jou aie Bretagne.' Atant vinrent li mesage
France or I may-have Britain At-that came the messengers
en l'ost la u li roi Artus estoit, et le demanderent,
into the-host there where the king Arthur was and him asked-for
et on lor ensagna son pavellon, et il i alerent et
and one to-them showed his pavilion and they there went and
descendirent devant son pavellon, et vinrent ens, et le
dismounted before his pavilion and came within and him
saluerent, et li conterent tot mot a mot çou que lor sire
greeted and to-him told all word for word this that their lord
lor avoit encargié a dire, et nule cose ne li celerent.
them had charged to say and any thing not from-him they-concealed
Quant Artus a oï ce qui li mesage li avoient conté,
When Arthur has heard this which the messengers to-him had told
si parla a aus, et lor dist: 'Segnor, or me dites le
so spoke to them and to-them said Lords now for-me tell the
roi Floire, en cui subjection vous estes, qu'ensi com il l'a
king Floire in whose subjection you are that-thus as he it-has
mandé ensi le ferai jou, et li dites que por toute le
sent-word thus it shall-do I and to-him tell that for all the
terre de Bretagne ne li fauroie jou de çou qu'il m'en
land of Britain not to-him would-fail I of this that-he me-thereof
ahati.' Et li mesage respond: 'Nous volons que vous le
challenged And the messengers answer We wish that you it
nous creantés qu'il ni ara garde se de vous seul
to-us promise that-he not-there will-have fear except of you alone
non.' Et li rois lor creanta, et li plus haut home de
not And the king to-them promised and the most high men of

Bretagne creanterent as mesages que se li rois Artus estoit
Britain promised to-the messengers that if the king Arthur were
ocis qu'il s'en iroient arriere en lor païs, et tenront
killed that-they themselves-thence would-go back into their country and will-hold
lor terre del roi Floire, et li mesage lor creanterent
their land from-the king Floire and the messengers to-them promised
que se li rois Floire estoit ocis qu'il li rendroient
that if the king Floire were killed that-they to-him would-render
tous les castiaus de France, et li feroient homage, et
all the castles of France and to-him would-do homage and
deviserent qu'au quinzieme jor seroit la bataille.
they-set that-on-the fifteenth day would-be the battle

Atant s'en tornerent li mesage, et conterent au
At-that themselves-thence turned the messengers and told to-the
roi Floire çou qu'il avoient trové au roi Artu. Atant
king Floire this that-they had found with-the king Arthur At-that
se deslogierent Breton, et vinrent logier devant Paris, si
themselves decamped Bretons and came to-lodge before Paris so
près qu'on peüst lancier en le vile, et s'entredounerent treves
near that-one could throw into the town and each-other-gave truces
d'une part et d'autre, si que li Breton alerent en Paris acater
on-one side and on-other so that the Bretons went into Paris buy
a mangier. Li termes passa et vint li jors que li rois avoit
to eat The term passed and came the day that the king had
mis, et lors s'atornerent li doi roi si com por combatre,
set and then themselves-arrayed the two kings so as for to-fight
et s'arma cascuns de molt rices garnemens roiaus, et
and himself-armed each-one in very rich garments royal and
s'en entrerent li doi roi en une ille par desos Paris,
themselves-thence entered the two kings into an isle by below Paris
et sisent sor les .ij. mellors cevaus qu'il orent. Et li
and sat upon the two best horses that-they had And the

François et li Breton les esgardérent par commun consel
French and the Bretons them watched by common counsel
tout en pais, qu'onques garnement n'i orent, et disent
all in peace so-that-ever garment not-there they-had and said
qu'il atendroient le merci Nostre Segnor, et esgarderoient
that-they would-await the mercy (of-)Our Lord and would-watch
lor segnor qui lor cors avoient mis en aventure de le mort
their lords who their bodies had put in hazard of the death
por l'onor conquerre. Et li doi roi qui en l'ille estoient
for the-honor to-conquer And the two kings who in the-isle were
s'entrelongierent .ij. arpens por miels assambler, et puis
each-other-distanced two acres for better to-meet and then
s'entrevinrent ambedui de si grant aleüre, et s'entreferirent
each-other-came both at so great pace and each-other-struck
des lances parmi les escus issi durement que les lances
with-the lances through the shields so hard that the lances
tronçonnerent et en volerent li tronçon encontremont, et
broke and thence flew the stumps upward and
s'entrecontrerent des pis et des hiaumes si malasivement
each-other-met with-the chests and with-the helms so grievously
qu'il s'entrabatirent des cevaus a terre, mais Artus sali
that-they each-other-struck-down from-the horses to earth but Arthur leapt
premiers en piés, et sacha s'espée Eschaliborc qui molt
first on feet and drew his-sword Excalibur which very
estoit de buen acier, et s'en vint vers Floire. Et Floires
was of good steel and himself-thence came toward Floire And Floire
li rois resali sus, et resaça s'espée molt hardiement,
the king leapt-again up and drew-again his-sword very boldly
et passa li uns vers l'autre, et saciés que li François
and passed the one toward the-other and know that the French

et li Breton prioient cascuns por lor segnors, et li doi
and the Bretons prayed each-one for their lords and the two
roi qui nient s'entreamoient s'entrevinrent as espées.
kings who not-at-all each-other-loved each-other-came with-the swords

XVIII · ARTHUR KING OF FRANCE

Floire wounds Arthur, but Arthur, shamed by his men's fear, strikes him with Excalibur and kills him. Gawain and Lot persuade the Parisians to yield as their messengers swore, and Paris receives Arthur with processions and crowns him king of France. He rewards his barons with lands, returns to Britain, and announces a court at Carduel on Saint John's day.

Li rois Floires fu forment corageus et hardis, et molt
The king Floire was greatly courageous and bold and much
se fioit en sa vertu, et tint l'espée al puing destre,
himself trusted in his strength and held the-sword in-the fist right
et va ferir Artu parmi l'escu qu'il li fendi et colpa
and goes strike Arthur through the-shield that-he for-him split and cut
quanqu'il consivi, et li cols qui fu envoiés par grant force
whatever-he reached and the blow which was sent with great force
descendi encontre val, et li desrompi .ccc. mailles
descended down below and for-him broke three-hundred links
del hauberc, et vint li brans avalant parmi le cuisse si
of-the hauberk and came the blade descending through the thigh so
qu'il li trença plus de plainne paume del carnal, et
that-he for-him cut more than full palm of-the flesh and
avala li brans par grant aïr. Et li trença l'esporon od
descended the blade with great fury And for-him cut the-spur with
troi doie del pié, et feri li brans en terre mie ausi, et
three fingers of-the foot and struck the blade into earth half likewise and

Artus fu auques estounés del colp, et Floires le hurte
Arthur was somewhat stunned by-the blow and Floire him strikes
de l'espaule qu'a poi que ne le fist chaoir a terre. Et
with the-shoulder that-by little that — him he-made fall to earth And
quant li Breton le virent, et mesire Gavains, si en orent
when the Bretons it saw and my-lord Gawain so thereof had
grant duel, et orent tot grant paor de lor segnor, car li
great grief and had all great fear for their lord for the
rois Floires estoit graindre d'Artu le teste a tot le
king Floire was greater than-Arthur by-the head with all the
hiaume, et bien parut a son contenement qu'il eüst molt
helm and well it-appeared by his bearing that-he had much
hardement et force, et por tant si en furent en doutance.
boldness and strength and for so-much so thereof they-were in doubt

Quant li rois Artus vit se gent fremir, et avoit paor de
When the king Arthur saw his folk tremble and had fear for
lui, si en fu molt dolans, et en ot molt grant honte,
him so thereof was very grieved and thereof had very great shame
et vint au roi qui enmi le camp l'atendoit, et tint l'espee
and came to-the king who amid the field him-awaited and held the-sword
el puing destre qu'on apeloit Escaliborc, et il l'en
in-the fist right which-one called Excalibur and he him-therewith
ala ferir par molt fier mal talent parmi son escu, qu'il li
went strike with very fierce ill will through his shield that-he for-him
colpa et fendi dusqu'en le boucle, et colpa çou qu'il en
cut and split down-into the boss and cut this that-he thereof
atainst, et descendi li cols parmi son hiaume si qu'il li
reached and descended the blow through his helm so that-he for-him
trença le cercle, ne onques li coife ne li valut nule cose
cut the circlet nor ever the coif not to-him availed any thing
que l'espée ne li trençast grant partie de le teste et des
that the-sword not from-him should-cut great part of the head and of-the

caviaus plus de plainne puing, et se l'espée ne li tornast
hair more than full fist and if the-sword not to-him had-turned
el puing il l'eüst mort, et nonporquant li vola
in-the fist he him-would-have killed and nevertheless from-him flew
li hiaumes de le teste par les las qui furent rompu. Et
the helm off the head through the laces which were broken And
quant li rois Floires le vit si en ot grant mautalent et
when the king Floire it saw so thereof had great ill-will and
ala ferir Artu parmi le hiaume, mais il ne le pot empirer.
went strike Arthur through the helm but he not it could impair
Quant li rois Floires le vit si s'en esmaia molt, et
When the king Floire it saw so himself-thereof dismayed much and
lors li avala li sans parmi les uels, et parmi le face,
then to-him descended the blood through the eyes and through the face
et perdi le veüe si qu'il ne pot le roi Artu coisir, et li
and lost the sight so that-he not could the king Arthur discern and to-him
fali li cuers, et chaï tot adens en mi le pré, et quant
failed the heart and fell all face-down in mid the meadow and when
li rois Artus le vit si en fu molt liés, et vint cele part,
the king Arthur it saw so thereof was very glad and came that way
et prist s'espée, et s'abaissa et li trença le teste. Et
and took his-sword and himself-stooped and from-him cut the head And
quant li François virent que lor sire fu ocis si en orent
when the French saw that their lord was killed so thereof had
grant dolor a lor cuers, et s'en fuïrent par dedens
great sorrow at their hearts and themselves-thence fled by within
Paris, et li Breton vinrent a lor segnor Artu, et le fisent
Paris and the Bretons came to their lord Arthur and him made
monter sor .j. ceval, et l'enmenerent a molt grant joie
mount upon a horse and him-led with very great joy
a son tré et le desarmerent isnelement, et lors prist li
to his tent and him disarmed swiftly and then took the

rois .ij. mesages et les envoia a çaus de Paris por savoir
king two messengers and them sent to those of Paris for to-know
qu'il volroit faire, et saciés qu'en cele mesage ala li
what-they would-wish to-do and know that-in that message went the
rois Lot d'Orchanie et Gavains ses fils, qui molt savoit bel
king Lot of-Orkney and Gawain his son who much knew fair
parler et ert tenus a un des plus sages de l'ost, et estoit
speak and was held for one of-the most wise of the-host and was
buens chevaliers, et adrois de parler droituriers en jugement,
good knight and skilled of speaking righteous in judgment
et saciés qu'en le terre de Bretagne ne peut on trover
and know that-in the land of Britain not could one find
.j. mellor chevalier, des que Perceval ot laissié le cevalerie.
a better knight since that Perceval had left the chivalry
Atant vinrent a Paris, et quant cil qui estoient as murs
At-that they-came to Paris and when those who were at-the walls
les virent venir si lor ouvrirent les portes, et Gavains i
them saw come so to-them opened the gates and Gawain there
entra, et le roi Lot ses pere, et saluerent les .xij. pers del
entered and the king Lot his father and greeted the twelve peers of-the
païs qui el castel estoient, et virent les mesages et les
country who in-the castle were and saw the messengers and the
chevaliers qui avoient le bataille devisée d'Artu et del roi
knights who had the battle arranged of-Arthur and of-the king
Floire; et dont parla Gavains, et lor dist: 'Segneur, le roi
Floire and then spoke Gawain and to-them said Lords the king
Artus vous mande que vous li rendés le castel ensi com
Arthur you commands that you to-him render the castle thus as
cil mesage l'avoient devisé, car la parole fu devisée qu'Artus
those messengers it-had arranged for the word was arranged that-Arthur
et Floires se combatroient ensamble par tele maniere
and Floire themselves would-fight together in such manner

que je vos dirai, et en trairai les mesages meïsmes
as I to-you shall-tell and thereof shall-draw the messengers themselves
a garant qui vinrent au tref le nostre roi noncier la
to warrant who came to-the tent (of-)the our king announce the
bataille. Nous fiançames que se Artus estoit vaincus que
battle We pledged that if Arthur were vanquished that
nous venriemes au roi Floire, et li feriemes homage,
we would-come to-the king Floire and to-him would-do homage
et tenriemes nostre terre de lui. Ensi le fiançames, et li
and would-hold our land from him Thus it we-pledged and the
vostre mesage fiancierent que se Floires le vostre roi estoit
your messengers pledged that if Floire the your king were
vaincus que vous venriés au roi Artu, et vous metriés
vanquished that you would-come to-the king Arthur and yourselves would-put
en se merci, et tele seroit la merci que vous tenriés vos
in his mercy and such would-be the mercy that you would-hold your
castiaus de lui, et seroit France en son commandement,
castles from him and would-be France in his command
et demandés a mesages qui je croi et tieng a preudomes
and ask of messengers whom I believe and hold for worthy-men
se le parole ala ensi.' Quant li citeain oïrent mon segnor
if the word went thus When the citizens heard my lord
Gavains si l'en proisierent molt, et lors disent: 'Nous
Gawain so him-thereof prized much and then said We
nous en consellerons.' Atant s'en entrerent en une
ourselves thereof shall-counsel At-that themselves-thence entered into a
molt rice cambre, et parlerent li haut home de France,
very rich chamber and spoke the high men of France
et disent: 'Segnor, nous n'avons pas force contre cest roi
and said Lords we not-have at-all force against this king
Breton, qui ci est venus contre nous, ne nous n'avons pas
Breton who here is come against us nor we not-have at-all

viande por passer lonc tans, et vous poés bien savoir qu'il
food for to-pass long time and you can well know that-he
ne s'en ira or mie.' Et li mesage qui estoient alé
not himself-thence will-go now at-all And the messengers who were gone
por l'afermement de le bataille se leverent et disent:
for the-confirming of the battle themselves rose and said
'Segneur saciés que nous volons estre acuité de le fiance
Lords know that we wish to-be acquitted of the pledge
que nous fiançames Artu.' Et lor atornerent lor consel
that we pledged (to-)Arthur And to-them turned their counsel
qu'il li rendroient le vile, et li feroient homage, et
that-they to-him would-render the town and to-him would-do homage and
tenroient France del roi Artu. Lors s'en revinrent a
would-hold France from-the king Arthur Then themselves-thence came-back to
roi Lot, et a Gavains son fil, et li disent: 'Segnor, nous
king Lot and to Gawain his son and to-him said Lords we
veons bien que nous ne poriemes durer contre le vostre
see well that we not could last against the your
gent, et se nous i poyemes durer si volriemes nous les
folk and if we there could last so would-wish we the
noes fiances acuiter. Saciés que nous rendrons France au roi
our pledges to-acquit Know that we shall-render France to-the king
Artu, et li ferons homage, et li baillerons nos cors
Arthur and to-him shall-do homage and to-him shall-give our bodies
et nos avoirs, et nous metrons tot en se merci, mais por
and our wealth and ourselves shall-put all in his mercy but for
Diu or nous tiegne a droit, et se il le fait autrement
God now us let-him-hold at right and if he it does otherwise
li peciés en ert siens, et por Diu nous tiegne en
the sin thereof will-be his and for God us let-him-hold in
tele maniere comme li rois Floires nous soloit tenir.'
such manner as the king Floire us was-wont to-hold

Dont lor a respondu Gavains: 'Segneur, saciés qu'il
Then to-them has answered Gawain Lords know that-he
ja ne vous fera cose u il ait desraison.' Et atant
ever not to-you will-do thing where there may-be unreason And at-that
s'en torna mesire Gavains et li rois Lot ses pere,
himself-thence turned my-lord Gawain and the king Lot his father
et s'en vinrent au roi Artu, et li aconterent
and themselves-thence came to-the king Arthur and to-him told
tout çou que li François lor avoient conté. Quant li rois
all this that the French to-them had told When the king
Artus l'a oï si en fu molt liés, et errament fist s'ost
Arthur it-has heard so thereof was very glad and straightway made his-host
deslogier, et cevauça vers Paris. Et quant cil de Paris les
decamp and rode toward Paris And when those of Paris them
virent venir si s'en issirent encontre lui, et clerc,
saw come so themselves-thence went-out toward him both clerks
et evesque, et abé, a crois et a cieres reliques, et a
and bishops and abbots with crosses and with dear relics and with
filatieres et a encensiers, et jetoient le mente et le flor
phylacteries and with censers and threw the mint and the flower
par devant lui la ou il aloit, et avoient les tables mises
by before him there where he went and had the tables set
parmi le cité cargies de pain et de car et de venisons,
through the city loaded with bread and with meat and with venisons
et de buen vin et de rices espesces avoient cargies les
and with good wine and with rich spices had loaded the
tables as haus homes, et avoient le palais la u li
tables of-the high men and had the palace there where the
rois Artus descendi de rices pales et de rices aornemens
king Arthur dismounted with rich silks and with rich ornaments
portendu. Lors assisent Artu en le caiere roial, et li
hung Then they-seated Arthur in the chair royal and to-him

aporterent le corone roial de France, et le coronerent, et
brought the crown royal of France and him crowned and
fisent roi de France, et li fiancierent loial homage et
made king of France and to-him pledged loyal homage and
foi et loiauté a tenir. Et Artus les reçut, et les ama
faith and loyalty to hold And Arthur them received and them loved
molt, et demoura en le terre de France .l. jors, et si
much and remained in the land of France fifty days and so
fist molt biaus dons a ses cevaliers. Lors dient li chevalier
made very fair gifts to his knights Then say the knights
de France, et de Normendie, qu'il onques n'orent si buen
of France and of Normandy that-they ever not-had so good
segnor, et i a assés de barons de France qui miels
lord and there is plenty of barons of France who better
aiment Artus qu'il n'orent onques fait Floire, car Artus
love Arthur than-they had ever done Floire for Arthur
savoit biau parler et traire les gens a amor, et non mie
knew fair speak and draw the folk to love and not at-all
par faintes paroles mais par biaus dons douner. Et saciés
by feigned words but by fair gifts giving And know
qu'Artus sejorna en Paris .l. jors, et puis s'en ala
that-Arthur sojourned in Paris fifty days and then himself-thence went
par le païs de France savoir se il i aroit castel qui
through the country of France to-know if it there would-be castle which
encontre lui se tenist. Mais saciés qu'il onques ne trova
against him itself might-hold But know that-he ever not found
castel qu'il ne fesist tant qu'on l'en aportast les cles,
castle that-he not did so-much that-one to-him-thereof brought the keys
et les atraioit a s'amor, et li novele estoit par toute le
and them drew to his-love and the news was through all the
contrée alée qu'Artus avoit ocis le roi de France, et par cest
country gone that-Arthur had killed the king of France and by this

afaire si li abandonerent tous les castiaus. Lors douna li
affair so to-him surrendered all the castles Then gave the
rois Artus a Gavain son neveu le marce de Bretagne, et a
king Arthur to Gawain his nephew the march of Brittany and to
Bediver douna tout le Vermendois, buene terre et plentive,
Bedivere gave all the Vermandois good land and plentiful
et saciés qu'en le maisnie Artu n'ot haut baron qu'il ne
and know that-in the household (of-)Arthur not-was high baron that-he not
donast u cité u castel. Et quant il ot tot ensi atorné son
gave either city or castle And when he had all thus arranged his
afaire si assist ses baillius en ses castiaus et en ses marces.
affair so set his bailiffs in his castles and in his marches

Quant Artus ot conquis France si dist qu'il ne voloit plus
When Arthur had conquered France so said that-he not wished more
demourer, et prist congié as barons de le terre et il le
to-remain and took leave of-the barons of the land and they him
convoierent longement, et puis s'en retornerent, et
escorted long and then themselves-thence returned and
Artus cevauça tant qu'il vint en Normendie, la u ses
Arthur rode so-long that-he came into Normandy there where his
estoires estoit, et i avoit laissiés .vc. chevaliers por garder
fleet was and there had left five-hundred knights for to-guard
les vaissiaus, et Artus entra es vaissiaus, et se cevalerie
the vessels and Arthur entered into-the vessels and his chivalry
avuec lui, et lors drecierent li maronier les voiles, et li vens
with him and then raised the mariners the sails and the wind
se feri ens, et lors guerpirent le port, et siglerent tant
itself struck within and then they-left the port and sailed so-long
qu'il vinrent au port a Douvres, et puis issirent des nés, et
that-they came to-the port at Dover and then went-out of-the ships and

misent fors cevaus et palefrois, et quant il furent tot issu fors
put out horses and palfreys and when they were all gone out
si furent molt liés quant il revirent lor païs et lor contrée.
so were very glad when they saw-again their country and their region
Quant Mordrès li frere Gavains oï dire qu'Artus ses
When Mordred the brother (of-)Gawain heard say that-Arthur his
oncles revenoit, si monta od .l. chevaliers, et le roïne
uncle came-back so mounted with fifty knights and the queen
autresi, et cevaucierent la u il cuidierent trover le roi,
likewise and rode there where they thought to-find the king
et cevaucierent tant qu'il encontrerent le roi, et fisent
and rode so-long that-they met the king and made
grant feste de lui, et lors ala le novele par tot le païs que
great feast of him and then went the news through all the country that
li rois Artus revenoit, et qu'il avoit France conquise. Quant
the king Arthur came-back and that-he had France conquered When
les communes gens l'oïrent si en furent molt lie, et vinrent
the common folk it-heard so thereof were very glad and came
dames et demiseles qui lor fius et lor neveus i avoient; si
ladies and damsels who their sons and their nephews there had so
ne veïstes onques ausi grant joie faire comme li uns faisoit a
not you-saw ever so great joy make as the one made to
l'autre, et s'entrebaisoient. Après çou si parla li rois et dist:
the-other and each-other-kissed After this so spoke the king and said
'Segneur, je vuel que tot cil qui or sont ci a moi soient
Lords I wish that all those who now are here with me be
a ma cort a Carduel en Gales, a le Saint Jehan en esté.' Et
at my court at Carduel in Wales at the Saint John in summer And
iceste parole si fu criée par toute l'ost, et li rois manda les
this word so was cried through all the-host and the king summoned the
plus rices homes de son païs, et lor pria, et il li orent
most rich men of his country and them prayed and they to-him had

en covent, qu'il i seroient tout a le Saint Jehan, et dist
in covenant that-they there would-be all at the Saint John and said
Artus: 'Car jou i volrai departir de mes avoirs partie tot
Arthur For I there shall-wish to-share of my wealth part all
communalement, ne ja ni ara si povre que je ne face rice.'
in-common nor ever not-there will-be so poor that I not make rich

XIX · THE ROMAN EMBASSY

At the feast twelve Roman envoys demand the tribute Britain once paid Julius Caesar and threaten Arthur with the emperor's wrath. In a chamber painted with the judgment of Paris, Lot counsels war: Caesar won Britain by treason, the British brothers Brennius and Belinus once conquered Rome, and Merlin foretold that Arthur would be king of Rome. The twelve counselors cry that Arthur should march on Rome.

Atant departirent, et Artus s'en ala a .j. de ses
At-that they-departed and Arthur himself-thence went to one of his
castiaus, et i sejorna une piece, et parloient ensamble que
castles and there sojourned a while and they-spoke together what
bele aventure li estoit avenue, qui estoit si amontés qu'il
fair adventure to-him was happened who was so risen that-he
avoit France conquise. Entrues qu'Artus sejorna si trespassa li
had France conquered While that-Arthur sojourned so passed the
saisons et aproisma le Saint Jehan, et lors si assemblerent tot
season and approached the Saint John and then so assembled all
li haut home de Bretagne, et en i vinrent tant qu'on
the high men of Britain and thereof there came so-many that-one
nes peüst nombrer, et i ot chevaliers a plenté rices et
not-them could number and there were knights in plenty rich and
povres. Lors vint li jors, et li rois ala oïr le messe. Et li
poor Then came the day and the king went hear the mass And to-him

canta l'Arc. qui tant li aida a sa roiauté, et quant il
sang the-Archbishop who so-much him helped to his kingship and when he
ot le messe oïe il s'en revint arriere en son palais, et
had the mass heard he himself-thence came-back back into his palace and
fist on l'aigue corner aval le vile, et s'assisent li chevalier
made one the-water sound down the town and themselves-sat the knights
au mangier. Lors s'asist li rois Artus el plus haut dois,
at-the eating Then himself-sat the king Arthur at-the most high dais
et avuec lui li rois Lot d'Orchanie; d'autre part s'asist li
and with him the king Lot of-Orkney on-other side himself-sat the
rois de Danemarce, et li rois d'Irlande, et ot a le cort
king of Denmark and the king of-Ireland and there-were at the court
.vij. rois qui tot estoient obeïssant a son commandement.
seven kings who all were obedient to his command

Si com li rois seoit au mangier, et on avoit le premier
So as the king sat at-the eating and one had the first
mès aporté devant lui, si regarda Artus, et si baron, et si
dish brought before him so looked Arthur and his barons and his
roi, et virent venir parmi l'uis de le sale .xij. homes blans
kings and saw come through the-door of the hall twelve men white
et kenus, et estoient molt ricement aparellié, et portoient
and hoary and were very richly arrayed and carried
.xij. rains d'olive. Quant il furent entré en le sale si
twelve branches of-olive When they were entered into the hall so
regarderent le baronie et le cevalerie qui a le cort le roi
looked-at the baronage and the chivalry which at the court (of-)the king
estoit, et lors dist li uns a l'autre privéement: 'Segnor saciés
was and then said the one to the-other privately Lords know
que cis rois est molt rices.' Atant trespasserent toutes les
that this king is very rich At-that passed all the
tables et vinrent molt iréement la u Artus estoit, et lors
tables and came very angrily there where Arthur was and then

s'aresterent tot .xij. et se teurent tot fors l'un, et cil
themselves-stopped all twelve and themselves silenced all except the-one and that-one
parla molt orguelleusement et dist: 'Cil Dex qui sor tot le
spoke very proudly and said That God who over all the
monde a poesté et en puet faire a son commandement il
world has power and thereof can do at his command he
garisse l'empereur de Rome en cief, et en après l'Apostole et
may-save the-emperor of Rome in head and in after the-Pope and
les senators de Rome qui le loi doivent garder et maintenir,
the senators of Rome who the law must keep and maintain
et cil Dius que vous m'oés ramentevoir il confonde Artu
and that God whom you me-hear mention he may-confound Arthur
et tos cels qui sont en son commandement car il a mespris
and all those who are in his command for he has misdone
vers Diu, et vers Sainte Yglyse, et envers le loi de Rome,
toward God and toward Holy Church and toward the law of Rome
car il a recolpé et retaillié çou qui si en devoit estre,
for he has cut-back and cut-off this which his thereof ought be
et ocis le roi en bataille que se terre tenoit de Rome, et
and killed the king in battle who his land held from Rome and
en rendoit treü a Rome cascun an. Or sacés que nous, en
thereof rendered tribute to Rome each year Now know that we in
mervellant nous desdagnons, et en desdagnant nous en
marveling ourselves disdain and in disdaining ourselves thereof
mervellons, qui si viels gens comme vous estes, que tos li
marvel who so vile folk as you are that all the
siecles vous doit despire, et estes serf de vos testes, et tos
world you must despise and are serfs of your heads and all
jors l'avés esté, et li vostre ancestres autresi, et or vous
days it-have been and the your ancestors likewise and now yourselves
volés enfrancir, et vivre sans servage ausi com autre gent.
wish to-enfranchise and to-live without servitude just as other folk

Vous savés bien qu'a Julius Cesar fustes vous tot en
You know well that-to Julius Caesar were you all in
servage, et li rendistes treü, et autre roi de Rome si
servitude and to-him rendered tribute and other kings of Rome so
l'ont tenu et receü, ne onques nul jor sans servage ne
it-have held and received nor ever any day without servitude not
vesquistes. Or saciés que nous en avons grant desdaing que
you-lived Now know that we thereof have great disdain that
vous vous volés enfrancir, et saciés que li emperere en a
you yourselves wish to-enfranchise and know that the emperor thereof has
si grant desdaing et si tres grant vielté qu'il ne poroit nului
so great disdain and so very great contempt that-he not could anyone
croire que vous vous volsissiés esfrancir de son servage.
believe that you yourselves would-wish to-enfranchise from his servitude
Si vous mande et commande par nous .xij. que vous veés
So you he-sends and commands by us twelve whom you see
ici, que vous tel treü com vostre ancestres li rendi, que
here that you such tribute as your ancestors to-him rendered that
vous li envoiés tot autretel com Julius Cesar le reçevoit,
you to-him send all the-like as Julius Caesar it received
et se vous ne le faites li emperere venra sor vous; et si
and if you not it do the emperor will-come upon you and so
vous lo que vous li envoiés car li Romain sont tant
you I-advise that you to-him send for the Romans are so-much
fort aïré sor vous, neis la menue gent del païs vont
greatly angered upon you even the small folk of-the country go
criant a l'empereor: "Sire, por Diu, car nous laissiés aler sor
crying to the-emperor Lord for God now us let go upon
le chienaille de Bretagne qui ont destruit France!" Et saciés
the dog-rabble of Britain who have destroyed France And know
que si l'empereor lor en dounoit le don il venroient
that if the-emperor to-them thereof gave the gift they would-come

sor vous. Mais il ne peut croire que vous soiés si eslevé
upon you But he not can believe that you be so raised
que vous aiés conquise France; et saciés que se il vient
that you may-have conquered France and know that if he comes
sor vous fuirs ne vous vaut rien, vous ne sarés ja en
upon you fleeing not to-you avails anything you not will-know-how ever into
cel liu aler ne fuir qu'il ne vous en jet, et a juré sa
that place go nor flee that-he not you thence may-cast and has sworn his
corone qu'il vous fera escorcier et toute le cevalerie de
crown that-he you will-make flay and all the chivalry of
votre terre fera bolir en caudieres, et ardoir en fu, et les
your land will-make boil in cauldrons and burn in fire and them
venderont li un as autres, et en feront grant maisel.'
will-sell the ones to-the others and thereof will-make great shambles
Quant Artus a oï et entendu çou que li mesage
When Arthur has heard and understood this that the messengers
orent aconté si li remua tos li sans, et fremi, et
had told so to-him stirred all the blood and he-shuddered and
ot honte por ses barons qui seoient as tables par le
had shame for his barons who sat at-the tables through the
sale, et sali en piés, et dist: 'Segnors vous saiies bien
hall and leapt on feet and said Lords you know well
Romane, je ne sai u vous fustes né, et je vos ai bien
Romance I not know where you were born and I you have well
entendus, or si vous proi que vous vous seés, et mangiés
understood now so you I-pray that you yourselves sit and eat
se vous en avés mestier.' E cil respondent: 'Nous ne
if you thereof have need And those answer We not
mangeriemes a te cort por le puing a perdre, car nous
would-eat at thy court for the fist to lose for we
seriemes tout denaturé.' Quant Artus les oï si en rist
would-be all unnatured When Arthur them heard so thereof laughed

et dist: 'Segnor, de le requeste que vous m'avés demandé je
and said Lords of the request that you me-have asked I
m'en consellerai, et le vos lairai briément savoir.' Lors
myself-thereof shall-counsel and it to-you shall-let briefly know Then
apela ses barons, le roi d'Irlande, et le roi d'Orchanie,
called his barons the king of-Ireland and the king of-Orkney
et mon segnor Gavains, et Mordret son frere, et Keu le
and my lord Gawain and Mordred his brother and Kay the
senescal, et Bediver, et tant d'autres qu'il furent .xij.,
seneschal and Bedivere and so-many of-others that-they were twelve
et entrerent en une cambre molt rice, et estoit le cambre
and entered into a chamber very rich and was the chamber
painte molt ricement, et en la painture avoit paint ensi
painted very richly and in the painting there-was painted thus
comme les .iij. duesses donerent Paris le pome, et li
as the three goddesses gave Paris the apple and to-him
promist li une le plus bele feme del monde, et li autre
promised the one the most fair woman of-the world and the other
li promist le plus grant rikece del monde, et li tierce
to-him promised the most great wealth of-the world and the third
li promist, et li eüst doné, qu'il fust li mieldres
to-him promised and to-him would-have given that-he were the best
chevaliers de toute le terre. Quant cascune li ot cel don
knight of all the land When each-one to-him had that gift
fait qu'eles cuidoient que l'une ne seüst nient de l'autre,
made for-they thought that the-one not knew anything of the-other
si pensa Paris qu'il estoit buens chevaliers et li uns des
so thought Paris that-he was good knight and the one of-the
plus vaillans de tot son païs, et vit qu'il n'avoit mestier
most valiant of all his country and saw that-he not-had need
d'estre plus rices hom qu'il estoit, et pensa que miels li
of-being more rich man than-he was and thought that better to-him

vauroit li deduis de le bele feme que nule autre cose,
would-be-worth the delight of the fair woman than any other thing
si prist le pome, et le douna le diuesse qui le feme li
so took the apple and it gave the goddess who the woman to-him
avoit promise. Et quant ele vit le pome que Paris li avoit
had promised And when she saw the apple that Paris to-her had
dounée si en fu molt lie, que par cel don ot ele poesté
given so thereof was very glad for by that gift had she power
desor les autres diuesses, et lors li amonesta feme tele
over the other goddesses and then to-him she-pointed-out woman such
qu'il n'ot onques si bele el monde, mais il acata trop
that-there not-was ever so fair in-the world but he bought too
cier sa biauté. D'icele estoire estoit le cambre painte, la
dear her beauty With-that history was the chamber painted there
u Artus enmena les .xij. barons por consel querre.
where Arthur led the twelve barons for counsel to-seek
Atant lor dist: 'Segnor vous estes tot mi home, et
At-that to-them he-said Lords you are all my men and
je sui le vostre sire; vous avés bien oï que li mesage
I am the your lord you have well heard that the messengers
l'empereor de Rome m'ont laidengié, et mesaesmé par
(of-)the-emperor of Rome me-have insulted and misjudged by
parole, et molt m'ont dit grant laidure, ne onques
word and much to-me-have said great insult nor ever
samblant n'en fis. Or si vous proi que vous me donés
show not-thereof I-made Now so you I-pray that you me give
consel tel que les vos onors i soient, et saciés que je
counsel such that the your honors there be and know that I
ferai buenement çou que vous me loerés.' Adont se dreça
shall-do gladly this that you me will-advise Then himself raised
en piés le roi Lot d'Orchanie, qui molt estoit preudom
on feet the king Lot of-Orkney who very was worthy-man

et sages, et parla au roi, et dist: 'Sire vous demandés
and wise and spoke to-the king and said Lord you ask
consel et nous le vous donrons buen se vous le savés
counsel and we it to-you shall-give good if you it know-how
entendre. Vous avés oï que li mesage l'empereor de Rome
understand You have heard that the messengers (of-)the-emperor of Rome
vous sont venu laidir, et vous ont reprové que Julius Cesar
you are come insult and to-you have reproached that Julius Caesar
conquist Rome et France et Bretagne, vostre regne, et ce
conquered Rome and France and Britain your kingdom and this
fu voirs, car il l'ot par traïson et traïson n'est mie drois,
was true for he it-had by treason and treason not-is at-all right
et je vous en dirai une partie comment il l'ot. Il fu
and I to-you thereof shall-tell a part how he it-had It was
jadis qu'il estoit uns rois, et avoit .j. frere, et .ij. biaus
formerly that-there was a king and had a brother and two fair
enfans. Cil rois morut, et laissa se terre a ses .ij. enfans,
children That king died and left his land to his two children
mais ce sambla au commun peule que trop estoient de
but it seemed to-the common people that too they-were of
joune aé por regne maintenir, et baillierent le roiaume a
young age for kingdom to-maintain and gave the kingdom to
lor oncle, et il fu rois, et quant il fu rois si fist de
their uncle and he was king and when he was king so made of
l'un de ses neveus duc, et de l'autre conte. Et cil qui
the-one of his nephews duke and of the-other count And he who
rois estoit avoit non Casibelan, et li mesfirent ses neveu,
king was had-as name Cassibelan and him wronged his nephews
ne sai quel cose, mais il les manda a se cort et les
not I-know what thing but he them summoned to his court and them
volt faire ocire. Quant li enfant virent que lor oncles les
wished to-make kill When the children saw that their uncle them

haoit, et lor avoit tolu le roiaume, adont si manderent
hated and from-them had taken the kingdom then so sent-word
Julius Cesar qu'il pooit bien conquerre Engleterre, et
(to-)Julius Caesar that-he could well conquer England and
Julius Cesar i avoit arivé devant par .ij. fois, et ne pooit
Julius Caesar there had arrived before by two times and not could
rien forfaire Casibelan. Quant il oï que li enfant le
anything harm Cassibelan When he heard that the children him
manderent si en fu molt liés, et lor remanda qu'il
summoned so thereof was very glad and to-them sent-back-word that-they
li envoiassent ostages, et il li envoierent, et fisent
to-him should-send hostages and they to-him sent and made
bien seür. Atant entra Julius Cesar en mer, et ariva en
well sure At-that entered Julius Caesar on sea and arrived in
cest païs, et li doi enfant orent grans as assamblees, et
this country and the two children had great hosts assembled and
vinrent a Julius Cesar, et lors vinrent la u Casibelan
came to Julius Caesar and then came there where Cassibelan
estoit, et se combatirent a lui, et le venquirent. Et
was and themselves fought with him and him vanquished And
quant il l'orent vencu, Julius Cesar prist les homages des
when they him-had vanquished Julius Caesar took the homages of-the
.ij. freres, et fist de l'ainsné roi, et li rendirent treü, et
two brothers and made of the-elder king and to-him rendered tribute and
par cest afaire si claimment li Breton treü sor vous. Or
by this affair so claim the Bretons tribute upon you Now
vous dirai autre cose; il i eut .ij. freres en Bretagne,
to-you I-shall-tell other thing there there were two brothers in Britain
cil doi frere si en fu li uns només Brenes, et li autres
those two brothers so thereof was the one named Brennius and the other
Belin; cil doi frere orent si grant poissance qu'il passerent
Belinus those two brothers had so great power that-they crossed

mer et conquisent France, et d'illuec en alerent desci a
sea and conquered France and from-there thence went until to
Rome. Quant cil de Rome les virent venir si orent paor,
Rome When those of Rome them saw come so had fear
et issirent contre aus, et lor jurerent qu'il seroient a
and went-out toward them and to-them swore that-they would-be at
lor commandement, et en baillierent as .ij. freres .xl.
their command and thereof gave to-the two brothers forty
ostages. Et quant li ostage furent douné si dist Brenes et
hostages And when the hostages were given so said Brennius and
Belins qu'il revenroient en Bretagne, et lors s'en
Belinus that-they would-come-back into Britain and then themselves-thence
retornerent, et li Romain, quant il les virent retorner,
returned and the Romans when they them saw return
si disent que molt estoient mauvais que lor ostages en
so said that very they-were wicked who their hostages thence
laissoient mener. Lors prisent consel qu'il lor venroient
let lead Then they-took counsel that-they them would-come
au devant, a un desrubé passer u il avoit grans
at-the before at a ravine passing where there were great
destrois. Ensi le firent, et assamblerent .l. mile chevaliers,
narrows Thus it they-did and assembled fifty thousand knights
et les misent en .j. mal pas, et Brenes et Belins avoient
and them put in a bad pass and Brennius and Belinus had
lor gens parties, si en menoit Belins le moitié, et Brenes
their folk divided so thereof led Belinus the half and Brennius
l'autre moitié, et es .ij. parties avoit plus de .c.
the-other half and in-the two parts there-were more than a-hundred
mile homes. Lors vint Brenes au destroit et volt passer,
thousand men Then came Brennius to-the narrows and wished to-pass
et li Romain li salirent encontre, et les encontrerent
and the Romans at-him leapt against and them met

molt ruistement, et lors fu Brenes esmaiés, et vint a un
very fiercely and then was Brennius dismayed and came to a
vallet, si li dist: 'Biaus amis alés a Belin mon frere et
youth so to-him said Fair friend go to Belinus my brother and
li dites que nous somes traïs, et li dites qu'il passe
to-him say that we are betrayed and to-him say that-he pass
au destroit par deriere les Romains, et les asaille par
at-the narrows by behind the Romans and them assail by
deriere. Ensi com li rois l'ot dit au mesage li mesages
behind Thus as the king it-had said to-the messenger the messenger
l'ala conter a Belin, et quant Belin le seut si en fu
it-went tell to Belinus and when Belinus it knew so thereof was
molt dolans, et cevauça a esporon, et passa .j. destroit
very grieved and rode at spur and passed a narrows
si com .j. païsans le guia, et lors vint a le bataille, et
so as a peasant him guided and then came to the battle and
Brenes estoit ja auques atains de combatre, et Belins
Brennius was already somewhat spent of fighting and Belinus
escria s'ensagne, et vint a le bataille atot .l. mile homes,
cried his-ensign and came to the battle with fifty thousand men
et escria 'Bretagne!' et Belins escria 'France!' et lors furent
and cried Britain and Belinus cried France and then were
li Romain esmaié, et li Breton les ocioient, et furent
the Romans dismayed and the Bretons them killed and were
tot ocis li Romains, et lors retorna et Brenes et Belins
all killed the Romans and then returned both Brennius and Belinus
a Rome, et se loga devant le vile, et fist drecier les
to Rome and himself lodged before the town and made raise the
forques, et i fist pendre tous les enfans que li rice
gallows and there made hang all the children that the rich
home de Rome li avoient baillié, et lors li rendirent
men of Rome to-him had given and then to-him rendered

le vile, et fu coronés a empereor, et li rendirent
the town and he-was crowned as emperor and to-him rendered
li Romain treü, et par ceste raison me samble il que
the Romans tribute and by this reason to-me seems it that
vous devés avoir segnorie sor les Romains, et bien devés
you ought have lordship over the Romans and well ought
estre emperere de Rome; et li claiment, et vous clamés.
be emperor of Rome and they claim and you claim
Or n'i sai jou el mais que vous alés ensamble, qui
Now not-there know I else but that you go together who
miels pora esploitier miels face, et plus en ait!
best will-be-able achieve best let-him-do and more thereof let-him-have
'Sire, encore vous dirai autre cose. Membre vous il que
Lord still to-you I-shall-tell other thing Remembers to-you it that
Merlins vint a le votre cort le jor meïsme que vous fustes
Merlin came to the your court the day same that you were
rois. Il vous dist qu'il avoit eü .ij. rois en Bretagne qui
king He to-you said that-there had been two kings in Britain who
avoient esté roi de France, et empereor de Rome. Sire, vous
had been king of France and emperor of Rome Lord you
estes rois de France, et je vous di que vous serés rois de
are king of France and I to-you say that you shall-be king of
Rome se vous en avés le cuer del conquerre, car Merlins ne
Rome if you thereof have the heart of-the conquering for Merlin not
menti onques, ains a dit voir tos dis. Or passés le mer, et
lied ever rather has said true all days Now cross the sea and
mandés vos chevaliers, et assamblés as Romains, et je vous
summon your knights and engage with-the Romans and I to-you
di que vous en arés le victoire, car vous arés le mellor
say that you thereof will-have the victory for you will-have the best
cevalerie del monde.' Et lors s'escrierent tot li .xij. consellier:
chivalry of-the world And then themselves-cried all the twelve counselors

‘Artu, sire, cevauciés a force, et conquerrés Romenie et
Arthur lord ride in force and will-conquer Romania and
toute le terre de Lombardie, et nos t’aiderons a nos pooirs.’
all the land of Lombardy and we thee-shall-aid to our powers

XX · THE ARMIES GATHER

Arthur defies the envoys, who report to the emperor; the emperor gathers a vast host, is joined by the king of Spain and the Sultan, and marries the Sultan’s daughter. Arthur leaves Mordred in charge, who betrays him with the queen and has himself crowned. At Paris Arthur sends Gawain and Bedivere to the emperor; Gawain’s insults lead to a fight, a rescue, and the eve of a great battle.

Quant Artus oï ses barons, si en fu molt liés, et dist:
When Arthur heard his barons so thereof was very glad and said
‘Segnor, il me samble que li rois Lot a molt bien parlé, et
Lords it to-me seems that the king Lot has very well spoken and
saciés a çou qu’il m’a conté que se li Romains ne fussent
know by this that-he me-has told that if the Romans not were
ça venu se deüsse je la aler por requerre çou que mes
hither come so ought I there go for to-request this that my
ancestres ont tenu.’ Atant vint Artus el palais, et trova
ancestors have held At-that came Arthur into-the palace and found
les mesagiers de Rome, et lor dist: ‘Segnor, or saciés que
the messengers of Rome and to-them said Lords now know that
je m’en mervel molt durement u li emperere prist le
I myself-thereof marvel very greatly where the emperor took the
cuer qu’il m’a mandé treü, et tel outrage que vous m’avés
heart that-he me-has demanded tribute and such outrage as you me-have
dit, et saciés certainement que je de servage m’osterai
said and know certainly that I from servitude myself-shall-remove

encontre lui, et bien li dites qu'ains .viij. mois le volrai
against him and well to-him tell that-before eight months him shall-wish
jou si aprocier qu'on pora de m'ost lancier .j. gavrelot
I so to-approach that-one will-be-able from my-host throw a javelin
dedens Rome, se il encontre moi ne vient et me volrai a
within Rome if he against me not comes and me shall-wish with
lui combatre cors a cors, u grant a grant.' Et li mesage
him to-fight body to body or great to great And the messengers
respondent: 'Nous vous faisons seür que li emperere vous
answer We you make sure that the emperor to-you
sera au devant atout .cc. mil homes u plus.' Et
will-be at-the before with two-hundred thousand men or more And
atant s'en issirent de le sale molt fierement, qu'onques
at-that themselves-thence went-out of the hall very proudly so-that-ever
congié ne demanderent, et s'en alerent et vinrent
leave not they-asked and themselves-thence went and came
a le mer, et passerent outre, et cevaucierent tant par lor
to the sea and crossed beyond and rode so-long by their
journées qu'il vinrent a Rome, et i troverent l'empereor,
days that-they came to Rome and there found the-emperor
et li conterent tot cil com il avoient esploitié, et si
and to-him told all this as they had accomplished and so
com li Breton estoient orguelleus et fors grans. 'Et ont le
as the Bretons were proud and strong great And have the
pris de le cevalerie del siecle, par une table reonde qu'il
prize of the chivalry of-the world by a table round which-they
ont estorée, et saciés que nous contames Artus vostre
have established and know that we told (to-)Arthur your
mesage, et il dist qu'il s'en conselleroit, et il mena
message and he said that-he himself-thereof would-counsel and he led
.xij. de ses barons, et furent longement en se cambre, et
twelve of his barons and they-were long in his chamber and

lors torna a çou lor consaus qu'Artus vous mande qu'ançois
then turned to this their counsel that-Arthur you sends-word that-before
.viij. mois sera il venus si près de Rome qu'on i poroit .j.
eight months will-be he come so near to Rome that-one there could a
gavrelot lancier de s'ost, se vos ne li venés encontre lui.'
javelin throw from his-host if you not to-him come toward him

Quant li emperere entendi ses mesages si en fu molt
When the emperor heard his messengers so thereof was very
iriés, et lors fist escrire cartres et seyaus, et assambla le
angered and then made write charters and seals and assembled the
plus grant ost qu'onques nus hom veïst, et manda soldoiers
most great host that-ever any man saw and summoned soldiers
et archiers, et grant cevalerie et serjans a ceval et serjans
and archers and great chivalry and sergeants on horse and sergeants
a pié qui portent lances et gavrelots; et bien saciés qu'il
on foot who carry lances and javelins and well know that-he
manda le roi d'Espagne, qui Sarrasin estoit, et cil Sarrasin
summoned the king of-Spain who Saracen was and that Saracen
i amena le plus grant ost qu'onques nus hom veïst,
there brought the most great host that-ever any man saw
ne onques rois n'ot forçor empire, et vinrent tot au
nor ever king not-had greater empire and they-came all at-the
commandement l'empereor; et bien saciés que la grant ost,
command (of-)the-emperor and well know that the great host
quant on l'ot esmeüe, prisa on a .ccc. mil homes,
when one it-had set-moving reckoned one at three-hundred thousand men
tos desfensables por lor armes porter; et quant li empires
all fit-for-defense for their arms to-bear and when the empire
fu assamblés si se clama li emperere a aus, et lor
was assembled so himself complained the emperor to them and to-them
mostra comment Artus se voloit reveler encontre lui, et
showed how Arthur himself wished to-rebel against him and

avoit ocis le roi Floire en bataille qui se terre tenoit de
had killed the king Floire in battle who his land held from
Rome. ‘Et si mande qu’il volra avoir treü de nous,
Rome And so he-sends-word that-he will-wish to-have tribute from us
or si vous proi que vous me conselliés encontre ces coses.’
now so you I-pray that you me counsel against these things
Quant li baron l’ont oï si en orent molt grant
When the barons it-have heard so thereof had very great
desdaing et s’escrient tout ensamble: ‘Drois emperere,
disdain and themselves-cry all together Rightful emperor
cevauce a force, et passés les mons, et en après le mer,
ride in force and cross the mountains and in after the sea
et conquerrés Bretagne, et vengiés le roi Floire qu’Artus
and will-conquer Britain and avenge the king Floire whom-Arthur
li rois de Bretagne a ocis, et nous vous en aiderons
the king of Britain has killed and we you therein shall-aid
tout a nos pooirs.’ Endementiers que li emperere estoit
all to our powers While that the emperor was
a cil parlement si vinrent .iij. mesage a l’empereor, et le
at that parley so came three messengers to the-emperor and him
saluerent en lor langage molt hautement de par le Soudan,
greeted in their language very loftily from by the Sultan
et disent: ‘Sire emperere, li Soudans vous mande qu’il
and said Lord emperor the Sultan to-you sends-word that-he
vient au vostre commandement por destruire les Bretons,
comes at-the your command for to-destroy the Bretons
et por çou le fait que li rois d’Espagne i est venus qui
and for this it he-does that the king of-Spain there is come who
ses frere est, et bien vous fac seür qu’on nombre s’ost a
his brother is and well you I-make sure that-one numbers his-host at
.l. mile Sarrasins, et se logera es prés desos Rome
fifty thousand Saracens and himself will-lodge in-the meadows below Rome

d'ui en tierç jor.' Quant li emperere l'oï si en fu
from-today in third day When the emperor it-heard so thereof was
molt liés, et quant vint au tierç ior si monta et tot
very glad and when it-came to-the third day so mounted and all
li senator de Rome avuec lui, et cevaucierent a grant
the senators of Rome with him and rode with great
joie encontre le Soudan, et l'encontrerent a demie liue de
joy toward the Sultan and him-met at half league from
Rome. Et quant li emperere le vit si poinst encontre lui,
Rome And when the emperor him saw so spurred toward him
et li jeta ses bras au col, ne onques n'i garda ne
and to-him threw his arms at-the neck nor ever not-there heeded neither
Crestienté ne batesme qu'il ne le baisoit ens en le bouce,
Christendom nor baptism that-he not him kissed right on the mouth
et tot li senator de Rome l'enclinerent molt parfondement
and all the senators of Rome him-bowed-to very deeply
et si savoient bien qu'il mesprendoient vers Diu, mais
and so knew well that-they misdid toward God but
molt redoutoient les Bretons. Et lors se logierent desos
much they-feared the Bretons And then themselves lodged below
Rome, et sejornerent .xv. jors por reposer lor gens, et en
Rome and sojourned fifteen days for to-rest their folk and in
ces .xv. jors si meserra molt li emperere vers Diu, et vers
these fifteen days so erred much the emperor toward God and toward
Sainte Yglyse, car il prist a feme le fille le Soudan, qui
Holy Church for he took as wife the daughter (of-)the Sultan who
paiene estoit, et qui molt estoit bele feme, si en pesa
pagan was and who very was fair woman so thereof it-grieved
molt au commun peule de Rome, et disent par maintes
much to-the common people of Rome and said by many
fois que li emperere avoit perdue grant partie de se creance.
times that the emperor had lost great part of his faith

Après quant li .xv. jor furent passé si cevauca li os, et
After when the fifteen days were passed so rode the host and
trespasserent les païs et les terres, mais des jornées qu'il
passed the countries and the lands but of-the journeys that-they
firent, ne de çou qu'il lor avint, ne parole pas Blayses,
made nor of this that-it to-them happened not speaks at-all Blaise
car Merlins n'en volt faire mention, mais tant vos puis
for Merlin not-thereof wished to-make mention but so-much to-you can
je bien dire qu'il vinrent en le terre de Provence, et tant
I well say that-they came into the land of Provence and until
qu'il oïrent dire qu'en le marce de Bretagne estoit Keus
that-they heard say that-in the march of Brittany was Kay
li senescaus Artu, qui la gardoit le terre. Et quant li
the seneschal (of-)Arthur who there guarded the land And when the
emperere le sot si cevauca cele part, et Artus le seut par ses
emperor it knew so rode that way and Arthur it knew through his
espies, et estoit ja au port venus sor le mer de Douvre,
spies and was already to-the port come upon the sea of Dover
et la faisoit aparellier se navie, car il avoit molt grant gent.
and there made prepare his fleet for he had very great folk

Quant li estoires fu aparelliés si vint Artus a Mordret
When the fleet was prepared so came Arthur to Mordred
son neveu, qui frere estoit mon segnor Gavains, si li
his nephew who brother was (of-)my lord Gawain so to-him
commanda se terre, et ses castiaus et se feme a garder,
entrusted his land and his castles and his wife to keep
mais miels li venist qu'il les eüst andeus bolis en
but better to-him would-have-come that-he them had both boiled in
caudieres, car Mordrès, qui ses niés estoit, fist vers lui le
cauldrons for Mordred who his nephew was did toward him the
gregnor traïson dont on oïst onques parler, car il ama se
greatest treason of-which one heard ever speak for he loved his

feme, et fist tant as cevaliers et as castelains, et as
wife and did so-much to-the knights and to-the castellans and to-the
baillius, qu'il le reçurent a segnor, et espousa le roïne, et
bailiffs that-they him received as lord and married the queen and
mist garnisons as castiaus de le terre, et se fist coroner
put garrisons in-the castles of the land and himself made crown
a roi. Mais Artus qui de çou ne se dounoit garde, fist
as king But Arthur who of this not himself gave heed made
les chevaliers entrer es nés, et les armes, et lor harnas,
the knights enter into-the ships and the arms and their harness
et li maroniers l'ariverent a .j. port qu'on apele Chalais.
and the mariners him-landed at a port which-one calls Calais
Et quant il furent arivé si le firent savoir as barons de le
And when they were arrived so it made know to-the barons of the
terre, et cil en firent grant joie. Lors envoia li rois par le
land and they thereof made great joy Then sent the king by the
commun consel de l'ost .ij. mesages a Paris, et cil de Paris
common counsel of the-host two messengers to Paris and those of Paris
en firent molt grant joie, et disent qu'il le recevroient
thereof made very great joy and said that-they him would-receive
comme segneur. Et quant Artus le sot si vint a Paris, et la
as lord And when Arthur it knew so came to Paris and there
assambla son empire, et li Romains et li Sarrasins oïrent
assembled his empire and the Romans and the Saracens heard
dire qu'Artus estoit a Paris, si cevauçierent tant qu'il vinrent
say that-Arthur was at Paris so rode so-long that-they came
a .iij. liues de Paris, et lors envoia Artus Gavains a l'ost
to three leagues from Paris and then sent Arthur Gawain to the-host
et Bediver, por savoir se li emperere se volroit combatre.
and Bedivere for to-know if the emperor himself would-wish to-fight
Gavains i ala et Bedivers, et vinrent au tref, et estoient
Gawain there went and Bedivere and came to-the tent and were

sor .ij. buens cevaus, et il estoient meïsme ricement
upon two good horses and they were themselves richly
armé. Gavains conta son mesage molt orguelleusement, et
armed Gawain told his message very proudly and
molt laidoia l'empereor par parole, et li dist molt lait,
much insulted the-emperor by word and to-him said very ugly
et tant qu'a .j. legat en pesa, et dist: 'Tostans sont
and until that-to a legate thereof it-grieved and he-said Always are
Breton bordeor et mal parlier et vanteor mauvais chevalier,
Bretons jesters and ill speakers and boasters wicked knights
et se vous parlés plus, je vos irai sacier jus del ceval.'
and if you speak more I you shall-go pull down from-the horse
Atant le feri Bedivers d'une lance parmi le cors, et
At-that him struck Bedivere with-a lance through the body and
Gavains feri .j. des neveus de l'empereor parmi le cors de
Gawain struck one of-the nephews of the-emperor through the body with
se lance, et puis traist l'espée, et feri .j. chevalier parmi
his lance and then drew the-sword and struck a knight through
le cief, si qu'il le fendi dusqu'el braier. Lors point avant
the head so that-he him split down-to-the belt Then he-spurs forward
et en toli a .vi. les testes. Atant s'en cuidierent
and thereof took from six the heads At-that themselves-thence thought
partir, mais il ne porent, car il en vinrent plus de
to-part but they not could for there thereof came more than
.xx.m. sor aus a esporon, et les avoient passés .j.
twenty-thousand upon them at spur and them had passed an
arpent de terre si que devant Bediver et devant mon segnor
acre of land so that before Bedivere and before my lord
Gavains en avoit plus de .ij. mile, et lors s'assamblérent
Gawain thereof there-were more than two thousand and then themselves-assembled
entor Gavains, et entor Bediver od espées nues, od lances,
around Gawain and around Bedivere with swords naked with lances

od gavrelos, od dars, et od pieres, et od bastons, et
with javelins with darts and with stones and with staves and
lor donérent tant de cols qu'il les durent avoir ocis,
to-them gave so-many of blows that-they them ought have killed
et ocisent a cascun son ceval. A mon segnor Gavains
and killed to each-one his horse To my lord Gawain
crut mautalens, et traist l'espée, et prist l'escu, et feri
grew ill-will and he-drew the-sword and took the-shield and struck
.j. Romain qui molt avoit grant terre a justicier, et li
a Roman who very had great land to govern and to-him
douna si grant colp qu'il le fendi dusqu'el pis, et prist le
gave so great blow that-he him split down-to-the chest and took the
ceval et i monta, et vint a Bediver qui molt forment
horse and thereon mounted and came to Bedivere who very greatly
se desfendoit, et li cuida aidier, mais ainçois qu'il i
himself defended and him thought to-help but before that-he there
venist fu il rabatus, et ses cevaus ocis sos lui. Et
came was he struck-down-again and his horse killed beneath him And
quant Gavains vit qu'il ot perdu le ceval qu'il ot gaaingié
when Gawain saw that-he had lost the horse that-he had won
si resali sus, et se desfendi molt durement. Cui caut
so leapt-again up and himself defended very hard Who cares
se desfense ne valut rien? quant li .xx.m. qui estoient
his defense not availed anything when the twenty-thousand who were
el bos salirent, et se ferirent as Romains, et les
in-the wood leapt-out and themselves struck at-the Romans and them
departirent molt iréement, et les ocisent tous, que gaires
parted very angrily and them killed all so-that much
n'en escapa; et lors s'en tornerent li mesage qui
not-thereof escaped and then themselves-thence turned the messengers who
le conterent a Artu, et quant Artus l'a oï si a fait se
it told to Arthur and when Arthur it-has heard so has made his

gent armer, et lors commanda qu'on sonast .ij.c. cors,
folk arm and then commanded that-one should-sound two-hundred horns
et .ij.c. buisines, et on si fist; et lors sambla que
and two-hundred trumpets and one so did and then it-seemed that
toute li terre crollast, et estoit si grans le resons que ce
all the earth shook and was so great the resounding that it
sambloit que toute li terre fondist, et n'i oïst on mie
seemed that all the earth sank and not-there would-hear one at-all
Diu tonnant, et cevaucierent tot ordeneement a bataille, et
God thundering and rode all in-order to battle and
fisent porter le confanon roial a Saigremor, et encontrerent
made carry the banner royal by Sagremor and met
les .xx.m. qui mon segnor Gavains avoient delivré, et
the twenty-thousand who my lord Gawain had delivered and
s'ajosterent a aus, et Gavains les guia. Lors revinrent li
themselves-joined to them and Gawain them guided Then came-back the
fuiant au tref l'empereor de Rome et li contérent que
fleeing to-the tent (of-)the-emperor of Rome and to-him told that
Bretiaus son frere estoit mors; et quant l'emperere l'oï si
Bretel his brother was dead and when the-emperor it-heard so
en fu molt dolans, et dist qu'il le volra molt cierement
thereof was very grieved and said that-he it will-wish very dearly
vendre Artu et les Bretons, et lors fist soner l'olifant
to-sell (to-)Arthur and the Bretons and then made sound the-oliphant
au maistre tref, et ce fu senefiance qu'il s'armassent.
at-the master tent and this was signification that-they themselves-should-arm
Et quant li Romain oïrent l'olifant bondir si s'armerent,
And when the Romans heard the-oliphant resound so themselves-armed
et li paien autresi, et lors ordenerent lor batailles et lor
and the pagans likewise and then ordered their battalions and their
eschieles, et cevaucierent la u il cuidierent trover Artu,
companies and rode there where they thought to-find Arthur

et Artus contre aus autresi, et lors s'entreproismierent
and Arthur toward them likewise and then each-other-approached
tant qu'il se pooient bien entreveïr tot de plain.
so-much that-they themselves could well see-each-other all in full

XXI · THE BATTLE WITH ROME; GAWAIN'S DEATH

Gawain leads the first company and kills over a thousand; Arthur kills the emperor with one blow, Gawain the Sultan, and Lot the king of Spain, and the Romans are routed. As Arthur prepares to go to Rome, messengers tell him that Mordred has wedded the queen, taken the crown, and called in the Saxons. Arthur turns back; at the landing Gawain, his helm unlaced, is killed by a Saxon's oar, and Kay, Bedivere, and Sagremor die with twenty thousand.

Quant il se furent si entraproismié qu'il s'entrevirent,
When they themselves were so each-other-approached that-they each-other-saw
adont n'i ot si hardi qui ne s'esmaiast, et lors
then not-there was so bold who not himself-dismayed and then
se confesserent li un Crestien as autres, et se
themselves confessed the ones Christians to-the others and themselves
clamerent tos mautalens cuites, et prisent pels d'erbe et
declared all ill-wills quit and took blades of-grass and
s'acommunierent, et lors remonterent es cevaus, et tant
themselves-communicated and then mounted-again on-the horses and so-much
saciés vous bien qu'onques si grans empires ne fu esgardés,
know you well that-ever so great host not was beheld
et quant il s'entraprocierent qu'il n'i ot que del ferir,
and when they each-other-approached that-it not-there was but of-the striking
si laissa le ceval aler mesire Gavains, qui menoit le premiére
so let the horse go my-lord Gawain who led the first
eskiele, et ala ferir .j. Sarrasin sor son escu qu'il li
company and went strike a Saracen upon his shield that-he for-him

perça, et le hauberc autresi, et li guia le fer parmi
pierced and the hauberk likewise and for-him guided the iron through
outre le pis, et l'abati jus de son ceval mort. Et lors
beyond the chest and him-struck-down down from his horse dead And then
acoururent d'autres pars. Gavains avoit assamblé .xx.m.
ran-up from-other sides Gawain had assembled twenty-thousand
homes encontre .l. mile Sarrasins si n'i pot avoir longe
men against fifty thousand Saracens so not-there could have long
durée, nonporquant en ocisent .xi. mile des paiens. Et
lasting nevertheless thereof they-killed eleven thousand of-the pagans And
des gens Gavains i ot mort .vii.c. et .lx. chevaliers,
of-the folk (of-)Gawain there were dead seven-hundred and sixty knights
et neporquant ja n'i eüssent durée quant Kex li
and nevertheless ever not-there they-would-have-had lasting when Kay the
senescaus vint a tot .xx.m. chevaliers et secorut mon
seneschal came with all twenty-thousand knights and succored my
segnor Gavains, et lors corurent sus les paiens d'Espagne et
lord Gawain and then they-ran upon the pagans of-Spain and
les ocisent a grans mons, parmi le camp, et n'i porent
them killed in great heaps through the field and not-there could
avoir durée. Lors se misent a le fuite et encontrerent
have lasting Then themselves put to the flight and met
le Soudan qui venoit a tot .l. mile Sarrasins, et vinrent
the Sultan who came with all fifty thousand Saracens and came
a mon segnor Gavains et a Keu le senescal, et se
to my lord Gawain and to Kay the seneschal and themselves
combatirent des tierce desci a miedi, et tant i avoit
fought from terce until at midday and so-many there were
mors es campagnes de chevaliers, et de serjans, qu'on ne
dead in-the fields of knights and of sergeants that-one not
pooit passer ni assambler por joste faire, mais as espées
could pass nor engage for joust to-make but with-the swords

nues s'entreocioient, et bien saciés que Gavains i fist le
naked each-other-killed and well know that Gawain there did the
jor tant d'armes qu'il i ocist par son cors seulement
day so-much of-arms that-he there killed by his body alone
.m. et .ij.c. et .xxx. que chevaliers que serjans.
a-thousand and two-hundred and thirty whether knights whether sergeants
Voirs estoit que se force li croissoit puis miedi, et
True it-was that his strength to-him grew after midday and
quant miedis fu passés si ne feri onques chevalier qu'il
when midday was passed so not struck ever knight that-he
ne porfendit et lui et le ceval. Tant estoit fiers qu'on ne
not split both him and the horse So he-was fierce that-one not
l'osoit atendre, et par son esfors misent li Breton a le
him-dared await and by his effort put the Bretons to the
fuite le Soudan, et lors assambla li empereres de Rome
flight the Sultan and then engaged the emperor of Rome
a mon segnor Gavains, qui avoit grant fais soufert, et
with my lord Gawain who had great burden suffered and
a Keu le senescal, et estora .c. et .l. mile, et
with Kay the seneschal and arrayed a-hundred and fifty thousand and
lors fu si grans le polriere que Kex li senescaus se mist
then was so great the dust that Kay the seneschal himself put
a le fuite, et od lui li Breton; et Gavains les garda par
to the flight and with him the Bretons and Gawain them guarded by
derriere, et lors vint Artus a tout .lx. mile chevaliers
behind and then came Arthur with all sixty thousand knights
preus et hardis, et estoit cascuns desfensables et bien
worthy and bold and was each-one fit-for-defense and well
armés, et assamblerent as Romains, et la ot li plus
armed and engaged with-the Romans and there was the most
ruiste bataille que cors d'ome peüst agarder, et i ot mors
fierce battle that body of-man could behold and there were dead

d'une part et d'autre a l'assambler plus de .xiiij. mile
on-one side and on-other at the-engaging more than fourteen thousand
chevaliers, et saciés que molt se prova bien li rois Artus.
knights and know that much himself proved well the king Arthur
Atant vint li emperere de Rome par les rens, molt
At-that came the emperor of Rome through the ranks very
richement armés, et s'escria: 'Rois Artus, or sui tos pres
richly armed and himself-cried King Arthur now I-am all ready
de desraisnier l'onor envers toi, et proverai que tu es mes
of contesting the-honor against thee and shall-prove that thou art my
sers.' Et Artus l'oï et poinst contre lui, et tint l'espée
serf And Arthur it-heard and spurred against him and held the-sword
el puing destre, et feri l'empereor parmi le teste, et li
in-the fist right and struck the-emperor through the head and to-him
douna tel colp a l'aïe de Diu qu'il le fendi dusqu'el
gave such blow with the-help of God that-he him split down-to-the
braier et le trebuça mort, et puis s'escria en haut que li
belt and him toppled dead and then himself-cried on high that the
emperere estoit mors. Atant poinst Gavains et feri le Soudan
emperor was dead At-that spurred Gawain and struck the Sultan
de l'espée, et le trença parmi le çaint de travers, et li
with the-sword and him cut through the waist from across and the
rois Lot feri le roi d'Espagne d'un gavrelot parmi le pis, et
king Lot struck the king of-Spain with-a javelin through the chest and
l'abati mort a le terre. Et quant les Romains, et les
him-struck-down dead to the earth And when the Romans and the
Sarrasins, virent chaïr lor segnor si en furent molt espoenté,
Saracens saw fall their lords so thereof were very frightened
et s'en vinrent plus de .c. mile sor les cors et
and themselves-thence came more than a-hundred thousand upon the bodies and
les en volrent aporter a lor trés, et d'autre part revinrent
them thence wished to-carry to their tents and on-other side came-again

li Breton et li Norois et li Irois et li Escot a glaves,
the Bretons and the Norsemen and the Irish and the Scots with glaives
a dars, a misericordes, et disent qu'il emporteroient les
with darts with daggers and said that-they would-carry-off the
cors des .iij. traïtors, et li Romains les volrent avoir; lors
bodies of-the three traitors and the Romans them wished to-have then
i ot tant cols ferus sor aus qu'on peüst des abatus
there were so-many blows struck upon them that-one could with-the fallen
et des mors cargier .cc. cars, et bien vous di
and with-the dead load two-hundred carts and well to-you I-say
vraiement que, puis le tans Artu qu'assist ses bones en
truly that since the time (of-)Arthur who-set his bounds in
Ethyope, ne fu si grans ocisions. Et lors revint Gavains,
Ethiopia not was so great slaughter And then came-back Gawain
et ne s'en pooit assasier et les ocioit ausi comme li
and not himself-thereof could sate and them killed just as the
leus enragiés deveure .j. agnel, et Bedivers i referoit de
wolf maddened devours a lamb and Bedivere there struck-again with
s'espée tant que li camp flotoient tot de sanc, et bien
his-sword so-much that the fields flowed all with blood and well
saciés que li Romains s'en fuiioient et laissoient le
know that the Romans themselves-thence fled and left the
camp ester quant .xx.m. serjant se furent asamblé,
field be when twenty-thousand sergeants themselves were assembled
et i avoit chevaliers autresi, et avuec çaus demourerent
and there were knights likewise and with those remained
li Romains, et revinrent el camp, u li cors de tant
the Romans and came-back into-the field where the bodies of so-many
chevaliers gisoit descolorés, et empalis. Atant s'esvertuerent
knights lay discolored and paled At-that themselves-exerted
li Breton, et corurent sor les Romains, et Guillac, qui
the Bretons and ran upon the Romans and Guillac who

fu rois de Danemarce, tint l'espée el puing destre, et
was king of Denmark held the-sword in-the fist right and
feri .j. Romain qui estoit plus grans des autres, si li
struck a Roman who was more great than-the others so to-him
douna tel colp qu'il le porfendi desci en le sele del ceval.
gave such blow that-he him split until in the saddle of-the horse
Quant li Romain virent mort celui qui les conduisoit, si
When the Romans saw dead him who them led so
en furent molt esfreé, et lors revint Artus sor aus od
thereof were very frightened and then came-back Arthur upon them with
.xxx. mile Bretons, et cevauca par grant aïr, et li Breton
thirty thousand Bretons and rode with great fury and the Bretons
les ocioient, et abatoient. Lors s'en fuirent li Romain
them killed and struck-down Then themselves-thence fled the Romans
et li Sarrasin, et li Breton les encaucierent molt longement,
and the Saracens and the Bretons them chased very long
et en ocisent, et prisent tant com il volrent, et dura
and thereof killed and took so-many as they wished and lasted
li cace .j. jor et une nuit, et bien saciés qu'i ot pris
the chase one day and one night and well know that-there were taken
.xv. des senators de Rome. Et quant cele desconfiture fu
fifteen of-the senators of Rome And when that discomfiture was
faite, si prist Artus consel a ses barons et dist qu'il se
made so took Arthur counsel with his barons and said that-he himself
volroit faire coroner a Rome, et si home li loerent qu'il
would-wish to-make crown at Rome and his men him advised that-he
cevauçast a force, et se fesist coroner a Rome. Lors
should-ride in force and himself should-make crown at Rome Then
fist mander Artus devant lui les senators de Rome qu'il
made summon Arthur before him the senators of Rome whom-he
avoit pris, et quant il furent venu devant lui si se
had taken and when they were come before him so themselves

laissierent chaoir a son pié, et li crierent merci, et qu'il
let fall at his foot and to-him cried mercy and that-he
les laissast vivre, et il li rendroient Rome, et seroient
them should-let live and they to-him would-render Rome and would-be
a son service a tos jors mais. Et Artus lor creanta cest
at his service for all days more And Arthur to-them promised this
afaire, et les reçut a homes, et lor clama se prison cuite.
affair and them received as men and to-them declared his prison quit

Adonc commanda li rois que se gent s'aparellast
Then commanded the king that his folk themselves-should-prepare
au tierç jor, si com por aler a Rome. Le jor devant
on-the third day so as for to-go to Rome The day before
qu'Artus dut movoir si estoit el palais de Paris et avuec
that-Arthur was-to move so was in-the palace of Paris and with
lui Gavains ses niés, et Kex li senescaus, et Guillac li rois
him Gawain his nephew and Kay the seneschal and Guillac the king
de Danemarce, et li rois Lot d'Orchanie. Atant descendirent
of Denmark and the king Lot of-Orkney At-that dismounted
.iij. mesage au perron, et monterent en le sale et le
three messengers at-the block and climbed into the hall and him
saluerent de Diex. Quant Artus les vit si les recounut bien,
greeted by God When Arthur them saw so them recognized well
et lor demanda: 'Segnor, por quoi estes vous ci venus?
and of-them asked Lords for what are you here come
Por Diu dites moi que me feme fait, et Mordrès mes niés,
For God tell me what my wife does and Mordred my nephew
ja n'ont il nule cose se bien non?' Et li mesage li
ever not-have they any thing except good not And the messengers to-him
respondent: 'Rois, de çou que tu nos demandes te dirons
answer King of this that thou us askest to-thee shall-tell
nous noveles. Saces que tes niés Mordrès a ovré encontre
we news Know that thy nephew Mordred has wrought against

toi come traïtres, car il a te feme espousée, et porta corone
thee as traitor for he has thy wife married and bore crown
dedens le premier mois que tu departis de ton païs, et a
within the first month that thou departedst from thy country and has
tous les cuers des gens. Et saces que tu n'a castel qui
all the hearts of-the folk And know that thou not-hast castle which
plain ne soit d'arbalestiers et de chevaliers et de serjans, et
full not be of-crossbowmen and of knights and of sergeants and
n'i a chevalier en le terre qui contre se volenté fust qu'il
not-there is knight in the land who against his will were that-he
ne fesist ocire, et saces qu'il a mandés les Saisnes, qui
not made kill and know that-he has summoned the Saxons who
furent del parenté Engis, qui tant guerroia vostre pere, ne
were of-the kindred (of-)Hengist who so-much warred your father nor
en toute le terre de Bretagne ne lait il canter ne messe ne
in all the land of Britain not lets he sing neither mass nor
matine, et bien te disons se tu ne le secors tu le perdras,
matins and well to-thee we-say if thou not it succor thou it wilt-lose
et miels vous vient il vostre terre conquerre que l'autrui.'
and better to-you comes it your land to-conquer than another's

Quant Artus a oïe ceste parole si en ot molt grant
When Arthur has heard this word so thereof had very great
honte et molt grant ire a son cuer, et s'en consella
shame and very great wrath at his heart and himself-thereof counseled
a ses barons comment il poroit esploitier, et ce fu li
with his barons how he could proceed and this was the
somes de son consel qu'il retornast arriere, et requesist son
sum of his counsel that-he should-turn back and should-recover his
païs, et se il peüst prendre Mordret qu'il le fesist ardoir,
country and if he could take Mordred that-he him should-make burn

et mesire Gavains li loa, qui estoit ses frere, et li rois
and my-lord Gawain him advised who was his brother and the king
Lot d'Orchanie ses pere, qui molt en avoit grant honte.
Lot of-Orkney his father who very thereof had great shame
Quant Artus oï cel consel si le tint a buen, et lendemain
When Arthur heard that counsel so it held for good and next-day
cevauca, et se cevalerie avuec lui, et vinrent en Normendie,
rode and his chivalry with him and came into Normandy
et entrerent en mer, et Mordrès, qui se venue sot par ses
and entered on sea and Mordred who his coming knew through his
espies qu'il avoit od le roi, lors assambla Saisnes et serjans et
spies that-he had with the king then assembled Saxons and sergeants and
chevaliers, et vint a le rive encontre Artu, et lors vint li rois
knights and came to the shore against Arthur and then came the king
Artus por ariver, et Mordrès vint por desfendre, et saciés qu'a
Arthur for to-land and Mordred came for to-defend and know that-at
l'ariver ot grant peril, et mesire Gavains vint por ariver a
the-landing there-was great peril and my-lord Gawain came for to-land with
tout .xx.m. homes, et saciés qu'il avoit molt grant honte
all twenty-thousand men and know that-he had very great shame
de le traïson que Mordrès avoit faite. Atant volt ariver, mais
of the treason that Mordred had done At-that he-wished to-land but
ses frere li fu au devant a tot .l. mile Saisnes, et
his brother to-him was at-the before with all fifty thousand Saxons and
jeterent espiels contre les Bretons, et pieres et lances et dars,
threw spears against the Bretons and stones and lances and darts
et li Breton ausi contre aus, et saciés qu'a Gavain i meschaï,
and the Bretons also against them and know that-to Gawain there it-ill-befell
car il n'avoit pas son hiaume lacié, et uns Saisnes tenoit .j.
for he not-had at-all his helm laced and a Saxon held an
aviron et en feri Gavain el cief, et l'abati mort.
oar and therewith struck Gawain on-the head and him-struck-down dead

Quant Gavains fu mors ce fu molt grans dolors. Ahi Dex,
When Gawain was dead this was very great sorrow Ah God
com grant damage del buen justicier! Il estoit buens cevaliers,
how great harm of-the good justiciar He was good knight
et biaus et loiaus et sages, et estoit droituriers en jugement,
and fair and loyal and wise and was righteous in judgment
et savoit bel parler. Dex, com grant dolor quant il le covint
and knew fair speak God how great sorrow when it him behooved
morir! Dont oïssiés si grant plor en le nef qu'on les
to-die Then you-would-have-heard so great weeping in the ship that-one them
oïst de .ij. liues loing. La fu ocis Saigremors, et Bedivers,
heard from two leagues far There was killed Sagremor and Bedivere
et Kex li senescaus. La finirent li cors de tant preudomes,
and Kay the seneschal There ended the bodies of so-many worthy-men
et saciés que de .xx.m. chevaliers n'en escapa piés
and know that of twenty-thousand knights not-thereof escaped foot
qui tot ne fussent ocis u noié, et meïsme li nés u il
who all not were killed or drowned and even the ship where they
estoient fu depecie en .c. quartiers, et afondra en le mer.
were was broken into a-hundred quarters and sank in the sea

Lot is killed at the landing, but the Bretons rout the Saxons; Mordred flees to Winchester, is beaten again, and escapes to Ireland. There Mordred is killed, but Arthur is mortally wounded and has himself carried to Avalon, to be healed by Morgan; the Bretons await him forty years. Blaise brings Merlin's account to Perceval, who weeps for the dead, and Merlin withdraws into his esplumoir, never to be seen again.

Quant Artus sot que li .xx.m. estoient peri si fu
When Arthur knew that the twenty-thousand were perished so was
molt dolans, et quant il sot la verité que Gavains estoit
very grieved and when he knew the truth that Gawain was
ocis si en ot si grant iror et si grant duel qui li cuers
killed so thereof had so great anger and so great grief that the heart
li fali, et chaï en le nef, et se pasma plus de .xv.
to-him failed and fell in the ship and himself swooned more than fifteen
fois, et lors l'en releverent li Breton, mais bien vous
times and then him-thence raised the Bretons but well to-you
puis dire que nus n'oï onques ausi grant duel que li rois
I-can say that anyone not-heard ever so great grief as the king
Lot demena por Gavain son fil. Fisent lor estoire ariver,
Lot made for Gawain his son They-made their fleet land
et li rois Artus autresi, et prisent le port a force, et
and the king Arthur likewise and took the port by force and
issirent des nés, mais molt en i ot d'ocis, ançois qu'il
went-out of-the ships but many thereof there were of-killed before that-they
eüssent pris terre, et lor revint grant mescaance Artu,
had taken land and then came-again great mischance (to-)Arthur
car, si comme li rois Lot issoit de le nef, si traist uns
for so as the king Lot went-out of the ship so shot a
serjans a lui et le feri d'un quarel parmi le pis. Lors fu
sergeant at him and him struck with-a bolt through the chest Then was

grans li plors sor le cors. Atant si rasamblerent li Saisne,
great the weeping over the body At-that so reassembled the Saxons
et recorurent sus Artu. Mais, puis que li Breton furent
and ran-again upon Arthur But since that the Bretons were
as cevaus, si corurent sus les Saisnes, et en ocisent
on-the horses so ran upon the Saxons and thereof killed
molt, car il estoient molt aïré sor aus. Tot ensement com
many for they were very angered upon them All likewise as
li leus famelleus deveure l'agnel si les devoroient li Breton,
the wolf hungry devours the-lamb so them devoured the Bretons
et tant en ocisent que li mont en gisoient parmi les
and so-many thereof killed that the heaps thereof lay through the
cans, et Dex dona as Bretons la victoire, et desconfirent
fields and God gave to-the Bretons the victory and they-discomfited
les Saisnes, et Mordrès s'en torna fuiant, et vint a
the Saxons and Mordred himself-thence turned fleeing and came to
ses castiaus qu'il avoit garnis, et volt ens entrer. Mais
his castles which-he had garrisoned and wished within to-enter But
quant li borjois et li chevaliers sorent qu'Artus revenoit,
when the burghers and the knights knew that-Arthur came-back
et qu'il l'avoit desconfit, si li veerent lor fortereces.
and that-he him-had discomfited so to-him refused their fortresses

Quant Mordrès vit qu'il ne poroit entrer es castiaus,
When Mordred saw that-he not could enter into-the castles
si en fu molt dolans et ot paor, et s'en ala en
so thereof was very grieved and had fear and himself-thence went into
Wincestre, et manda les Saisnes de par tote le terre, et dist
Winchester and summoned the Saxons from by all the land and said
qu'il atendra Artu a bataille. Et quant Artus le seut, si fu
that-he will-await Arthur to battle And when Arthur it knew so was
molt dolans, et vint a le rive, et i fist prendre Gavains,
very grieved and came to the shore and there made take Gawain

et Kex le senescal et Bediver et Saigremor et le roi Lot
and Kay the seneschal and Bedivere and Sagremor and the king Lot
d'Orchanie, et les fist enterrer. Et lors s'esmut a tot le
of-Orkney and them made bury And then himself-moved with all the
remanant de se gent, et sivi Mordret par les castiaus, et
remnant of his folk and followed Mordred through the castles and
uns mesage li dist qu'il estoit a Guincestre atout grans
a messenger to-him said that-he was at Winchester with great
gens, et quant Artus le sot si cevauça cele part, et manda
folk and when Arthur it knew so rode that way and summoned
les barons de tot son païs et les borjois et les citeains, et
the barons of all his country and the burghers and the citizens and
il i vinrent. Et quant il furent venu si se clamerent
they there came And when they were come so themselves complained
a lui de Mordret qu'ensi lor avoit destruis et honis. Quant
to him of Mordred who-thus them had destroyed and shamed When
Artus les entendi si en fu molt dolans, si qu'il ne lor
Arthur them heard so thereof was very grieved so that-he not to-them
pot respondre. Et tant tost fist monter ses chevaliers, et
could answer And so soon made mount his knights and
lors cevauca tant qu'il vint a Guincestre, et quant Mordrès
then rode so-long that-he came to Winchester and when Mordred
sot se venue si issi encontre lui, et dist que ja en castel
knew his coming so went-out toward him and said that ever in castle
ne se muçera car il avoit forçor gent qui li rois n'eüst.
not himself will-hide for he had greater folk than the king had
Et lors furent aparellié de combatre, et s'entrecorurent sus
And then they-were prepared of fighting and each-other-ran upon
molt ruistement, d'une part et d'autre, et la veïssiés
very fiercely on-one side and on-other and there you-would-have-seen
le plus fier estor del monde, et veïssiés cevaliers et
the most fierce fight of-the world and you-would-have-seen knights and

serjans gesir tos mors a le terre dont on peüst cargier .xxx.
sergeants lie all dead on the earth whereof one could load thirty
cars, et tant i ot mors de Saisnes que petit en i
carts and so-many there were dead of Saxons that little thereof there
remest. Et Mordrès s'en torna fuiant grant aleüre a
remained And Mordred himself-thence turned fleeing great pace with
tot le remanant de se gent, et s'enfui en Yrlande, et passa
all the remnant of his folk and himself-fled into Ireland and passed
le païs et tant qu'il vint en une ille u estoit uns rois
the country and until that-he came into an isle where was a king
paiens Saisnes, et estoit del parenté Engis, et cil le retint
pagan Saxon and was of-the kindred (of-)Hengist and he him retained
volentiers et molt l'ama por çou qu'il estoit buens cevaliers.
gladly and much him-loved for this that-he was good knight

Quant Artus sot que Mordrès estoit en Yrlande si le sivi
When Arthur knew that Mordred was in Ireland so him followed
grant aleüre, et tant cevauca qu'il vint en le terre u il
great pace and so-long rode that-he came into the land where he
estoit. Quant li rois qui Saisnes estoit sot se venue si manda
was When the king who Saxon was knew his coming so summoned
se gent, et vint encontre lui, et lors s'entrecorurent sus, et
his folk and came toward him and then each-other-ran upon and
saciés que forment haïrent li Breton les Saisnes, et li Saisne
know that greatly hated the Bretons the Saxons and the Saxons
les Bretons, et por çou si en i ot assés plus mors. Molt
the Bretons and for this so thereof there were quite more dead Much
dura li bataille longement, et molt i ot mors de buens
lasted the battle long and many there were dead of good
chevaliers, mais de tous çaus qui i morurent ne parole pas
knights but of all those who there died not speaks at-all
li livres, mais tant vos puis je bien dire que Mordirs i
the book but so-much to-you can I well say that Mordred there

fu ocis, et li rois Saisnes qui l'avoit retenu, et si fu li rois
was killed and the king Saxon who him-had retained and so was the king
Artus navrés a mort, car il fu ferus d'une lance parmi le pis,
Arthur wounded to death for he was struck with-a lance through the chest
et lors mena on grant duel entor Artu, et Artus lor dist:
and then made one great grief around Arthur and Arthur to-them said
'Laissiés ester le duel, car je ne morrai pas. Je me ferai
Let be the grief for I not shall-die at-all I myself shall-make
porter en Avalon por mes plaies meciner a Morghain me seror.'
carry into Avalon for my wounds to-heal by Morgan my sister
Ensi se fist Artus porter en Avalon, et dist a ses gens
Thus himself made Arthur carry into Avalon and said to his folk
qu'il l'atendissent et qu'il revenroit, et li Breton revinrent
that-they him-should-await and that-he would-come-back and the Bretons came-back
a Carduel, et l'atendirent plus de .xl. ans, ains qu'il
to Carduel and him-awaited more than forty years before that-they
fesissent roi, car li cuidoient tos dis qu'il revenist. Mais
made king for they thought all days that-he would-come-back But
tant saciés vous que li auquant l'ont puis veü es forès
so-much know you that the some him-have since seen in-the forests
cacier, et ont oï ses chiens avuec lui, et li auquant i ont
hunt and have heard his dogs with him and the some there have
eü esperance lonc tans qu'il revenist. Et quant tot cest
had hope long time that-he would-come-back And when all this
afaire furent akievé si s'en vint Merlins a Blayse, et li
affair were achieved so himself-thence came Merlin to Blaise and to-him
conta ces coses tot ensi com eles furent avenues. Quant Blayse
told these things all thus as they were happened When Blaise
ot fait sen escrit si l'en aporta chiés Perceval qui le
had made his writing so it-thence brought to-the-house-of Perceval who the
Graal gardoit; et estoit de si sainte vie qui li Sains Esperis
Grail kept and was of so holy life that the Holy Spirit

descendist a lui sovent, et li conta tout l'aventure Artu,
descended to him often and to-him told all the-adventure (of-)Arthur
tot si com il estoit ravis en Avalon, et comment Gavains
all so as he was ravished into Avalon and how Gawain
estoit ocis, et comment le chevalier de le table reonde avoient
was killed and how the knights of the table round had
finé lor tans. Quant Perceval l'entendi si en plora por le
ended their time When Perceval it-heard so thereof wept for the
pitié qu'il en ot, et pria Nostre Segnor qu'il eüst pitié
pity that-he thereof had and prayed Our Lord that-he should-have pity
de lor ames, car il les avoit molt amés. Et lors vint Merlins
on their souls for he them had much loved And then came Merlin
a Perceval, et a Blayse son maistre, et prist congié a els, et
to Perceval and to Blaise his master and took leave of them and
lor dist que Nostre Sire ne voloit qu'il se demostrast au
to-them said that Our Lord not wished that-he himself should-show to-the
peule, ne il ne porent morir devant le finement del siecle:
people nor he not could die before the ending of-the world
'Mais adont arai jou la joie parmenable, et je volrai faire
But then shall-have I the joy everlasting and I shall-wish to-make
defors te maison .j. abitacle, et la volrai converser, et si
outside thy house a dwelling and there shall-wish to-dwell and so
profetiserai çou que Nostre Sire me commandera, et tot cil
shall-prophesy this that Our Lord me will-command and all those
qui mon abitacle verront si le clameront l'esplumeor Merlin.'
who my dwelling shall-see so it will-call the-molting-cage (of-)Merlin
Atant s'en torna Merlins, et fist son esplumoir, et
At-that himself-thence turned Merlin and made his molting-cage and
entra dedens, ne onques puis au siecle ne fu veüs. Ne de
entered within nor ever since in-the world not was seen Nor of
Merlin ne del Graal ne parole plus li contes, fors tant
Merlin nor of-the Grail not speaks more the tale except so-much

seulement que Merlins pria Nostre Segnor qu'il fesist a
only that Merlin prayed Our Lord that-he should-do to
tos çaus merci qui volentiers oroient son livre, et qui le
all those mercy who gladly would-hear his book and who it
feroient escrire por ramembrer ses ouevres, et vous en
would-make write for to-recall his works and you thereof
dites tout. Amen.
say all Amen

(Ici fine li romans de Merlin et del Graal.)
Here ends the romance of Merlin and of-the Grail
